

# TEI readingExp

François Vignale/Gautier Michelin

2015-10-01

## TEI Complete

ReadingExp TEI validator

However, this particular TEI customization is *not recommended* for actual use for encoding documents. It produces schemas and reference documentation that will be much larger, and include many more elements, than almost anyone could conceivably ever need. Tempting though it may be simply to have absolutely everything, and ‘just ignore’ elements not required, experience has shown that their presence makes the documentation harder to read and use, and makes a schema that is far more lax than desired.

## 1 Elements

---

**<TEI>** (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, containing a single TEI header, a single text, one or more members of the model.resourceLike class, or a combination of these. A series of <TEI> elements may be combined together to form a <teiCorpus> element. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

@version specifies the major version number of the TEI Guidelines against which this document is valid.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.version**

Note The major version number is historically prefixed by a P (for Proposal), and is distinct from the version number used for individual releases of the Guidelines, as used by (for example) the source of the <schemaSpec> element. The current version is P5.

Containability ~~by~~ teiCorpus

May contain

header: teiHeader

iso-fs: fsdDecl

textstructure: text

transcr: facsimile sourceDoc

Declaration

```
element TEI
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute version { data.version }?,
```

```
( teiHeader, ( ( model.resourceLike+, text? ) | text ) )  
}
```

*Schematron* <s:ns prefix="tei" uri="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/> <s:ns prefix="xs" uri="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"/>

*Schematron* <s:ns prefix="rng" uri="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"/>

*Example*

```
<TEI version="5.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
  <teiHeader>  
    <fileDesc>  
      <titleStmt>  
        <title>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</title>  
      </titleStmt>  
      <publicationStmt>  
        <p>First published as part of TEI P2, this is the P5  
          version using a name space.</p>  
      </publicationStmt>  
      <sourceDesc>  
        <p>No source: this is an original work.</p>  
      </sourceDesc>  
    </fileDesc>  
  </teiHeader>  
  <text>  
    <body>  
      <p>This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.</p>  
    </body>  
  </text>  
</TEI>
```

*Example*

```
<TEI version="5.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
  <teiHeader>  
    <fileDesc>  
      <titleStmt>  
        <title>A TEI Document containing four page images </title>  
      </titleStmt>  
      <publicationStmt>  
        <p>Unpublished demonstration file.</p>  
      </publicationStmt>  
      <sourceDesc>  
        <p>No source: this is an original work.</p>  
      </sourceDesc>  
    </fileDesc>  
  </teiHeader>  
  <facsimile>  
    <graphic url="page1.png"/>  
    <graphic url="page2.png"/>  
    <graphic url="page3.png"/>  
    <graphic url="page4.png"/>  
  </facsimile>  
</TEI>
```

*Note* This element is required. It is customary to specify the TEI namespace <http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0> on it, using the *xmlns* attribute.

---

**<ab>** (anonymous block) contains any arbitrary component-level unit of text, acting as an anonymous container for phrase or inter level elements analogous to, but without the semantic baggage of, a paragraph. [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors]

*Module* linking

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring  
 (@decls) att.fragmentable (@part)

*Member of* model.pLike

*Contained by*

*core:* item note q quote said sp stage

*corpus:* particDesc setting settingDesc

*drama:* castList epilogue performance prologue set view

*figures:* cell figure

*header:* abstract application availability cRefPattern calendar change correction  
 correspAction correspContext correspDesc editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc  
 handNote hyphenation interpretation licence normalization prefixDef projectDesc  
 publicationStmt punctuation quotation refsDecl samplingDecl scriptNote  
 segmentation seriesStmt sourceDesc stdVals styleDefDecl typeNote

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions binding bindingDesc collation condition  
 custEvent custodialHist decoDesc decoNote filiation foliation handDesc history  
 layout layoutDesc msContents msDesc msItem msItemStruct msPart musicNotation  
 objectDesc origin physDesc provenance recordHist scriptDesc seal sealDesc  
 signatures source summary support supportDesc surrogates typeDesc

*namesdates:* climate event langKnowledge listRelation nym org person personGrp place  
 population state terrain trait

*spoken:* broadcast equipment recording recordingStmt scriptStmt

*tagdocs:* exemplum remarks specGrp

*textstructure:* argument back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph front  
 postscript

*transcr:* metamark

*verse:* metDecl

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
 distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
 listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
 q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```

element ab
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.fragmentable.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Example*

```

<div n="Genesis" type="book">
  <div n="1" type="chapter">
    <ab>In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.</ab>
    <ab>And the earth was without form, and void; and
      darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the
      spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.</ab>
    <ab>And God said, Let there be light: and there was light.</ab>
  <!-- .....>
  </div>
</div>

```

*Note* The <ab> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any component-level elements in a text for which no other more specific appropriate markup is defined.

---

**<abbr>** (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort. [3.5.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.source (@source) att.typed (type,  
@subtype)

**@type** allows the encoder to classify the abbreviation according to some convenient typology.

*Derived from* att.typed

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Sample values include:* **suspension** the abbreviation provides the first letter(s) of the word or phrase, omitting the remainder.

**contraction** the abbreviation omits some letter(s) in the middle.

**brevigraph** the abbreviation comprises a special symbol or mark.

**superscription** the abbreviation includes writing above the line.

**acronym** the abbreviation comprises the initial letters of the words of a phrase.

**title** the abbreviation is for a title of address (Dr, Ms, Mr, ...)

**organization** the abbreviation is for the name of an organization.

**geographic** the abbreviation is for a geographic name.

*Note* The *type* attribute is provided for the sake of those who wish to classify abbreviations at their point of occurrence; this may be useful in some circumstances, though usually the same abbreviation will have the same type in all occurrences. As the sample values make clear, abbreviations may be classified by the method used to construct them, the method of writing them, or the referent of the term abbreviated; the typology used is up to the encoder and should be carefully planned to meet the needs of the expected use. For a typology of Middle English abbreviations, see PETTY

*Member of* model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl pc phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element abbr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.source.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.phraseSeq
}

```

*Example*

```

<choice>
  <expan>North Atlantic Treaty Organization</expan>
  <abbr cert="low">NorATO</abbr>
  <abbr cert="high">NATO</abbr>
  <abbr cert="high" xml:lang="fr">OTAN</abbr>
</choice>

```

*Example*

```

<choice>
  <abbr>SPQR</abbr>
  <expan>senatus populusque romanorum</expan>
</choice>

```

*Note* The <abbr> tag is not required; if appropriate, the encoder may transcribe abbreviations in the source text silently, without tagging them. If abbreviations are not transcribed directly but *expanded* silently, then the TEI header should so indicate.

**<abstract>** contains a summary or formal abstract prefixed to an existing source document by the encoder. [2.4.4. Abstracts]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.source (@source)

*Member of* model.profileDescPart

*Contained by*

*header:* profileDesc

*May contain*

*core:* list p

*figures:* table

*linking:* ab

*namesdates:* listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace

*textcrit:* listApp listWit

*Declaration*

```

element abstract
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.source.attributes,
  ( model.pLike | model.listLike )+
}

```

*Example*

```

<profileDesc>
  <abstract resp="#LB">
    <p>Good database design involves the acquisition and deployment of
      skills which have a wider relevance to the educational process.
      From a set of more or less instinctive rules of thumb a formal
      discipline or "methodology" of database design has evolved.
      Applying that methodology can be of great benefit to a very wide
      range of academic subjects: it requires fundamental skills of
      abstraction and generalisation and it provides a simple mechanism
      whereby complex ideas and information structures can be
      represented and manipulated, even without the use of a computer.
    </p>
  </abstract>
</profileDesc>

```

*Note* The abstract for a born digital document should be located within the <front>; this element is provided for cases where no abstract is available in the original source.

**<accMat>** (accompanying material) contains details of any significant additional material which may be closely associated with the manuscript being described, such

as non-contemporaneous documents or fragments bound in with the manuscript at some earlier historical period. [10.7.3.3. Accompanying Material]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

*Member of* model.physDescPart

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* physDesc

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element accMat
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}
```



*Example*

```
<accMat>A copy of a tax form from 1947 is included in the envelope
with the letter. It is not catalogued separately.</accMat>
```

**<acquisition>** contains any descriptive or other information concerning the process by which a manuscript or manuscript part entered the holding institution. [10.8. History]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.data.table (@calendar, @period) (att.data.table.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.data.table.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.data.table.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* history

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element acquisition
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}
```

*Example*

```
<acquisition>Left to the <name type="place">Bodleian</name> by
<name type="person">Richard Rawlinson</name> in 1755.
</acquisition>
```

---

**<activity>** contains a brief informal description of what a participant in a language interaction is doing other than speaking, if anything. [15.2.3. The Setting Description]

*Module* corpus

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.settingPart

*Contained by*

*corpus:* setting

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index  
lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled  
term time title

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident tag val

*textcrit:* witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst  
substJoin

*Declaration*

```
element activity { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }
```

*Example*

```
<activity>driving</activity>
```

*Note* For more fine-grained description of participant activities during a spoken text, the <event> element should be used.

---

**<actor>** contains the name of an actor appearing within a cast list. [7.1.4. Cast Lists]

*Module* drama

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.castItemPart

*Contained by*

*drama:* castItem

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

element actor { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }

*Example*

```

<castItem>
  <role>Mathias</role>
  <roleDesc>the Burgomaster</roleDesc>
  <actor>Mr. Henry Irving</actor>
</castItem>

```

*Note* This element should be used only to mark the name of the actor as given in the source. Chapter 13. Names, Dates, People, and Places discusses ways of marking the components of names, and also of associating names with biographical information about a person.

---

**<add>** (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the source text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

*Module core*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.transcriptional (@hand, @status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source)) ) att.placement (@place) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.pPart.transcriptional*Contained by**analysis:* cl pc phr s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp h iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view*figures:* cell*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset

orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex  
 socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace subst supplied surplus zone  
*verse:* rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
 distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
 listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
 q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* biblFull idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
 offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
 surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
 macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element add
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Example*

The story I am going to relate is true as to its main facts, and as to the consequences <add place="above">of these facts</add> from which this tale takes its title.

*Note* In a diplomatic edition attempting to represent an original source, the <add> element should not be used for additions to the current TEI electronic edition made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the <corr> or <supplied> element are recommended. In a TEI edition of a historical text with previous editorial emendations in which such additions or reconstructions are considered part of the source text, the use of <add> may be appropriate, dependent on the editorial philosophy of the project.

---

**<addName>** (additional name) contains an additional name component, such as a nickname, epithet, or alias, or any other descriptive phrase used within a personal name. [13.2.1. Personal Names]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change)) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) att.personal ( @full, @sort) (att.naming ( @role, @nymRef) (att.canonical ( @key, @ref)) ) att.typed ( @type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.persNamePart

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality

occupation offset org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
 settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element addName
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

### Example

```

<persName>
  <forename>Frederick</forename>
  <addName type="epithet">the Great</addName>
  <roleName>Emperor of Prussia</roleName>
</persName>

```

**<addSpan/>** (added span of text) marks the beginning of a longer sequence of text added by an author, scribe, annotator or corrector (see also <add>). [11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions]

*Module* transcr

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change)) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) att.transcriptional ( @hand, @status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike ( @evidence, @instant)) (att.dimensions ( @unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging ( @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source ( @source)) ) att.placement ( @place) att.typed ( @type, @subtype) att.spanning ( @spanTo)

*Member of* model.global.edit

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer



*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
surfaceGrp surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```

element addSpan
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  empty
}

```

*Schematron* <sch:assert test="@spanTo">The @spanTo attribute of <sch:name/> is required.</sch:assert>

*Schematron* <sch:assert test="@spanTo">L'attribut spanTo est requis.</sch:assert>

*Example*

```

<handNote scribe="HelgiÓlafsson"
  xml:id="HE0L"/>
<!-- ... -->
<body>
  <div>
    <!-- text here -->
  </div>
  <addSpan hand="#HE0L" n="added gathering"
    spanTo="#P025"/>
  <div>
    <!-- text of first added poem here -->
  </div>
  <div>
    <!-- text of second added poem here -->
  </div>
  <div>
    <!-- text of third added poem here -->
  </div>
  <div>
    <!-- text of fourth added poem here -->
  </div>
  <anchor xml:id="P025"/>
  <div>
    <!-- more text here -->
  </div>
</body>

```

*Note* Both the beginning and the end of the added material must be marked; the beginning by the <addSpan/> element itself, the end by the *spanTo* attribute.

---

<additional> groups additional information, combining bibliographic information about a manuscript, or surrogate copies of it with curatorial or administrative information. [10.9. Additional Information]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,

*@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select*) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* msDesc msPart

*May contain*

*core:* listBibl

*msdescription:* adminInfo surrogates

*Declaration*

```

element additional
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( adminInfo?, surrogates?, listBibl? )
}

```

*Example*

```

<additional>
  <adminInfo>
    <recordHist>
      <p>
<!-- record history here -->
      </p>
    </recordHist>
    <custodialHist>
      <p>
<!-- custodial history here -->
      </p>
    </custodialHist>
  </adminInfo>
  <surrogates>
    <p>
<!-- information about surrogates here -->
    </p>
  </surrogates>
  <listBibl>
    <bibl>
<!-- ... -->
    </bibl>
<!-- full bibliography here -->
  </listBibl>
</additional>

```

---

**<additions>** contains a description of any significant additions found within a manuscript, such as marginalia or other annotations. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.physDescPart

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* physDesc

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb  
ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element additions { att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara }
```

*Example*

<additions>

```
<p>There are several marginalia in this manuscript. Some consist of  
single characters and others are figurative. On 8v is to be found a drawing of  
a mans head wearing a hat. At times sentences occurs: On 5v:  
<q xml:lang="is">Her er skrif andres isslendin</q>,  
on 19r: <q xml:lang="is">þeim go</q>,  
on 21r: <q xml:lang="is">amen med aund ok munn halla rei knar hofud summu all  
huad  
batar þad mælgí ok mál</q>,  
On 21v: some runic letters and the sentence <q xml:lang="la">aue maria gracia  
plena dominus</q>.</p>  
</additions>
```

**<addrLine>** (address line) contains one line of a postal address. [3.5.2. Addresses 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

*Member of* model.addrPart

*Contained by*

*core:* address

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element addrLine { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

*Example*

```
<address>
  <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
  <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
  <addrLine>Chicago, IL</addrLine>
  <addrLine>60680 USA</addrLine>
</address>
```

*Example*

```
<addrLine>
<ref target="tel:+1-201-555-0123">(201) 555 0123</ref>
</addrLine>
```

*Note* Addresses may be encoded either as a sequence of lines, or using any sequence of component elements from the `model.addrPart` class. Other non-postal forms of address, such as telephone numbers or email, should not be included within an `<address>` element directly but may be wrapped within an `<addrLine>` if they form part of the printed address in some source text.

**<address>** contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual. [3.5.2. Addresses 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

*Module core*

*Attributes* Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.rendition` (`@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`)) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`)) (`att.global.responsibility` (`@cert`, `@resp`))

*Member of* `model.addressLike` `model.publicationStmtPart.detail`

*Contained by*

*analysis:* `cl phr s span`

*core:* `abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear`

*corpus:* `activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose`

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* `readingExpRef`

*dictionaries:* `case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr`

*drama:* `actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view`

*figures:* `cell figDesc`

*header:* `authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal publicationStmt rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote`

*iso-fs:* `fDescr fsDescr`

*linking:* `ab seg`

*msdescription:* `accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark`

*namesdates:* `addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname`

*spoken:* `u writing`

*tagdocs:* `eg valDesc`

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* addrLine cb gap gb index lb milestone name note pb postBox postCode rs street  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader  
*dictionaries:* lang  
*figures:* figure notatedMusic  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  
*namesdates:* addName bloc climate country district forename genName geogFeat  
 geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population  
 region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*textcrit:* witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin  
*Declaration*

```

element address
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.global*, ( ( model.addrPart ), model.global* )+ )
}

```

*Example*

```

<address>
  <street>via Marsala 24</street>
  <postCode>40126</postCode>
  <name>Bologna</name>
  <name n="I">Italy</name>
</address>

```

*Example*

```

<address>
  <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
  <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
  <addrLine>Chicago, IL 60680</addrLine>
  <addrLine>USA</addrLine>
</address>

```

*Note* This element should be used for postal addresses only. Within it, the generic element <addrLine> may be used as an alternative to any of the more specialized elements available from the `model.addrPart` class, such as <street>, <postCode> etc.

---

**<addressee>** Recipient of a correspondence

*Namespace* <http://readingexp.univ-lemans.fr/tei>

*Module* derived-module-tei\_readingExp

*Member of* model.personLike

*Contained by*

*corpus:* particDesc

*namesdates:* listPerson org

*May contain*

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readerStatus

*namesdates:* birth country education faith nationality occupation persName sex

*Declaration*

```

element addressee
{
  persName*,
  sex*,
  birth*,
  occupation*,
  country*,
  education*,
  faith*,
  nationality*,
  readerStatus*
}

```

**<adminInfo>** (administrative information) contains information about the present custody and availability of the manuscript, and also about the record description itself. [10.9.1. Administrative Information]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change)) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* additional

*May contain*

*core:* note

*header:* availability

*msdescription:* custodialHist recordHist

*textcrit:* witDetail

*Declaration*

```

element adminInfo
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( recordHist?, availability?, custodialHist?, model.noteLike? )
}

```

*Example*

```

<adminInfo>
  <recordHist>
    <source>Record created <date>1 Aug 2004</date>
  </source>

```

```
</recordHist>
<availability>
  <p>Until 2015 permission to photocopy some materials from this
    collection has been limited at the request of the donor. Please ask repository
    staff for details
    if you are interested in obtaining photocopies from Series 1:
    Correspondence.</p>
</availability>
<custodialHist>
  <p>Collection donated to the Manuscript Library by the Estate of
    Edgar Holden in 1993. Donor number: 1993-034.</p>
</custodialHist>
</adminInfo>
```

---

**<affiliation>** contains an informal description of a person's present or past affiliation with some organization, for example an employer or sponsor. [15.2.2. The Participant Description]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

*Member of* model.addressLike model.persStateLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg



*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink  
 nationality occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName  
 region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element affiliation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

*Example*

```

<affiliation>Junior project officer for the US <name type="org">National Endowment
for
the Humanities</name>
</affiliation>
<affiliation notAfter="1960-01-01"
notBefore="1957-02-28">Paid up member of the
<orgName>Australian Journalists Association</orgName>
</affiliation>

```

*Note* If included, the name of an organization may be tagged using either the <name> element as above, or the more specific <orgName> element.

---

**<age>** specifies the age of a person. [13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))

**@value** supplies a numeric code representing the age or age group

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.count

*Note* This attribute may be used to complement a more detailed discussion of a person's age in the content of the element

*Member of* model.persStateLike

*Contained by*

*namesdates:* person personGrp

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo

geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident tag val  
*textcrit:* witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst  
 substJoin  
*Declaration*

```

element age
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  attribute value { data.count }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

### Example

```
<age notAfter="1986" value="2">under 20 in the early eighties</age>
```

*Note* As with other culturally-constructed traits such as sex, the way in which this concept is described in different cultural contexts may vary. The normalizing attributes are provided as a means of simplifying that variety to Western European norms and should not be used where that is inappropriate. The content of the element may be used to describe the intended concept in more detail, using plain text.

---

<alt/> (alternation) identifies an alternation or a set of choices among elements or passages. [16.8. Alternation]

### Module linking

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.pointing  
 (target, @targetLang, @evaluate)

**@target** specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI

References

*Derived from* att.pointing

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 2– occurrences of **data.pointer** separated by whitespace

**@mode** states whether the alternations gathered in this collection are exclusive or inclusive.

*Status* Recommended

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Legal values are:* **excl** (exclusive) indicates that the alternation is exclusive, i.e. that at most one of the alternatives occurs.

**incl** (inclusive) indicates that the alternation is not exclusive, i.e. that one or more of the alternatives occur.

**@weights** If *mode* is **excl**, each weight states the probability that the corresponding alternative occurs. If *mode* is **incl** each weight states the

probability that the corresponding alternative occurs given that at least one of the other alternatives occurs.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 2– occurrences of `data.probability` separated by whitespace

*Note* If *mode* is **excl**, the sum of weights must be 1. If *mode* is **incl**, the sum of weights must be in the range from 0 to the number of alternants.

*Member of* model.global.meta

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab altGrp seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```

element alt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attribute.targetLang,
  att.pointing.attribute.evaluate,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute target { list { data.pointer, data.pointer, data.pointer* } }?,
  attribute mode { "excl" | "incl" }?,
  attribute weights
  {
    list { data.probability, data.probability, data.probability* }
  }?,
  empty
}

```

*Example*

```

<alt mode="excl" target="#we.fun #we.sun"
weights="0.5 0.5"/>

```

**<altGrp>** (alternation group) groups a collection of <alt/> elements and possibly pointers. [16.8. Alternation]

*Module linking*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.pointing.group (@domains, @targFunc) (att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)) (att.typed (@type, @subtype))

**@mode** states whether the alternations gathered in this collection are exclusive or inclusive.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Legal values are:* **excl** (exclusive) indicates that the alternation is exclusive, i.e. that at most one of the alternatives occurs.[Default]

**incl** (inclusive) indicates that the alternation is not exclusive, i.e. that one or more of the alternatives occur.

*Member of* model.global.meta

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom  
hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg  
xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue  
role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote  
language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance  
rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence  
roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
surfaceGrp surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*core:* ptr

*linking:* alt

*Declaration*

```
element altGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.group.attributes,
  attribute mode { "excl" | "incl" }?,
  ( alt | ptr )*
}
```

*Example*

```
<altGrp mode="excl">
  <alt target="#dm #lt #bb"
    weights="0.5 0.25 0.25"/>
  <alt target="#rl #db" weights="0.5 0.5"/>
</altGrp>
```

*Example*

```
<altGrp mode="incl">
  <alt target="#dm #rl" weights="0.90 0.90"/>
  <alt target="#lt #rl" weights="0.5 0.5"/>
  <alt target="#bb #rl" weights="0.5 0.5"/>
  <alt target="#dm #db" weights="0.10 0.10"/>
```

```
<alt target="#lt #db" weights="0.45 0.90"/>
<alt target="#bb #db" weights="0.45 0.90"/>
</altGrp>
```

*Note* Any number of alternations, pointers or extended pointers.

**<altIdent>** (alternate identifier) supplies the recommended XML name for an element, class, attribute, etc. in some language. [3.3.4. Terms, Glosses, Equivalents, and Descriptions 22.4.1. Description of Components]

*Module* tagdocs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.glossLike

*Contained by*

*header:* category taxonomy

*linking:* joinGrp

*tagdocs:* attDef classSpec constraintSpec elementSpec macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec valItem

*May contain* Character data only

*Declaration*

```
element altIdent { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, text }
```

*Example*

```
<altIdent xml:lang="fr">balisageDoc</altIdent>
```

*Note* All documentation elements in ODD have a canonical name, supplied as the value for their *ident* attribute. The <altIdent> element is used to supply an alternative name for the corresponding XML object, perhaps in a different language.

**<altIdentifier>** (alternative identifier) contains an alternative or former structured identifier used for a manuscript, such as a former catalogue number. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* msIdentifier msPart

*May contain*

*core:* note

*header:* idno

*msdescription:* collection institution repository

*namesdates:* bloc country district geogName placeName region settlement

*Declaration*

```
element altIdentifier
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.placeNamePart_sequenceOptional,
    institution?,
    repository?,
    collection?,
    idno,
    note?
  )
}
```

*Example*

```
<altIdentifier>
  <settlement>San Marino</settlement>
  <repository>Huntington Library</repository>
  <idno>MS.El.26.C.9</idno>
</altIdentifier>
```

*Note* An identifying number of some kind must be supplied if known; if it is not known, this should be stated.

---

**<alternate>** an alternation of references

*Module* tagdocs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.repeatable (@context, @minOccurs, @maxOccurs)

*Member of* model.contentPart

*Contained by*

*tagdocs:* alternate content sequence

*May contain*

*tagdocs:* alternate classRef elementRef macroRef sequence textNode

*Declaration*

```
element alternate
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.repeatable.attributes,
  model.contentPart+
}
```

*Schematron* <sch:assert test="count(\*)>1">The alternate element must have at least two child elements</sch:assert>

*Example*

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <elementRef key="name"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```



```
<elementRef key="persName"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

This example content model permits either a <name> or a <persName>.

**<am>** (abbreviation marker) contains a sequence of letters or signs present in an abbreviation which are omitted or replaced in the expanded form of the abbreviation. [11.3.1.2. Abbreviation and Expansion]

*Module* transcr

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source))

*Member of* model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl pc phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*core:* add corr del orig reg sic unclear

*gaiji:* g

*textcrit:* app

*transcr:* damage handShift mod redo restore retrace supplied surplus undo

*Declaration*

```
element am
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.pPart.transcriptional ) *
}
```

*Example*

```
do you <abbr>Mr<am>.</am>
</abbr> Jones?
```

*Example*

```
<expan>
  <abbr>Aug<am>g</am>
</abbr>
<ex>ustorum duo</ex>
</expan>
```

---

**<analytic>** (analytic level) contains bibliographic elements describing an item (e.g. an article or poem) published within a monograph or journal and not as an independent publication. [3.11.2.1. Analytic, Monographic, and Series Levels]

*Module core*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))

*Contained by*

*core:* biblStruct

*May contain*

*core:* author date editor ptr ref respStmt textLang title

*header:* availability idno

*Declaration*

```
element analytic
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    author      | editor      | respStmt      | title      | model.ptrLike      | date      | textL
  )
}
```

*Example*

```

<biblStruct>
  <analytic>
    <author>Chesnutt, David</author>
    <title>Historical Editions in the States</title>
  </analytic>
  <monogr>
    <title level="j">Computers and the Humanities</title>
    <imprint>
      <biblScope>25.6</biblScope>
      <date when="1991-12">(December, 1991):</date>
      <biblScope>377-380</biblScope>
    </imprint>
  </monogr>
</biblStruct>

```

*Note* May contain titles and statements of responsibility (author, editor, or other), in any order. The <analytic> element may only occur within a <biblStruct>, where its use is mandatory for the description of an analytic level bibliographic item.

---

<anchor/> (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element. [8.4.2. Synchronization and Overlap 16.4. Correspondence and Alignment]

*Module linking*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.milestoneLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout

material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance  
 rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset org orgName persName person personGrp placeName region  
 residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*nets:* graph  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail  
*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
 front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc subst supplied surface  
 surfaceGrp surplus zone  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain* Empty element  
*Declaration*

element anchor { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, empty }

### Example

```
<s>The anchor is he<anchor xml:id="A234"/>re somewhere.</s>
<s>Help me find it.<ptr target="#A234"/>
</s>
```

*Note* On this element, the global *xml:id* attribute must be supplied to specify an identifier for the point at which this element occurs within a document. The value used may be chosen freely provided that it is unique within the document and is a syntactically valid name. There is no requirement for values containing numbers to be in sequence.

---

**<app>** (apparatus entry) contains one entry in a critical apparatus, with an optional lemma and usually one or more readings or notes on the relevant passage. [12.1.1. The Apparatus Entry]

*Module* textcrit

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( *@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space* )  
 (att.global.rendition ( *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition* )) (att.global.linking ( *@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select* )) (att.global.analytic  
 ( *@ana* )) (att.global.facs ( *@facs* )) (att.global.change ( *@change* ))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( *@cert*, *@resp* ))

**@type** classifies the variation contained in this element according to some convenient typology.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

**@from** identifies the beginning of the lemma in the base text.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

*Note* This attribute should be used when either the double-end point method of apparatus markup, or the location-referenced method with a URL rather than canonical reference, are used.

**@to** identifies the endpoint of the lemma in the base text.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.pointer**

*Note* This attribute is only used when the double-end point method of apparatus markup is used, when the encoded apparatus is not embedded *in-line* in the base-text.

**@loc** (location) indicates the location of the variation, when the location-referenced method of apparatus markup is used.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of **data.word** separated by whitespace

*Note* This attribute is used only when the location-referenced encoding method is used. It supplies a string containing a canonical reference for the passage to which the variation applies.

*Member of* model.pPart.transcriptional

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl pc phr s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg

*textcrit:* lem listApp rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* cb gap gb index lb milestone note pb

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*textcrit:* lem rdg rdgGrp wit witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```

element app
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute from { data.pointer }?,
  attribute to { data.pointer }?,
  attribute loc { list { data.word+ } }?,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( lem, model.global*, ( wit, model.global* )? )?,
    (
      ( model.rdgLike, model.global*, ( wit, model.global* )? )
      | ( rdgGrp, model.global*, ( wit, model.global* )? )
    )*
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<app>
  <lem wit="#El #Hg">Experience</lem>
  <rdg type="substantive" wit="#La">Experiment</rdg>
  <rdg type="substantive" wit="#Ra2">Eryment</rdg>
</app>

```

*Example*

```

<app type="substantive">
  <rdgGrp type="subvariants">
    <lem wit="#El #Hg">Experience</lem>
    <rdg wit="#Ha4">Experiens</rdg>
  </rdgGrp>
  <rdgGrp type="subvariants">
    <lem wit="#Cp #Ld1">Experiment</lem>
    <rdg wit="#La">Ex<g ref="#per"/>iment</rdg>
  </rdgGrp>
  <rdgGrp type="subvariants">
    <lem resp="#ed2013">Eriment</lem>
    <rdg wit="#Ra2">Eryment</rdg>
  </rdgGrp>
</app>

```

*Example*

```

<app loc="1">
  <rdg resp="#SEG">TIMΩΔA</rdg>
</app>

```

*Example*

```
<app loc="1-6">
  <note>Too badly worn to yield a text</note>
</app>
```

*Example*

```
<choice xml:id="choice3">
  <reg>σύμπαντα</reg>
  <orig>ΣΙΝΠΑΤΑΝ</orig>
</choice>
<!-- ... -->
<app from="#choice3">
  <note>Mommson's fanciful normalization, reproduced here, has not been accepted by
all recent editions</note>
</app>
```

**<appInfo>** (application information) records information about an application which has edited the TEI file. [2.3.10. The Application Information Element]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.encodingDescPart

*Contained by*

*header:* encodingDesc

*May contain*

*header:* application

*Declaration*

```
element appInfo { att.global.attributes, model.applicationLike+ }
```

*Example*

```
<appInfo>
  <application ident="Xaira" version="1.24">
    <label>XAIRA Indexer</label>
    <ptr target="#P1"/>
  </application>
</appInfo>
```

**<application>** provides information about an application which has acted upon the document. [2.3.10. The Application Information Element]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dateable (@calendar, @period) (att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso,

*@to-iso*) (att.dataable.custom ( *@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*,  
*@notAfter-custom*, *@from-custom*, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*, *@datingMethod*))

**@ident** supplies an identifier for the application, independent of its version number or display name.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* data.name

**@version** supplies a version number for the application, independent of its identifier or display name.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* data.versionNumber

*Member of* model.applicationLike

*Contained by*

*header:* appInfo

*May contain*

*core:* desc label p ptr ref

*linking:* ab

*Declaration*

```
element application
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  attribute ident { data.name },
  attribute version { data.versionNumber },
  ( model.labelLike+, ( model.ptrLike* | model.pLike* ) )
}
```

*Example*

```
<appInfo>
  <application ident="ImageMarkupTool1"
    notAfter="2006-06-01" version="1.5">
    <label>Image Markup Tool</label>
    <ptr target="#P1"/>
    <ptr target="#P2"/>
  </application>
</appInfo>
```

This example shows an appInfo element documenting the fact that version 1.5 of the Image Markup Tool1 application has an interest in two parts of a document which was last saved on June 6 2006. The parts concerned are accessible at the URLs given as target for the two <ptr/> elements.

---

**<arc>** encodes an arc, the connection from one node to another in a graph. [19.1. Graphs and Digraphs]

*Module* nets

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( *@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*)  
 (att.global.rendition ( *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking ( *@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic  
 ( *@ana*)) (att.global.facs ( *@facs*)) (att.global.change ( *@change*))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( *@cert*, *@resp*))

**@from** gives the identifier of the node which is adjacent from this arc.



*Status* Required*Datatype* data.pointer**@to** gives the identifier of the node which is adjacent to this arc.*Status* Required*Datatype* data.pointer*Contained by* graph*May contain**core:* label*Declaration*

```

element arc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute from { data.pointer },
  attribute to { data.pointer },
  ( label, label? )?
}

```

*Example*

```

<arc from="#T3" to="#T3">
  <label>OLD</label>
  <label>VIEUX</label>
</arc>

```

*Note* The <arc> element must be used if the arcs are labeled. Otherwise, arcs can be encoded using the *adj*, *adjTo* and *adjFrom* attributes on the <node> tags in the graph. Both <arc> tags and adjacency attributes can be used, but the resulting encoding would be highly redundant. Zero, one, or two children <label> elements may be present. The first occurrence of <label> provides a label for the arc; the second provides a second label for the arc, and should be used if a transducer is being encoded.

---

**<argument>** contains a formal list or prose description of the topics addressed by a subdivision of a text. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions 4.6. Title Pages]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart*Contained by**core:* lg list*drama:* castList epilogue performance prologue*figures:* figure table*msdescription:* msItem

*textstructure:* back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group opener  
titlePage

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* bibl biblStruct cb cit desc gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note  
p pb q quote said sp stage  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc textread  
*dictionaries:* entry entryFree superEntry  
*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view  
*figures:* figure notatedMusic table  
*header:* biblFull  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  
*msdescription:* msDesc  
*namesdates:* listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace  
*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* classSpec constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec listRef macroSpec moduleSpec  
schemaSpec specGrp specGrpRef  
*textcrit:* listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin  
*Declaration*

```

element argument
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( model.global | model.headLike )*, ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+ )
}

```

*Example*

```

<argument>
  <p>Monte Video – Maldonado – Excursion
    to R Polanco – Lazo and Bolas – Partridges –
    Absence of Trees – Deer – Capybara, or River Hog –
    Tucutuco – Molothrus, cuckoo-like habits – Tyrant
    Flycatcher – Mocking-bird – Carrion Hawks –
    Tubes formed by Lightning – House struck</p>
</argument>

```

*Note* Often contains either a list or a paragraph

---

**<att>** (attribute) contains the name of an attribute appearing within running text. [22. Documentation Elements]

*Module* tagdocs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))  
@scheme supplies an identifier for the scheme in which this name is defined.  
*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Sample values include:* **TEI** (text encoding initiative) this attribute is part of the TEI scheme.[Default]

**DBK** (docbook) this attribute is part of the Docbook scheme.

**XX** (unknown) this attribute is part of an unknown scheme.

**imaginary** the attribute is from a non-existent scheme, for illustrative purposes only

**XHTML** the attribute is part of the XHTML language

**XML** the attribute is part of the XML language

**XI** the attribute is defined in the xInclude schema

*Member of* model.phrase.xml

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain* Character data only

*Declaration*

element att
-------------

```
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute scheme { data.enumerated }?,
  data.name}
```

*Example*

**<p>**The TEI defines several **<soCalled>**global**</soCalled>** attributes; their names include **<att>**xml:id**</att>**, **<att>**rend**</att>**, **<att>**xml:lang**</att>**, **<att>**n**</att>**, **<att>**xml:space**</att>**, and **<att>**xml:base**</att>**; **<att scheme="XX">**type**</att>** is not amongst them.**</p>**

*Note* A namespace prefix may be used in order to specify the scheme as an alternative to specifying it via the scheme attribute: it takes precedence

---

**<attDef>** (attribute definition) contains the definition of a single attribute. [22.4.5. Attribute List Specification]

*Module* tagdocs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space ) (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change )) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) att.identified ( @ident, @predeclare, @module, @status ) (att.combinable ( @mode ) (att.deprecated ( @validUntil ) )

**@usage** specifies the optionality of the attribute.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Legal values are:* **req** (required)

**rec** (recommended )

**opt** (optional ) [Default]

**@ns** (namespace) specifies the namespace to which this attribute belongs

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.namespace**

*Default* <http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0>

*Content model:* attList

*May contain*

*core:* desc gloss

*tagdocs:* altIdent constraintSpec datatype defaultVal equiv exemplum remarks valDesc valList

*Declaration*

```
element attDef
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.identified.attributes,
  attribute usage { "req" | "rec" | "opt" }?,
  attribute ns { data.namespace }?,
  (
    ( model.glossLike | model.descLike )*,
    datatype?,
  )
}
```

```

        constraintSpec*,
        defaultVal?,
        ( valList | valDesc+ )?,
        exemplum*,
        remarks*
    )
}

```

*Schematron* <s:ns prefix="teix" uri="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/Examples"/>  
 <s:assert test="ancestor::teix:egXML[@valid='feasible'] or @mode eq 'change' or  
 @mode eq 'delete' or tei:datatype or tei:valList[@type='closed']">Attribute: the  
 definition of the @<s:value-of select="@ident"/> attribute in the  
 <s:value-of select="ancestor::\*[@ident][1]/@ident"/> <s:value-of select="" "/>  
 <s:value-of select="local-name(ancestor::\*[@ident][1])"/> should have a closed  
 valList or a datatype</s:assert>

*Schematron* <sch:rule context="tei:attDef[@usage eq 'req']">  
 <sch:report test="tei:defaultVal">It does not make sense to make  
 "<sch:value-of select="normalize-space(tei:defaultVal)"/>" the default value of  
 @<sch:value-of select="@ident"/>, because that attribute is  
 required.</sch:report></sch:rule>

*Schematron* <sch:rule context="tei:attDef[ tei:defaultVal and tei:valList[@type eq  
 'closed'] and tei:datatype[ @maxOccurs > 1 or @minOccurs > 1 or @maxOccurs =  
 'unbounded' ] ]"> <sch:assert test=" tokenize(normalize-space(tei:defaultVal),' ') =  
 tei:valList/tei:valItem/@ident">In the  
 <sch:value-of select="local-name(ancestor::\*[@ident][1])"/> defining  
 <sch:value-of select="ancestor::\*[@ident][1]/@ident"/> the default value of the  
 @<sch:value-of select="@ident"/> attribute is not among the closed list of possible  
 values</sch:assert></sch:rule>

*Schematron* <sch:rule context="tei:attDef[ tei:defaultVal and tei:valList[@type eq  
 'closed'] and tei:datatype[ not(@maxOccurs) or ( if ( @maxOccurs castable as  
 xs:integer ) then ( @maxOccurs cast as xs:integer eq 1 ) else false() ) ] ]">  
 <sch:assert test="string(tei:defaultVal) = tei:valList/tei:valItem/@ident">In the  
 <sch:value-of select="local-name(ancestor::\*[@ident][1])"/> defining  
 <sch:value-of select="ancestor::\*[@ident][1]/@ident"/> the default value of the  
 @<sch:value-of select="@ident"/> attribute is not among the closed list of possible  
 values</sch:assert></sch:rule>

#### Example

```

<attDef ident="type" usage="rec">
  <desc>specifies a name conventionally used for this level of subdivision, e.g.
  <val>act</val>, <val>volume</val>, <val>book</val>, <val>section</val>,
  <val>canto</val>,
  etc.</desc>
  <datatype>
    <rng:text/>
  </datatype>
</attDef>

```

<attList> contains documentation for all the attributes associated with this element, as  
 a series of <attDef> elements. [22.4.4. Element Specifications 22.4.6. Element  
 Classes]

Module tagdocs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))  
**@org** (organization) specifies whether all the attributes in the list are available  
 (org="group") or only one of them (org="choice")  
*Status* Optional  
*Datatype* data.enumerated  
*Legal values are:* **group** grouped[Default]  
**choice** alternated

*Contained by:* attList classSpec elementSpec

*May contain*

*tagdocs:* attDef attList attRef

*Declaration*

```
element attList
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute org { "group" | "choice" }?,
  ( attRef | attDef | attList )+
}
```

*Example*

```
<attList>
<attDef ident="type" usage="opt">
  <desc>type of schema</desc>
  <datatype>
    <rng:ref name="data.enumerated"/>
  </datatype>
</attDef>
</attList>
```

---

**<attRef/>** (attribute pointer) points to the definition of an attribute or group of attributes. [22.2. Modules and Schemas]

*Module* tagdocs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))  
**@class** the name of the attribute class  
*Status* Optional  
*Datatype* data.word  
**@name** the name of the attribute  
*Status* Optional  
*Datatype* data.text

*Contained by:* attList

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```

element attRef
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute class { data.word }?,
  attribute name { data.text }?,
  empty
}

```

Example

```
<attRef class="att.global" name="xml:id"/>
```

**<author>** in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef)  
 (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

Member of model.respLike

Contained by

core: analytic bibl monogr

derived-module-tei\_readingExp: textread

header: editionStmt titleStmt

msdescription: msItem msItemStruct

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

certainty: certainty precision respons

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

derived-module-tei\_readingExp: correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo

geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken*: incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs*: att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit*: app witDetail  
*transcr*: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse*: caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element author
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

*Example*

```

<author>British Broadcasting Corporation</author>
<author>La Fayette, Marie Madeleine Pioche de la Vergne, comtesse de
(1634–1693)</author>
<author>Anonymous</author>
<author>Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation</author>
<author>
  <persName>Beaumont, Francis</persName> and
  <persName>John Fletcher</persName>
</author>
<author>
  <orgName key="BBC">British Broadcasting
  Corporation</orgName>: Radio 3 Network
</author>

```

*Note* Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use a generally recognized name authority file to supply the content for this element. The attributes *key* or *ref* may also be used to reference canonical information about the author(s) intended from any appropriate authority, such as a library catalogue or online resource. In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network responsible for making the broadcast. Where an author is unknown or unspecified, this element may contain text such as *Unknown* or *Anonymous*. When the appropriate TEI modules are in use, it may also contain detailed tagging of the names used for people, organizations or places, in particular where multiple names are given.

---

**<authority>** (release authority) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making a work available, other than a publisher or distributor. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.publicationStmtPart.agency

*Contained by*



*core:* monogr  
*header:* publicationStmt  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index  
lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled  
term time title  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang  
*figures:* figure notatedMusic  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident tag val  
*textcrit:* witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst  
substJoin  
*Declaration*

element authority { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }
--

#### Example

```
<authority>John Smith</authority>
```

<availability> supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

#### Module header

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.declarable (@default)  
**@status** supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype*

data.enumerated
-----------------

*Legal values are:* **free** the text is freely available.

**unknown** the status of the text is unknown.[Default]

**restricted** the text is not freely available.

*Member of* model.biblPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail

*Contained by*

*core:* analytic bibl monogr series

*header:* publicationStmt

*msdescription:* adminInfo

*May contain*

*core:* p

*header:* licence

*linking:* ab

*Declaration*

```
element availability
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  attribute status { "free" | "unknown" | "restricted" }?,
  ( model.availabilityPart | model.pLike )+
}
```

*Example*

```
<availability status="restricted">
  <p>Available for academic research purposes only.</p>
</availability>
<availability status="free">
  <p>In the public domain</p>
</availability>
<availability status="restricted">
  <p>Available under licence from the publishers.</p>
</availability>
```

*Example*

```
<availability>
  <licence target="http://opensource.org/licenses/MIT">
    <p>The MIT License
      applies to this document.</p>
    <p>Copyright (C) 2011 by The University of Victoria</p>
    <p>Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy
      of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal
      in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights
      to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell
      copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is
      furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:</p>
    <p>The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in
      all copies or substantial portions of the Software.</p>
    <p>THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR
      IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY,
      FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE
      AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER
      LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM,
      OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN
      THE SOFTWARE.</p>
  </licence>
</availability>
```

*Note* A consistent format should be adopted

---

**<back>** (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text.  
[4.7. Back Matter 4. Default Text Structure]

*Module textstructure*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.declaring (@decls)

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* floatingText text

*transcr:* facsimile

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* cb divGen gap gb head index lb list milestone note p pb

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc

*drama:* castList epilogue performance prologue set

*figures:* figure notatedMusic table

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*namesdates:* listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*textcrit:* listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument byline closer div div1 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 docTitle epigraph postscript signed titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```

element back
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    (
      model.frontPart          | model.pLike.front          | model.pLike          | model.list
    (
      (
        (
          ( model.div1Like ),
          ( model.frontPart | model.div1Like | model.global ) *
        )
        | (
          ( model.divLike ),
          ( model.frontPart | model.divLike | model.global ) *
        )
      ) ?
    ),
    ( ( ( model.divBottomPart ), ( model.divBottomPart | model.global ) * ) ? )
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<back>
<div1 type="appendix">
  <head>The Golden Dream or, the Ingenuous Confession</head>
  <p>To shew the Depravity of human Nature </p>

```

```
</div1>
<div1 type="epistle">
  <head>A letter from the Printer, which he desires may be inserted</head>
  <salute>Sir.</salute>
  <p>I have done with your Copy, so you may return it to the Vatican, if you please
</p>
</div1>
<div1 type="advert">
  <head>The Books usually read by the Scholars of Mrs Two-Shoes are these and are
sold at Mr
    Newbery's at the Bible and Sun in St Paul's Church-yard.</head>
  <list>
    <item n="1">The Christmas Box, Price 1d.</item>
    <item n="2">The History of Giles Gingerbread, 1d.</item>
    <item n="42">A Curious Collection of Travels, selected from the Writers of all
Nations,
      10 Vol, Pr. bound 1l.</item>
  </list>
</div1>
<div1 type="advert">
  <head>
    <hi rend="center">By the KING's Royal Patent,</hi> Are sold by J. NEWBERY, at the
    Bible and Sun in St. Paul's Church-Yard.</head>
  <list>
    <item n="1">Dr. James's Powders for Fevers, the Small-Pox, Measles, Colds, &c.
      2s. 6d</item>
    <item n="2">Dr. Hooper's Female Pills, 1s.</item>
  </list>
</div1>
</back>
```

*Note* Because cultural conventions differ as to which elements are grouped as back matter and which as front matter, the content models for the <back> and <front> elements are identical.

---

**<bibl>** (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged. [3.11.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2.7. The Source Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

*Module core*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.declarable (@default) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.docStatus (@status)

*Member of* model.biblLike model.biblPart

*Contained by*

*core:* add bibl cit corr del desc emph head hi item l listBibl meeting note orig p q quote ref reg relatedItem said sic stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure  
*header:* change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy  
 typeNote  
*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
 filiation foliation layout msItem msItemStruct musicNotation origin provenance  
 signatures source summary support surrogates  
*namesdates:* climate event location org person personGrp place population state terrain  
 trait  
*spoken:* broadcast scriptStmnt writing  
*textcrit:* lem rdg witness  
*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
 imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address author bibl biblScope cb choice citedRange corr date del distinct  
 editor email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp  
 meeting mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr pubPlace publisher ref reg  
 relatedItem respStmnt rs series sic soCalled term textLang time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang  
*figures:* figure notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* availability distributor edition extent funder idno principal sponsor  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* depth dim height msIdentifier width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName listRelation location nameLink offset orgName persName  
 placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* code ident  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*Declaration*

```

element bibl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  (

```

```
    text
  | model.gLike      | model.highlighted    | model.pPart.data    | model.pPart.edit
}
```

*Example*

```
<bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in English (Yale, 1990)</bibl>
```

*Example*

```
<bibl>
  <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>. In
  <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.
  <publisher>OUP</publisher>
  <date>1968</date>.
</bibl>
```

*Example*

```
<bibl subtype="book_chapter" type="article"
xml:id="carlin_2003">
  <author>
    <name>
      <surname>Carlin</surname>
      (<forename>Claire</forename>)</name>
    </author>,
  <title level="a">The Staging of Impotence : France's last
    congrès</title> dans
  <bibl type="monogr">
    <title level="m">Theatrum mundi : studies in honor of Ronald W.
      Tobin</title>, éd.
  <editor>
    <name>
      <forename>Claire</forename>
      <surname>Carlin</surname>
    </name>
  </editor> et
  <editor>
    <name>
      <forename>Kathleen</forename>
      <surname>Wine</surname>
    </name>
  </editor>,
  <pubPlace>Charlottesville, Va.</pubPlace>,
  <publisher>Rookwood Press</publisher>,
  <date when="2003">2003</date>.
</bibl>
</bibl>
```

*Note* Contains phrase-level elements, together with any combination of elements from the *biblPart* class

---

**<biblFull>** (fully-structured bibliographic citation) contains a fully-structured bibliographic citation, in which all components of the TEI file description are present. [3.11.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2. The File Description 2.2.7. The Source Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic

(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.declarable (@default) att.sortable  
 (@sortKey) att.docStatus (@status)

*Member of* model.biblLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l listBibl meeting note orig p q quote ref  
 reg relatedItem said sic stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy  
 typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
 filiation foliation layout msItem musicNotation origin provenance signatures source  
 summary support surrogates

*namesdates:* climate event location org person personGrp place population state terrain  
 trait

*spoken:* broadcast scriptStmt writing

*textcrit:* lem rdg witness

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
 imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*header:* editionStmt extent notesStmt publicationStmt seriesStmt sourceDesc titleStmt

*Declaration*

```

element biblFull
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  (
    (
      titleStmt,
      editionStmt?,
      extent?,
      publicationStmt,
      seriesStmt?,
      notesStmt?
    ),
    sourceDesc*
  )
}

```

*Example*

```
<biblFull>
  <titleStmt>
    <title>The Feminist Companion to Literature in English: women writers from the
middle ages
      to the present</title>
    <author>Blain, Virginia</author>
    <author>Clements, Patricia</author>
    <author>Grundy, Isobel</author>
  </titleStmt>
  <editionStmt>
    <edition>UK edition</edition>
  </editionStmt>
  <extent>1231 pp</extent>
  <publicationStmt>
    <publisher>Yale University Press</publisher>
    <pubPlace>New Haven and London</pubPlace>
    <date>1990</date>
  </publicationStmt>
  <sourceDesc>
    <p>No source: this is an original work</p>
  </sourceDesc>
</biblFull>
```

---

**<biblScope>** (scope of bibliographic reference) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work. [3.11.2.5. Scopes and Ranges in Bibliographic Citations]

*Module core*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.citing (@unit, @from, @to)

*Member of* model.imprintPart

*Contained by*

*core:* bibl imprint monogr series

*header:* seriesStmt

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width



*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element biblScope
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.citing.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example*

```
<biblScope>pp 12–34</biblScope>
<biblScope from="12" to="34" unit="page"/>
<biblScope unit="volume">II</biblScope>
<biblScope unit="page">12</biblScope>
```

*Note* When a single page is being cited, use the *from* and *to* attributes with an identical value. When no clear endpoint is provided, the *from* attribute should be used without *to*. For example, if the citation has ‘p. 3ff’ as a page reference.

<biblStruct> (structured bibliographic citation) contains a structured bibliographic citation, in which only bibliographic sub-elements appear and in a specified order. [3.11.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2.7. The Source Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

*Module core*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.declarable (@default) att.typed (@type,  
@subtype) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.docStatus (@status)

*Member of* model.biblLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l listBibl meeting note orig p q quote ref  
reg relatedItem said sic stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy  
typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
filiation foliation layout msItem msItemStruct musicNotation origin provenance  
signatures source summary support surrogates

*namesdates:* climate event location org person personGrp place population state terrain  
trait

*spoken:* broadcast scriptStmt writing

*textcrit:* lem rdg witness

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*core:* analytic citedRange monogr note ptr ref relatedItem series

*header:* idno

*textcrit:* witDetail

*Declaration*

```
element biblStruct
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  (
    analytic*,
    ( monogr, series* )+,
    ( model.noteLike | idno | model.ptrLike | relatedItem | citedRange )*
  )
}
```

*Schematron* The use of an <idno> element as a direct child of <biblStruct> is deprecated. Rather, <idno> should appear as a child of a <monogr>, <analytic>, or <series>. <sch:report role="nonfatal" test="child::tei:idno">WARNING: use of deprecated method — the use of the idno element as a direct child of the biblStruct element will be removed from the TEI on 2016-09-18</sch:report>

*Example*

```
<biblStruct>
  <monogr>
    <author>Blain, Virginia</author>
    <author>Clements, Patricia</author>
    <author>Grundy, Isobel</author>
    <title>The Feminist Companion to Literature in English: women writers from the
middle ages
to the present</title>
    <edition>first edition</edition>
    <imprint>
      <publisher>Yale University Press</publisher>
      <pubPlace>New Haven and London</pubPlace>
      <date>1990</date>
    </imprint>
  </monogr>
</biblStruct>
```

**<bicond>** (bi-conditional feature-structure constraint) defines a biconditional feature-structure constraint; both consequent and antecedent are specified as feature structures or groups of feature structures; the constraint is satisfied if both subsume a given feature structure, or if both do not. [18.11. Feature System Declaration]

*Module* iso-fs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Contained by*

*iso-fs:* fsConstraints

*May contain*

*iso-fs:* f fs iff

*Declaration*

```
element bicond { att.global.attributes, ( ( fs | f ), iff, ( fs | f ) ) }
```

*Example*

```
<bicond>
  <fs>
    <f name="F00">
      <symbol value="42"/>
    </f>
  </fs>
  <iff/>
  <fs>
    <f name="BAR">
      <binary value="true"/>
    </f>
  </fs>
</bicond>
```

**<binary/>** (binary value) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which can contain either of exactly two possible values. [18.2. Elementary Feature Structures and the Binary Feature Value]

*Module* iso-fs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)  
 @value supplies a binary value.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* `data.truthValue`

*Note* This attribute has a datatype of data.truthValue, which may be represented by the values 1 or true, or 0 or false.

*Member of* model.featureVal.single

*Contained by*

*iso-fs:* f fvLib if vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel vMerge vNot vRange

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element binary
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datcat.attributes,
  attribute value { data.truthValue },
  empty
}
```

*Example*

```
<f name="strident">
  <binary value="true"/>
</f>
<f name="exclusive">
  <binary value="false"/>
</f>
```

*Note* The value attribute may take any value permitted for attributes of the W3C datatype Boolean: this includes for example the strings **true** or **1** which are equivalent.

---

**<binaryObject>** provides encoded binary data representing an inline graphic, audio, video or other object. [3.9. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space ) ( att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition ) ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select ) ) ( att.global.analytic ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) ( att.global.change ( @change ) ) ( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) ) att.media ( @width, @height, @scale ) ( att.internetMedia ( @mimeType ) ) att.timed ( @start, @end ) ( att.duration ( att.duration.w3c ( @dur ) ) ( att.duration.iso ( @dur-iso ) ) ) att.typed ( @type, @subtype )

**@encoding** The encoding used to encode the binary data. If not specified, this is assumed to be Base64.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of **data.word** separated by whitespace

*Member of* model.graphicLike model.titlepagePart

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* char glyph

*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance  
rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit  
forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset  
orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex  
socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage facsimile fw metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
surplus zone

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain* Character data only

*Declaration*

```

element binaryObject
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.media.attributes,
  att.timed.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute encoding { list { data.word+ } }?,
  text
}

```

*Example*

```

<binaryObject mimeType="image/gif">
R0LG0DdhMAAwAPAAAAAAP///yAAAAAAMAaAAAC8IyPqcvt3wCcDkiLc7C0qwy
GHhSWpjQu5yqmCYsapyuvUULvONm0ZtfzgFzByTB10Qgx0R0TqBQejhRNz0fkVJ
+5YiUqrXF5Y5lKh/DeuNcP5yLWGsEbtLi0Spa/TPg7JpJHxyendzWTBfX0cx0nK
PjgBzi4diinWGdkF8kjdfnycQZXZeYGejmJLZeGL9i2icVqaNvailT6F5iJ90m6
mvuTS40K05M0vDk004XUtwvK0zrcd3iq9uisF81M10IcR7lEewwcLp7tuNNkM3u
Nna3F2JQFo97Vriy/Xl4/f1cf5VWzXyym7PH hhx4dbgYKAAA7</binaryObject>

```

<binding> contains a description of one binding, i.e. type of covering, boards, etc.  
applied to a manuscript. [10.7.3.1. Binding Descriptions]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.datable (@calendar, @period)  
(att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso  
(@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom

(*@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*, *@notAfter-custom*, *@from-custom*, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*, *@datingMethod*))

**@contemporary** specifies whether or not the binding is contemporary with the majority of its contents

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.xTruthValue

*Note* The value true indicates that the binding is contemporaneous with its contents; the value false that it is not. The value unknown should be used when the date of either binding or manuscript is unknown

*Contained by* *msdescription*: bindingDesc

*May contain*

*core*: p

*linking*: ab

*msdescription*: condition decoNote

*Declaration*

```
element binding
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.databl.attributes,
  attribute contemporary { data.xTruthValue }?,
  ( model.pLike | condition | decoNote )+
}
```

*Example*

```
<binding contemporary="true">
  <p>Contemporary blind stamped leather over wooden boards with evidence of a fore
edge clasp
  closing to the back cover.</p>
</binding>
```

*Example*

```
<bindingDesc>
  <binding contemporary="false">
    <p>Quarter bound by the Phillipps' binder, Bretherton, with his sticker on the
front
    pastedown.</p>
  </binding>
  <binding contemporary="false">
    <p>Rebound by an unknown 19th c. company; edges cropped and gilt.</p>
  </binding>
</bindingDesc>
```

---

**<bindingDesc>** (binding description) describes the present and former bindings of a manuscript, either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of distinct <binding> elements, one for each binding of the manuscript. [10.7.3.1. Binding Descriptions]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (*att.global.rendition* (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (*att.global.linking* (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*)) (*att.global.change* (*@change*)) (*att.global.responsibility* (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Member of model.physDescPart

Contained by

msdescription: physDesc

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

msdescription: binding condition decoNote

Declaration

```

element bindingDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( model.pLike | decoNote | condition )+ | binding+ )
}

```

Example

```

<bindingDesc>
  <p>Sewing not visible; tightly rebound over
  19th-cent. pasteboards, reusing panels of 16th-cent. brown leather with
  gilt tooling à la fanfare, Paris c. 1580-90, the centre of each
  cover inlaid with a 17th-cent. oval medallion of red morocco tooled in
  gilt (perhaps replacing the identifying mark of a previous owner); the
  spine similarly tooled, without raised bands or title-piece; coloured
  endbands; the edges of the leaves and boards gilt.Boxed.</p>
</bindingDesc>

```

**<birth>** contains information about a person's birth, such as its date and place. [15.2.2. The Participant Description]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) att.editLike ( @evidence, @instant)  
 (att.dimensions ( @unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope)) (att.ranging  
 ( @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source ( @source)) att.datable  
 ( @calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c ( @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from,  
 @to)) (att.datable.iso ( @when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso,  
 @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom ( @when-custom, @notBefore-custom,  
 @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))  
 att.naming ( @role, @nymRef) (att.canonical ( @key, @ref))

Member of model.persEventLike

Contained by

derived-module-tei\_readingExp: addressee listener reader sender

namesdates: person personGrp

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

certainty: certainty precision respons

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan

foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp*: correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries*: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures*: figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji*: g  
*header*: idno  
*iso-fs*: fLib fs fvLib  
*linking*: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription*: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates*: addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken*: incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs*: att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit*: app witDetail  
*transcr*: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse*: caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element birth
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

*Example*

```
<birth>Before 1920, Midlands region.</birth>
```

*Example*

```

<birth when="1960-12-10">In a small cottage near
<name type="place">Aix-la-Chapelle</name>,
early in the morning of <date>10 Dec 1960</date>
</birth>

```

---

**<bloc>** contains the name of a geo-political unit consisting of two or more nation states or countries. [13.2.3. Place Names]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef)  
(att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dataable (@calendar,  
@period) (att.dataable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))  
(att.dataable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso))



(att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom,  
@from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))

Member of model.placeNamePart

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc  
distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l  
label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote  
ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

derived-module-tei\_readingExp: readingExpRef

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition  
extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote  
sponsor tagUsage typeNote

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier catchwords collation colophon  
condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit  
layout material msIdentifier musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin  
provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates  
watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink  
nationality occupation offset org orgName persName place placeName region  
residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

spoken: u writing

tagdocs: eg valDesc

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

verse: metSym rhyme

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

certainty: certainty precision respons

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

derived-module-tei\_readingExp: correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element bloc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

*Example*

```

<bloc type="union">the European Union</bloc>
<bloc type="continent">Africa</bloc>

```

---

**<body>** (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. [4. Default Text Structure]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.declaring (@decls)

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* floatingText text

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* bibl biblStruct cb cit desc divGen gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl  
 meeting milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc textread

*dictionaries:* entry entryFree superEntry

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure notatedMusic table

*header:* biblFull

*iso-fs*: fLib fs fvLib  
*linking*: ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  
*msdescription*: msDesc  
*namesdates*: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace  
*nets*: eTree forest graph listForest tree  
*spoken*: incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing  
*tagdocs*: classSpec constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec listRef macroSpec moduleSpec  
 schemaSpec specGrp specGrpRef  
*textcrit*: listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure*: argument byline closer dateline div div1 docAuthor docDate epigraph  
 floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer  
*transcr*: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin  
*Declaration*

```

element body
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( ( model.divTop ), ( model.global | model.divTop )* )?,
    ( ( model.divGenLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )?,
    (
      ( ( model.divLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
      | ( ( model.divlLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
      | (
        ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
        (
          ( ( model.divLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
          | ( ( model.divlLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
        )?
      )
    ),
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}

```

<broadcast> describes a broadcast used as the source of a spoken text. [8.2.

Documenting the Source of Transcribed Speech 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

*Module* spoken

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 ( att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition ) ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select ) ) ( att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) ( att.global.change ( @change ) )  
 ( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) ) att.declarable ( @default )

*Member of* model.recordingPart

*Contained by*

*spoken*: recording

*May contain*

*core*: bibl biblStruct listBibl p

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp*: textread

*header:* biblFull

*linking:* ab

*msdescription:* msDesc

*spoken:* recording

*Declaration*

```
element broadcast
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | model.biblLike | recording )
}
```

*Example*

```
<broadcast>
  <bibl>
    <author>Radio Trent</author>
    <title>Gone Tomorrow</title>
    <respStmt>
      <resp>Presenter</resp>
      <name>Tim Maby</name>
    </respStmt>
    <respStmt>
      <resp>Producer</resp>
      <name>Mary Kerr</name>
    </respStmt>
    <date when="1989-06-12T12:30:00">12 June 89, 1230 pm</date>
  </bibl>
</broadcast>
```

---

**<byline>** contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers 4.5. Front Matter]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space ) (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change)) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

*Contained by*

*core:* lg list

*drama:* castList epilogue performance prologue

*figures:* figure table

*msdescription:* msItem

*textstructure:* back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group opener titlePage

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*textstructure:* docAuthor  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element byline
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | docAuthor | model.global ) *
}

```

#### Example

```
<byline>Written by a CITIZEN who continued all the
while in London. Never made publick before.</byline>
```

#### Example

```
<byline>Written from her own MEMORANDUMS</byline>
```

#### Example

```
<byline>By George Jones, Political Editor, in Washington</byline>
```

#### Example

```
<byline>BY
<docAuthor>THOMAS PHILIPOTT,</docAuthor>
Master of Arts,
(Sometimes)
Of Clare-Hall in Cambridge.</byline>
```

*Note* The byline on a title page may include either the name or a description for the document's author. Where the name is included, it may optionally be tagged using the <docAuthor> element.

*Module analysis*

*Attributes* `Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)`  
(`att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)`) (`att.global.linking (@corresp,`  
`@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)`) (`att.global.analytic`  
(`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs (@facs)`) (`att.global.change (@change)`)  
(`att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)`) `att.segLike (@function)` (`att.metrical`  
(`@met, @real, @rhyme`)) (`att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)`) (`att.fragmentable`  
(`@part`)) `att.typed (@type, @subtype)`

*Member of* `model.segLike`

*Contained by*

*analysis:* `cl m pc phr s w`

*core:* `abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor`  
`email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure`  
`mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic`  
`soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear`

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* `readingExpRef`

*dictionaries:* `case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph`  
`iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr`

*drama:* `actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view`

*figures:* `cell`

*header:* `change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote`

*linking:* `ab seg`

*msdescription:* `accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition`  
`custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout`  
`material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric`  
`secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark`

*namesdates:* `addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit`  
`forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset`  
`orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex`  
`socecStatus surname`

*spoken:* `u writing`

*tagdocs:* `eg`

*textcrit:* `lem rdg wit witDetail`

*textstructure:* `byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint`  
`imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer`

*transcr:* `damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone`

*verse:* `rhyme`

*May contain*

*gaiji:* `g`

*Declaration*

```
element c
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.xtext}

```

*Example*

```

<phr>
  <c>M</c>
  <c>0</c>
  <c>A</c>
  <c>I</c>
  <w>doth</w>
  <w>sway</w>
  <w>my</w>
  <w>life</w>
</phr>

```

*Note* Contains a single character, a <g> element, or a sequence of graphemes to be treated as a single character. The *type* attribute is used to indicate the function of this segmentation, taking values such as letter, punctuation, or digit etc.

**<cRefPattern>** (canonical reference pattern) specifies an expression and replacement pattern for transforming a canonical reference into a URI. [2.3.6.3. Milestone Method 2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration 2.3.6.2. Search-and-Replace Method]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.patternReplacement (@matchPattern, @replacementPattern)

*Contained by*

*header:* refsDecl

*May contain*

*core:* p

*linking:* ab

*Declaration*

```

element cRefPattern
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.patternReplacement.attributes,
  model.pLike*
}

```

*Example*

```

<cRefPattern matchPattern="([1-9A-Za-z])\s+([0-9]+):([0-9]+)"
replacementPattern="#xpath(//div[@type='book'][@n='$1']/div[@type='chap'][@n='$2']/div[@type='verse'][@n='$3'])"

```

*Note* The result of the substitution may be either an absolute or a relative URI reference. In the latter case it is combined with the value of *xml:base* in force at the place where the *cRef* attribute occurs to form an absolute URI in the usual manner as prescribed by XML Base.

**<caesura/>** marks the point at which a metrical line may be divided. [6.2. Components of the Verse Line]

*Module* verse

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.IPart

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email  
emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure  
mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic  
soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit  
forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset  
orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex  
socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration* `element caesura { att.global.attributes, empty }`

*Example*

```
<l>Hwæt we Gar-Dena <caesura/> in gear-dagum</l>  
<l>peod-cyninga <caesura/> þrym gefrunon,</l>  
<l>hy ða æpelingas <caesura/> ellen fremedon.</l>
```

---

**<calendar>** describes a calendar or dating system used in a dating formula in the text.  
[2.4.5. Calendar Description]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,



(@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)

Contained by

header: calendarDesc

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Declaration

```

element calendar
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  model.pLike+
}

```

Example

```

<calendarDesc>
  <calendar xml:id="Julian">
    <p>Julian Calendar (including proleptic)</p>
  </calendar>
</calendarDesc>

```

Example

```

<calendarDesc>
  <calendar target="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Egyptian_calendar"
    xml:id="Egyptian">
    <p>Egyptian calendar (as defined by Wikipedia)</p>
  </calendar>
</calendarDesc>

```

---

**<calendarDesc>** (calendar description) contains a description of the calendar system used in any dating expression found in the text. [2.4. The Profile Description 2.4.5. Calendar Description]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

header: calendar

Declaration

```

element calendarDesc { att.global.attributes, calendar+ }

```

Example

```
<calendarDesc>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_AD">
    <p>Anno Domini (Christian Era)</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_AH">
    <p>Anno Hegirae (Muhammedan Era)</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_AME">
    <p>Mauludi Era (solar years since Mohammed's birth)</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_AM">
    <p>Anno Mundi (Jewish Calendar)</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_AP">
    <p>Anno Persici</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_AS">
    <p>Aji Saka Era (Java)</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_BE">
    <p>Buddhist Era</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_CB">
    <p>Cooch Behar Era</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_CE">
    <p>Common Era</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_CL">
    <p>Chinese Lunar Era</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_CS">
    <p>Chula Sakarat Era</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_EE">
    <p>Ethiopian Era</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_FE">
    <p>Fasli Era</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_ISO">
    <p>ISO 8601 calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_JE">
    <p>Japanese Calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_KE">
    <p>Khalsa Era (Sikh calendar)</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_KY">
    <p>Kali Yuga</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_ME">
    <p>Malabar Era</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_MS">
    <p>Monarchic Solar Era</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_NS">
    <p>Nepal Samwat Era</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_OS">
    <p>Old Style (Julian Calendar)</p>
  </calendar>
</calendarDesc>
```

```

</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_RS">
  <p>Rattanakosin (Bangkok) Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_SE">
  <p>Saka Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_SH">
  <p>Mohammedan Solar Era (Iran)</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_SS">
  <p>Saka Samvat</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_TE">
  <p>Tripurabda Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_VE">
  <p>Vikrama Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_VS">
  <p>Vikrama Samvat Era</p>
</calendar>
</calendarDesc>

```

*Example*

```

<calendarDesc>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Gregorian">
    <p>Gregorian calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Julian">
    <p>Julian calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Islamic">
    <p>Islamic or Muslim (hijri) lunar calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Hebrew">
    <p>Hebrew or Jewish lunisolar calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Revolutionary">
    <p>French Revolutionary calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Iranian">
    <p>Iranian or Persian (Jalaali) solar calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Coptic">
    <p>Coptic or Alexandrian calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Chinese">
    <p>Chinese lunisolar calendar</p>
  </calendar>
</calendarDesc>

```

*Example*

```

<calendarDesc>
  <calendar target="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Egyptian_calendar"
    xml:id="cal_Egyptian">
    <p>Egyptian calendar (as defined by Wikipedia)</p>
  </calendar>
</calendarDesc>

```

*Note* In the first example above, calendars and short codes for *xml:ids* are from W3 guidelines at <http://www.w3.org/TR/xpath-functions-11/#lang-cal-country>

**<camera>** describes a particular camera angle or viewpoint in a screen play. [7.3.1.

Technical Information 7.3. Other Types of Performance Text]

*Module* drama

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.stageLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l lg meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic  
sp stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
support surrogates

*spoken:* writing

*textcrit:* lem rdg witness

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element camera
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

*Example*

```
<view>George glances at the window—and freezes.
<camera type="cut">New angle—shock cut</camera>
Out the window the body of a dead man suddenly slams into frame
</view>
```

**<caption>** contains the text of a caption or other text displayed as part of a film script or screenplay. [7.3.1. Technical Information 7.3. Other Types of Performance Text]

*Module* drama

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.stageLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l lg meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic  
sp stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
 filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
 support surrogates  
*spoken:* writing  
*textcrit:* lem rdg witness  
*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
 imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
 distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
 listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
 q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* biblFull idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
 offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
 surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
 macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

<pre>element caption { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }</pre>
---

*Example*

```

<camera>Zoom in to overlay showing some stock film of hansom cabs
galloping past</camera>
<caption>London, 1895.</caption>
<caption>The residence of Mr Oscar Wilde.</caption>
<sound>Suitably classy music starts.</sound>
<view>Mix through to Wilde's drawing room. A crowd of suitably

```

```

dressed folk are engaged in typically brilliant conversation,
laughing affectedly and drinking champagne.</view>
<sp>
  <speaker>Prince of Wales</speaker>
  <p>My congratulations, Wilde. Your latest play is a great success.
</p>
</sp>

```

*Note* A specialized form of stage direction.

**<case>** contains grammatical case information given by a dictionary for a given form.  
[9.3.1. Information on Written and Spoken Forms]

*Module dictionaries*

*Attributes* `Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)`  
`(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,`  
`@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic`  
`(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))`  
`(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split,`  
`@value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))`

*Member of* `model.morphLike`

*Contained by*

*dictionaries:* `dictScrap entryFree etym form gramGrp`

*May contain*

*analysis:* `c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w`

*certainty:* `certainty precision respons`

*core:* `abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc`  
`distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list`  
`listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr`  
`q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear`

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* `correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread`

*dictionaries:* `lang oRef oVar pRef pVar`

*drama:* `camera caption castList move sound tech view`

*figures:* `figure formula notatedMusic table`

*gaiji:* `g`

*header:* `biblFull idno`

*iso-fs:* `fLib fs fvLib`

*linking:* `alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline`

*msdescription:* `catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material`  
`msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width`

*namesdates:* `addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo`  
`geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink`  
`offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state`  
`surname terrain trait`

*spoken:* `incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing`

*tagdocs:* `att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef`  
`macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val`

*textcrit:* `app listApp listWit witDetail`

*textstructure:* `floatingText`

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element case
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

*Example* Taken from *Wörterbuch der Deutschen Sprache. Veranstalet und herausgegeben von Joachim Heinrich Campe. Erster Theil. A - bis - E. (Braunschweig 1807. In der Schulbuchhandlung):*

Das Evangelium, des Evangelii, ...

```
<entry>
  <form type="lemma">
    <gramGrp>
      <pos value="noun"/>
      <gen value="n"/>
    </gramGrp>
    <form type="determiner">
      <orth>Das</orth>
    </form>
    <form type="headword">
      <orth>Evangelium</orth>,</form>
  </form>
  <form type="inflected">
    <gramGrp>
      <case value="genitive"/>
      <number value="singular"/>
    </gramGrp>
    <form type="determiner">
      <orth>des</orth>
    </form>
    <form type="headword">
      <orth>
        <oVar>Evangelii</oVar>,</orth>
      </form>
    </form>
  </entry>
```

*Note* May contain character data and phrase-level elements. Typical values will be of the form *nominative*, *accusative*, *dative*, *genitive*, etc. This element is synonymous with `<gram type="case">`.

---

**<castGroup>** (cast list grouping) groups one or more individual castItem elements within a cast list. [7.1.4. Cast Lists]

*Module* drama

*Attributes* Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.rendition` (`@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`)) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`)) (`att.global.responsibility` (`@cert`, `@resp`))



Contained by

*drama:* castGroup castList

May contain

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* cb gap gb head index lb milestone note pb

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc

*drama:* castGroup castItem roleDesc

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*textcrit:* witDetail

*textstructure:* trailer

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Declaration

```
element castGroup
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( model.global | model.headLike )*,
    ( ( castItem | castGroup | roleDesc ), model.global* )+,
    ( trailer, model.global* )?
  )
}
```

Example

```
<castGroup rend="braced">
  <castItem>
    <role>Walter</role>
    <actor>Mr Frank Hall</actor>
  </castItem>
  <castItem>
    <role>Hans</role>
    <actor>Mr F.W. Irish</actor>
  </castItem>
  <roleDesc>friends of Mathias</roleDesc>
</castGroup>
```

*Note* The *rend* attribute may be used, as here, to indicate whether the grouping is indicated by a brace, whitespace, font change, etc. Note that in this example the role description ‘friends of Mathias’ is understood to apply to both roles equally.

**<castItem>** (cast list item) contains a single entry within a cast list, describing either a single role or a list of non-speaking roles. [7.1.4. Cast Lists]

Module drama

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))

**@type** characterizes the cast item.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Legal values are:* **role** the item describes a single role.[Default]

**list** the item describes a list of non-speaking roles.

*Contained by:* castGroup castList

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* actor role roleDesc

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```

element castItem
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { "role" | "list" }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.castItemPart | model.phrase | model.global )*
}
```

*Example*

```
<castItem>
  <role>Player</role>
  <actor>Mr Milward</actor>
</castItem>
```

*Example*

```
<castItem type="list">Constables, Drawer, Turnkey, etc.</castItem>
```

**<castList>** (cast list) contains a single cast list or dramatis personae. [7.1.4. Cast Lists  
7.1. Front and Back Matter ]

*Module* drama

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.frontPart.drama model.inter

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic  
stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
support surrogates

*spoken:* writing

*textcrit:* lem rdg witness

*textstructure:* argument back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition  
epigraph front imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* bibl biblStruct cb cit desc gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl meeting  
milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc textread

*dictionaries:* entry entryFree superEntry

*drama:* camera caption castGroup castItem castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure notatedMusic table

*header:* biblFull

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription:* msDesc

*namesdates:* listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs:* classSpec constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec listRef macroSpec moduleSpec  
schemaSpec specGrp specGrpRef

*textcrit:* listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText opener  
salute signed

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```
element castList
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    ( ( model.common ), model.global* )*,
    ( ( castItem | castGroup ), model.global* )+,
    ( ( model.common ), model.global* )*
  )
}
```

*Example*

```
<castList>
  <castGroup>
    <head rend="braced">Mendicants</head>
    <castItem>
      <role>Aafaa</role>
      <actor>Femi Johnson</actor>
    </castItem>
    <castItem>
      <role>Blindman</role>
      <actor>Femi Osofisan</actor>
    </castItem>
    <castItem>
      <role>Goyi</role>
      <actor>Wale Ogunyemi</actor>
    </castItem>
    <castItem>
      <role>Cripple</role>
      <actor>Tunji Oyelana</actor>
    </castItem>
  </castGroup>
  <castItem>
    <role>Si Bero</role>
    <roleDesc>Sister to Dr Bero</roleDesc>
    <actor>Deolo Adedoyin</actor>
  </castItem>
  <castGroup>
    <head rend="braced">Two old women</head>
    <castItem>
      <role>Iya Agba</role>
      <actor>Nguba Agolia</actor>
    </castItem>
    <castItem>
      <role>Iya Mate</role>
      <actor>Bopo George</actor>
    </castItem>
  </castGroup>
  <castItem>
    <role>Dr Bero</role>
    <roleDesc>Specialist</roleDesc>
    <actor>Nat Okoro</actor>
  </castItem>
</castList>
```

```

</castItem>
<castItem>
  <role>Priest</role>
  <actor>Gbenga Sonuga</actor>
</castItem>
<castItem>
  <role>The old man</role>
  <roleDesc>Bero's father</roleDesc>
  <actor>Dapo Adelugba</actor>
</castItem>
</castList>
<stage type="mix">The action takes place in and around the home surgery of
Dr Bero, lately returned from the wars.</stage>

```

**<catDesc>** (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal textDesc. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 ( att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition ) ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select ) ) ( att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) ( att.global.change ( @change ) )  
 ( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) )

*Contained by*

*header:* category

*May contain*

*core:* abbr address choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi measure  
 measureGrp mentioned name num ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

*corpus:* textDesc

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang

*header:* idno

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident tag val

*transcr:* am ex subst

*Declaration*

```

element catDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.catDescPart ) *
}

```

*Example*

```
<catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc>
```

*Example*

```
<catDesc>
  <textDesc n="novel">
    <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
    <constitution type="single"/>
    <derivation type="original"/>
    <domain type="art"/>
    <factuality type="fiction"/>
    <interaction type="none"/>
    <preparedness type="prepared"/>
    <purpose degree="high" type="entertain"/>
    <purpose degree="medium" type="inform"/>
  </textDesc>
</catDesc>
```

---

**<catRef/>** (category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)

**@scheme** identifies the classification scheme within which the set of categories concerned is defined, for example by a <taxonomy> element, or by some other resource.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

*Content* ~~category~~ imprint

*header:* textClass

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element catRef
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  attribute scheme { data.pointer }?,
  empty
}
```

*Example*

```
<catRef scheme="#myTopics"
  target="#news #prov #sales2"/>
<!-- elsewhere -->
<taxonomy xml:id="myTopics">
  <category xml:id="news">
    <catDesc>Newspapers</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="prov">
    <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="sales2">
```

```
<catDesc>Low to average annual sales</catDesc>
</category>
</taxonomy>
```

*Note* The scheme attribute need be supplied only if more than one taxonomy has been declared.

**<catchwords>** describes the system used to ensure correct ordering of the quires making up a codex or incunabula, typically by means of annotations at the foot of the page. [10.3.7. Catchwords, Signatures, Secundo Folio]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.pPart.msdesc

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```
element catchwords { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

### Example

```
<catchwords>Vertical catchwords in the hand of the scribe placed along  
the inner bounding line, reading from top to bottom.</catchwords>
```

---

**<category>** contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))

*Contained by*

*header:* category taxonomy

*May contain*

*core:* desc gloss



*header:* catDesc category

*tagdocs:* altIdent equiv

*Declaration*

```

element category
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( catDesc+ | ( model.descLike | model.glossLike )* ), category* )
}

```

*Example*

```

<category xml:id="b1">
  <catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc>
</category>

```

*Example*

```

<category xml:id="b2">
  <catDesc>Prose </catDesc>
  <category xml:id="b11">
    <catDesc>journalism</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="b12">
    <catDesc>fiction</catDesc>
  </category>
</category>

```

*Example*

```

<category xml:id="LIT">
  <catDesc xml:lang="pl">literatura piękna</catDesc>
  <catDesc xml:lang="en">fiction</catDesc>
  <category xml:id="LPROSE">
    <catDesc xml:lang="pl">proza</catDesc>
    <catDesc xml:lang="en">prose</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="LPOETRY">
    <catDesc xml:lang="pl">poezja</catDesc>
    <catDesc xml:lang="en">poetry</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="LDRAMA">
    <catDesc xml:lang="pl">dramat</catDesc>
    <catDesc xml:lang="en">drama</catDesc>
  </category>
</category>

```

<cb/> (column break) marks the beginning of a new column of a text on a multi-column page. [3.10.3. Milestone Elements]

*Module core*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 ( att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition ) ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select ) ) ( att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) ( att.global.change ( @change ) )  
 ( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) ) att.typed ( @type, @subtype ) att.edition  
 ( @ed, @edRef ) att.spanning ( @spanTo ) att.breaking ( @break )

*Member of* model.milestoneLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation offset org orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc subst supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```

element cb
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.edition.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.breaking.attributes,
  empty
}

```

*Example* Markup of an early English dictionary printed in two columns:

```

<pb/>
<cb n="1"/>

```

```

<entryFree>
  <form>Well</form>, <sense>a Pit to hold Spring-Water</sense>:
<sense>In the Art of <hi rend="italic">War</hi>, a Depth the Miner
  sinks into the Ground, to find out and disappoint the Enemies Mines,
  or to prepare one</sense>.
</entryFree>
<entryFree>To <form>Welter</form>, <sense>to wallow</sense>, or
<sense>lie groveling</sense>.</entryFree>
<!-- remainder of column -->
<cb n="2"/>
<entryFree>
  <form>Wey</form>, <sense>the greatest Measure for dry Things,
  containing five Chaldron</sense>.
</entryFree>
<entryFree>
  <form>Whale</form>, <sense>the greatest of
  Sea-Fishes</sense>.
</entryFree>

```

*Note* On this element, the global *n* attribute indicates the number or other value associated with the column which follows the point of insertion of this <cb/> element. Encoders should adopt a clear and consistent policy as to whether the numbers associated with column breaks relate to the physical sequence number of the column in the whole text, or whether columns are numbered within the page. The <cb/> element is placed at the head of the column to which it refers.

## <cell> contains one cell of a table. [14.1.1. TEI Tables]

*Module figures*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.tableDecoration (@role, @rows, @cols)

*Contained by*

*figures:* row

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```

element cell
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.tableDecoration.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

*Example*

```

<row>
  <cell role="label">General conduct</cell>
  <cell role="data">Not satisfactory, on account of his great unpunctuality
    and inattention to duties</cell>
</row>

```

---

**<certainty>** indicates the degree of certainty associated with some aspect of the text markup. [21.1.2. Structured Indications of Uncertainty]

*Module* certainty

*Attributes* Attributes att.scoping (@target, @match) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)

**@cert** (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the object pointed to by the <certainty> element.

*Derived from* att.global.responsibility

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.certainty**

**@locus** indicates more exactly the aspect concerning which certainty is being expressed: specifically, whether the markup is correctly located, whether the correct element or attribute name has been used, or whether the content of the element or attribute is correct, etc.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Legal values are:* **name** uncertainty concerns whether the name of the element or attribute used is correctly applied.

**start** uncertainty concerns whether the start of the element is correctly identified.

**end** uncertainty concerns whether the end of the element is correctly identified.

**location** uncertainty concerns both the start and the end of the element.

**value** uncertainty concerns the content (for an element) or the value (for an attribute)

**@assertedValue** provides an alternative value for the aspect of the markup in question—an alternative generic identifier, transcription, or attribute value, or the identifier of an <anchor/> element (to indicate an alternative starting or ending location). If an *assertedValue* is given, the confidence level specified by *degree* applies to the alternative markup specified by *assertedValue*; if none is given, it applies to the markup in the text.

*Status* Recommended

*Datatype*

data.pointer   data.name   data.word
--------------------------------------

```
<certainty assertedValue="placeName"
  cert="low"
  locus="name"
  target="#ESX">
  <desc>It is unlikely, but possible, that this refers to the
  place
    rather than the person.</desc>
</certainty>
<certainty cert="low"
  locus="value"
  match="parent::tei:gap/@reason"/>
```

*Note* This attribute makes it possible to indicate the degree of confidence in a specific alternative to some aspect of the markup. In the first example above the encoder is expressing the likelihood (.2) that the generic identifier should be <placeName> rather than <persName>, which is the coded element.

**@given** indicates one or more element(s) characterizing the conditions which are assumed in the assignment of a degree of confidenceconditions assumed in the assignment of a degree of confidence.

*Status* Recommended

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of 

data.pointer
--------------

 separated by whitespace

*Note* The envisioned typical value of this attribute would be the identifier of another <certainty> element or a list of such identifiers. It may thus be possible to construct probability networks by chaining <certainty> elements together. Such networks would ultimately be grounded in unconditional <certainty> elements (with no value for *given*). The semantics of this chaining would be understood in this way: if a <certainty> element is specified, via a reference, as the assumption, then it is not the attribution of uncertainty that is the assumption, but rather the assertion itself. For instance, in the example above, the first <certainty> element indicates that the confidence in the

identification of the new scribe as *msm*. The second indicates the degree of confidence that *Essex* is a personal name, given that the new scribe is *msm*. Note that the given in the second `<certainty>` element is not the assertion that the likelihood that *msm* is the new scribe is 0.6, but simply the assertion that *msm* is the new scribe; this is a recommended convention to facilitate building networks. The ambitious encoder may wish to attempt complex networks or probability assertions, experimenting with references to other elements or prose assertions, and deploying feature structure connectives such as `<alt/>`, `<join>`, and `<note>`. However, we do not believe that the `<certainty>` element gives, at this time, a comprehensive ambiguity-free system for indicating certainty.

**@degree** indicates the degree of confidence assigned to the aspect of the markup named by the *locus* attribute.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.probability**

*Member of* model.certLike model.global.meta

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl interp m phr s span w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gap gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab join seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc space substJoin  
supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* desc

*Declaration*

```

element certainty
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
  att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
  att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.global.change.attribute.change,
  att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
  att.scoping.attributes,
  attribute cert { data.certainty }?,
  attribute locus { "name" | "start" | "end" | "location" | "value" },
  attribute assertedValue { data.pointer | data.name | data.word }?,
  attribute given { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  attribute degree { data.probability }?,
  ( model.descLike | model.certLike )*
}

```

*Example* (For discussion of this example, see section CEconcon)

Ernest went to <anchor xml:id="A1"/> old  
<persName xml:id="SYB">Saybrook</persName>.

```

<certainty degree="0.6" locus="name"
  target="#SYB" xml:id="c1"/>
<certainty degree="0.9" given="#c1"
  locus="start" target="#SYB"/>
<certainty assertedValue="persName"
  degree="0.4" locus="name" target="#SYB" xml:id="C-c2"/>
<certainty degree="0.5" given="#C-c2"
  locus="start" target="#SYB"/>
<certainty assertedValue="#a1" degree="0.5"
  given="#c1" locus="start" target="#SYB"/>

```

**<change>** documents a change or set of changes made during the production of a source document, or during the revision of an electronic file. [2.5. The Revision Description 2.4.1. Creation 11.7. Changes]

*Module header*

*Attributes* *Attributes* att.ascribed (@who) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.docStatus (@status) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

**@target** points to one or more elements that belong to this change.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

*Contained by:* listChange revisionDesc

*msdescription:* recordHist

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText



*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```

element change
{
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute target { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  macro.specialPara}

```

*Example*

```

<titleStmt>
  <title> ... </title>
  <editor xml:id="LDB">Lou Burnard</editor>
  <respStmt xml:id="BZ">
    <resp>copy editing</resp>
    <name>Brett Zamir</name>
  </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
<!-- ... -->
<revisionDesc status="published">
  <change status="public" when="2008-02-02"
    who="#BZ">Finished chapter 23</change>
  <change status="draft" when="2008-01-02"
    who="#BZ">Finished chapter 2</change>
  <change n="P2.2" when="1991-12-21"
    who="#LDB">Added examples to section 3</change>
  <change when="1991-11-11" who="#MSM">Deleted chapter 10</change>
</revisionDesc>

```

*Example*

```

<profileDesc>
  <creation>
    <listChange>
      <change xml:id="DRAFT1">First draft in pencil</change>
      <change notBefore="1880-12-09"
        xml:id="DRAFT2">First revision, mostly
        using green ink</change>
      <change notBefore="1881-02-13"
        xml:id="DRAFT3">Final corrections as
        supplied to printer.</change>
    </listChange>
  </creation>
</profileDesc>

```

*Note* The *who* attribute may be used to point to any other element, but will typically specify a <respStmt> or <person> element elsewhere in the header, identifying the person responsible for the change and their role in making it. It is recommended that changes be recorded with the most recent first. The *status* attribute may be used to indicate the status of a document following the change documented.

---

<channel> (primary channel) describes the medium or channel by which a text is delivered or experienced. For a written text, this might be print, manuscript, email,

etc.; for a spoken one, radio, telephone, face-to-face, etc. [15.2.1. The Text Description]

*Module* corpus

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

**@mode** specifies the mode of this channel with respect to speech and writing.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Legal values are:* **s** (spoken)

**w** (written)

**sw** (spoken to be written) e.g. dictation

**ws** (written to be spoken) e.g. a script

**m** (mixed)

**x** (unknown or inapplicable) [Default]

*Member of* model.textDescPart

*Contained by*

*corpus:* textDesc

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident tag val

*textcrit:* witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst substJoin

*Declaration*

```
element channel
{
  att.global.attributes,
```

```
attribute mode { "s" | "w" | "sw" | "ws" | "m" | "x" }?,
macro.phraseSeq.limited}
```

*Example*

```
<channel mode="s">face-to-face conversation</channel>
```

**<char>** (character) provides descriptive information about a character. [5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs]

*Module gaiji*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Contained by*

*gaiji:* charDecl

*May contain*

*core:* binaryObject desc graphic media note

*figures:* figure formula

*gaiji:* charName charProp mapping

*textcrit:* witDetail

*Declaration*

```
element char
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    charName?,
    model.descLike*,
    charProp*,
    mapping*,
    figure*,
    model.graphicLike*,
    model.noteLike*
  )
}
```

*Example*

```
<char xml:id="circledU4EBA">
  <charName>CIRCLED IDEOGRAPH 4EBA</charName>
  <charProp>
    <unicodeName>character-decomposition-mapping</unicodeName>
    <value>circle</value>
  </charProp>
  <charProp>
    <localName>daikanwa</localName>
    <value>36</value>
  </charProp>
  <mapping type="standard">□</mapping>
</char>
```

**<charDecl>** (character declarations) provides information about nonstandard characters and glyphs. [5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs]

*Module* gaiji

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space ) (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change )) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))

*Member of* model.encodingDescPart

*Contained by*

*header:* encodingDesc

*May contain*

*core:* desc

*gaiji:* char glyph

*Declaration*

```
element charDecl { att.global.attributes, ( desc?, ( char | glyph )+ ) }
```

*Example*

```
<charDecl>
  <char xml:id="aENL">
    <charName>LATIN LETTER ENLARGED SMALL A</charName>
    <mapping type="standard">a</mapping>
  </char>
</charDecl>
```

---

**<charName>** (character name) contains the name of a character, expressed following Unicode conventions. [5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs]

*Module* gaiji

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space ) (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change )) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))

*Contained by*

*gaiji:* char

*May contain* Character data only

*Declaration*

```
element charName { att.global.attributes, text }
```

*Example*

```
<charName>CIRCLED IDEOGRAPH 4EBA</charName>
```

*Note* The name must follow Unicode conventions for character naming. Projects working in similar fields are recommended to coordinate and publish their list of <charName>s to facilitate data exchange.

---

**<charProp>** (character property) provides a name and value for some property of the parent character or glyph. [5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs]

*Module* gaiji

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) att.typed ( @type, @subtype )

*Contained by*

*gaiji:* char glyph

*May contain*

*gaiji:* localName unicodeName value

*Declaration*

```

element charProp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( ( unicodeName | localName ), value )
}

```

*Example*

```

<charProp>
  <unicodeName>character-decomposition-mapping</unicodeName>
  <value>circle</value>
</charProp>
<charProp>
  <localName>daikanwa</localName>
  <value>36</value>
</charProp>

```

*Note* If the property is a Unicode Normative Property, then its <unicodeName> must be supplied. Otherwise, its name must be specied by means of a <localName>. At a later release, additional constraints will be defined on possible value/name combinations using Schematron rules

**<choice>** groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))

*Member of* model.linePart model.pPart.editorial

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl pc phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del desc  
 distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l  
 label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote  
 ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder  
geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage  
typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*core:* abbr choice corr expan orig reg sic unclear

*linking:* seg

*transcr:* am ex

*Declaration*

`element choice { att.global.attributes, ( model.choicePart | choice )* }`

*Example* An American encoding of *Gulliver's Travels* which retains the British spelling but also provides a version regularized to American spelling might be encoded as follows.

```
<p>Lastly, That, upon his solemn oath to observe all the above
articles, the said man-mountain shall have a daily allowance of
meat and drink sufficient for the support of <choice>
  <sic>1724</sic>
  <corr>1728</corr>
</choice> of our subjects,
with free access to our royal person, and other marks of our
<choice>
  <orig>favour</orig>
  <reg>favor</reg>
</choice>.</p>
```

*Note* Because the children of a `<choice>` element all represent alternative ways of encoding the same sequence, it is natural to think of them as mutually exclusive. However, there may be cases where a full representation of a text requires the

alternative encodings to be considered as parallel. Note also that <choice> elements may self-nest.

Where the purpose of an encoding is to record multiple witnesses of a single work, rather than to identify multiple possible encoding decisions at a given point, the <app> element and associated elements discussed in section 12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses should be preferred.

---

**<cit>** (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example. [3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.1. Grouped Texts 9.3.5.1. Examples]

*Module core*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.entryPart.top model.quoteLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout msItem musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

*spoken:* writing

*textcrit:* lem rdg witness

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* bibl biblStruct cb cit gap gb index lb listBibl milestone note pb ptr q quote ref said

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc textread

*dictionaries:* colloc def etym form gramGrp hom hyph lbl orth pos pron re sense subc  
superEntry syll usg xr

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*header:* biblFull

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription:* msDesc

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* eg egXML

*textcrit:* witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```

element cit
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.qLike      | model.egLike      | model.biblLike      | model.ptrLike      | model.glo
}

```

*Example*

```

<cit>
  <quote>and the breath of the whale is frequently attended with such an
insupportable smell,
  as to bring on disorder of the brain.</quote>
  <bibl>Ulloa's South America</bibl>
</cit>

```

*Example*

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>horrifier</orth>
  </form>
  <cit type="translation" xml:lang="en">
    <quote>to horrify</quote>
  </cit>
  <cit type="example">
    <quote>elle était horrifiée par la dépense</quote>
    <cit type="translation" xml:lang="en">
      <quote>she was horrified at the expense.</quote>
    </cit>
  </cit>
</entry>

```

---

**<citedRange>** (cited range) defines the range of cited content, often represented by pages or other units [3.11.2.5. Scopes and Ranges in Bibliographic Citations]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))



(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target,  
@evaluate) att.citing (@unit, @from, @to)

*Member of* model.biblPart

*Contained by*

*core:* bibl biblStruct

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```

element citedRange
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.citing.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

*Example*

```

<citedRange>pp 12–13</citedRange>
<citedRange from="12" to="13" unit="page"/>
<citedRange unit="volume">II</citedRange>
<citedRange unit="page">12</citedRange>

```

*Example*

```

<bibl>
  <ptr target="#mueller01"/>,
  <citedRange target="http://example.com/mueller3.xml#page4">vol. 3, pp.
    4-5</citedRange>
</bibl>

```

*Note* When the range cited consists of a single page or other unit, use the *from* and *to* attributes with an identical value. When no clear endpoint is given the *from* attribute should be used without *to*. For example, if the citation has ‘p. 3ff’ as a page reference.

---

**<cl>** (clause) represents a grammatical clause. [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]

*Module analysis*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.segLike (@function) (att.metrical (@met, @real, @rhyme)) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.segLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element cl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

#### Example

```

<cl function="clause_modifier"
  type="relative">Which frightened
both the heroes so,<cl>They quite forgot their quarrel.</cl>
</cl>

```

*Note* The *type* attribute may be used to indicate the type of clause, taking values such as finite, nonfinite, declarative, interrogative, relative etc. as appropriate.

---

**<classCode>** (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]

#### Module header

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))  
 @scheme identifies the classification system in use, as defined by for example by  
 a <taxonomy> element, or some other resource..  
*Status* Required

Datatype data.pointer

*Containability* imprint

*header:* textClass

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index  
lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled  
term time title

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident tag val

*textcrit:* witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst  
substJoin

*Declaration*

```
element classCode
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute scheme { data.pointer },
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

*Example*

```
<classCode scheme="http://www.udc.org">410</classCode>
```

---

**<classDecl>** (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration 2.3. The Encoding Description]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

header: taxonomy

Declaration

```
element classDecl { att.global.attributes, taxonomy+ }
```

Example

```
<classDecl>
  <taxonomy xml:id="LCSH">
    <bibl>Library of Congress Subject Headings</bibl>
  </taxonomy>
</classDecl>
<!-- ... -->
<textClass>
  <keywords scheme="#LCSH">
    <term>Political science</term>
    <term>United States -- Politics and government --
      Revolution, 1775-1783</term>
  </keywords>
</textClass>
```

<classRef/> points to the specification for an attribute or model class which is to be included in a schema [22.4.6. Element Classes]

Module tagdocs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.repeatable (@context, @minOccurs, @maxOccurs) att.readFrom (@source)

@key the identifier used for the required class within the source indicated.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* data.xmlName

@expand indicates how references to this class within a content model should be interpreted.

*Status* Optional

*Legal values are:* **alternate** any one member of the class may appear

**sequence** a single occurrence of all members of the class may appear in sequence

**sequenceOptional** a single occurrence of one or more members of the class may appear in sequence

**sequenceOptionalRepeatable** one or more occurrences of one or more members of the class may appear in sequence.

**sequenceRepeatable** one or more occurrences of all members of the class may appear in sequence

*Note* If the members of the class are a, b and c, then a reference to the class within a content model is understood as being a reference to a|b|c when *expand* has the value alternation; to a,b,c when it has the value sequence; to (a?,b?,c?) when it has the value

sequenceOptional; to (a\*,b\*, c\*) when it has the value  
sequenceOptionalRepeatable; or to (a+,b+,c+) when it has the  
value sequenceOptionalRepeatable.

**@include** supplies a list of class members which are to be included in the schema  
being defined.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 0– occurrences of `data.xmlName` separated by whitespace

**@except** supplies a list of class members which are to be excluded from the  
schema being defined.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 0– occurrences of `data.xmlName` separated by whitespace

*Member of* model.contentPart model.oddRef

*Contained by*

*tagdocs:* alternate content schemaSpec sequence specGrp

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element classRef
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.repeatable.attributes,
  att.readFrom.attributes,
  attribute key { data.xmlName },
  attribute expand
  {
    "alternate"
    | "sequence"
    | "sequenceOptional"
    | "sequenceOptionalRepeatable"
    | "sequenceRepeatable"
  }?,
  (
    attribute include { list { data.xmlName* } }?
    | attribute except { list { data.xmlName* } }?
  ),
  empty
}
```

*Example*

```
<schemaSpec ident="myTEIe" start="TEI">
  <moduleRef key="tei"/>
  <moduleRef include="abbr add core addrLine address author bibl biblScope choice
cit corr date del desc divGen editor emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic head hi
index item l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb
ptr pubPlace publisher q ref reg relatedItem resp respStmt rs sic soCalled sp
speaker stage teiCorpus term time title unclear"
  key="core"/>
  <moduleRef include="authority availability catRef category change classCode
classDecl creation distributor edition editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc
extent fileDesc funder idno keywords langUsage language licence notesStmt principal
profileDesc projectDesc publicationStmt refsDecl revisionDesc samplingDecl
seriesStmt sourceDesc sponsor taxonomy teiHeader textClass titleStmt"
  key="header"/>
  <moduleRef include="TEI argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor
docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group opener postscript salute
signed text titlePage titlePart trailer"
  key="textstructure"/>
```

```
<classRef key="att.global.facs"/>
</schemaSpec>
```

*Note* Attribute and model classes are identified by the name supplied as value for the *ident* attribute on the <classSpec> element in which they are declared. All TEI names are unique; attribute class names conventionally begin with the letters **att**..

**<classSpec>** (class specification) contains reference information for a TEI element class; that is a group of elements which appear together in content models, or which share some common attribute, or both. [22.3. Specification Elements 22.4.6. Element Classes]

*Module* tagdocs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.identified (@ident, @predeclare, @module, @status) (att.combinable (@mode) (att.deprecated (@validUntil)) )

**@type** indicates whether this is a model class or an attribute class

*Status* Required

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Legal values are:* **model** (content model) members of this class appear in the same content models

**atts** (attributes) members of this class share common attributes

**@generate** indicates which alternation and sequence instantiations of a model class may be referenced. By default, all variations are permitted.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–5 occurrences of **data.enumerated** separated by whitespace

*Legal values are:* **alternation** members of the class are alternatives

**sequence** members of the class are to be provided in sequence

**sequenceOptional** members of the class may be provided, in sequence, but are optional

**sequenceOptionalRepeatable** members of the class may be provided one or more times, in sequence, but are optional.

**sequenceRepeatable** members of the class may be provided one or more times, in sequence

*Member of* model.oddDecl

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs*: fDescr fsDescr  
*linking*: ab seg  
*msdescription*: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
                 filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
                 support surrogates  
*spoken*: writing  
*tagdocs*: schemaSpec specGrp  
*textcrit*: lem rdg witness  
*textstructure*: argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
                 imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr*: damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse*: rhyme  
*May contain*  
*core*: desc gloss  
*tagdocs*: altIdent attList classes constraintSpec equiv exemplum listRef remarks  
*Declaration*

```

element classSpec
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.identified.attributes,
  attribute type { "model" | "atts" },
  attribute generate
  {
    list
    {
      (
        "alternation"
        | "sequence"
        | "sequenceOptional"
        | "sequenceOptionalRepeatable"
        | "sequenceRepeatable"
      ),
      (
        "alternation"
        | "sequence"
        | "sequenceOptional"
        | "sequenceOptionalRepeatable"
        | "sequenceRepeatable"
      )?,
      (
        "alternation"
        | "sequence"
        | "sequenceOptional"
        | "sequenceOptionalRepeatable"
        | "sequenceRepeatable"
      )?,
      (
        "alternation"
        | "sequence"
        | "sequenceOptional"
        | "sequenceOptionalRepeatable"
        | "sequenceRepeatable"
      )?,
      (
        "alternation"
        | "sequence"
        | "sequenceOptional"
      )
    }
  }
}

```



```

        | "sequenceOptionalRepeatable"
        | "sequenceRepeatable"
    )?
    }
  }?,
  (
    ( model.glossLike | model.descLike )*,
    classes?,
    constraintSpec*,
    attList?,
    exemplum*,
    remarks*,
    listRef*
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<classSpec ident="model.segLike"
  module="tei" type="model">
  <desc>groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation.</desc>
  <classes>
    <memberOf key="model.phrase"/>
  </classes>
  <remarks>
    <p>The principles on which segmentation is carried out, and
      any special codes or attribute values used, should be defined explicitly
      in the <gi>segmentation</gi> element of the <gi>encodingDesc</gi> within
      the associated TEI header.</p>
  </remarks>
</classSpec>

```

**<classes>** specifies all the classes of which the documented element or class is a member or subclass. [22.4.4. Element Specifications 22.4.6. Element Classes]

*Module* tagdocs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))

**@mode** specifies the effect of this declaration on its parent module.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Legal values are:* **change** this declaration changes the declaration of  
 the same name in the current definition

**replace** this declaration replaces the declaration of the same name  
 in the current definition[Default]

*Contained by:* classSpec elementSpec

*May contain*

*tagdocs:* memberOf

*Declaration*

```

element classes
{

```

```

    att.global.attributes,
    attribute mode { "change" | "replace" }?,
    memberOf*
}

```

*Example*

```

<classes>
  <memberOf key="model.qLike"/>
  <memberOf key="att.declarable"/>
</classes>

```

This <classes> element indicates that the element documented (which may be an element or a class) is a member of two distinct classes: `model.qLike` and `att.declarable`.

*Note* An empty <classes> element indicates that the element documented is not a member of any class. This should not generally happen.

---

**<climate>** contains information about the physical climate of a place. [13.3.4.3. States, Traits, and Events]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.rendition` (`@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`)) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`)) (`att.global.responsibility` (`@cert`, `@resp`)) `att.dataable` (`@calendar`, `@period`) (`att.dataable.w3c` (`@when`, `@notBefore`, `@notAfter`, `@from`, `@to`)) (`att.dataable.iso` (`@when-iso`, `@notBefore-iso`, `@notAfter-iso`, `@from-iso`, `@to-iso`)) (`att.dataable.custom` (`@when-custom`, `@notBefore-custom`, `@notAfter-custom`, `@from-custom`, `@to-custom`, `@datingPoint`, `@datingMethod`)) `att.editLike` (`@evidence`, `@instant`) (`att.dimensions` (`@unit`, `@quantity`, `@extent`, `@precision`, `@scope`) (`att.ranging` (`@atLeast`, `@atMost`, `@min`, `@max`, `@confidence`)) (`att.source` (`@source`)) `att.naming` (`@role`, `@nymRef`) (`att.canonical` (`@key`, `@ref`)) `att.typed` (`@type`, `@subtype`)

*Member of* model.placeStateLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc climate country death district education  
faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink  
nationality occupation offset org orgName persName place placeName region  
residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*core:* bibl biblStruct desc head label listBibl note p

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* textread

*header:* biblFull

*linking:* ab

*msdescription:* msDesc

*namesdates:* climate

*textcrit:* witDetail

*Declaration*

```

element climate
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    ( ( model.pLike+ ) | ( model.labelLike+ ) ),
    ( model.noteLike | model.biblLike )*,
    climate*
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<place xml:id="ROMA">
  <placeName>Rome</placeName>
<!-- ... -->
<climate>
  <ab>
    <table>
      <head>24-hr Average Temperature</head>
      <row>
        <cell/>
        <cell role="label">Jan</cell>
        <cell role="label">Jun</cell>
        <cell role="label">Dec</cell>

```

```
</row>
<row>
  <cell role="label">°C</cell>
  <cell role="data">7.1</cell>
  <cell role="data">21.7</cell>
  <cell role="data">8.3</cell>
</row>
<row>
  <cell role="label">°F</cell>
  <cell role="data">44.8</cell>
  <cell role="data">71.1</cell>
  <cell role="data">46.9</cell>
</row>
</table>
</ab>
<note>Taken from <bibl>
  <abbr>GHCN 2 Beta</abbr>: The Global Historical Climatology Network,
    version 2 beta, 1904 months between 1811 and 1980.
<ptr target="http://www.worldclimate.com/cgi-
bin/data.pl?ref=N41E012+1202+0004058G2"/>
</bibl>
</note>
</climate>
</place>
```

---

**<closer>** groups together salutations, datelines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers 4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.divBottomPart

*Contained by*

*core:* lg list

*drama:* epilogue performance prologue

*figures:* figure table

*textstructure:* back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group postscript

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*textstructure:* dateline salute signed  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element closer
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | signed      | dateline      | salute      | model.phrase      | model.glob
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<div type="letter">
  <p> perhaps you will favour me with a sight of it when convenient.</p>
  <closer>
    <salute>I remain, &c. &c.</salute>
    <signed>H. Colburn</signed>
  </closer>
</div>

```

*Example*

```

<div type="chapter">
  <p>
<!-- .... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will Yes.</p>
  <closer>
    <dateline>
      <name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name>
      <date>1914-1921</date>
    </dateline>
  </closer>
</div>

```

<code> contains literal code from some formal language such as a programming language.  
 [22.1.1. Phrase Level Terms]

*Module tagdocs*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

**@lang** (formal language) a name identifying the formal language in which the code is expressed

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.word

*Member of* model.emphLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain* Character data only

*Declaration*

`element code { att.global.attributes, attribute lang { data.word }?, text }`

*Example*

```
<code lang="JAVA"> Size fCheckbox1Size = new Size();
fCheckbox1Size.Height = 500;
fCheckbox1Size.Width = 500;
xCheckbox1.setSize(fCheckbox1Size);
</code>
```

**<collation>** contains a description of how the leaves or bifolia are physically arranged.  
 [10.7.1. Object Description]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* supportDesc

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
 distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
 listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb  
 ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
 offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
 surname terrain trait

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
 macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element collation { att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara }
```

*Example*

**<collation>**The written leaves preceded by an original flyleaf, conjoint with the pastedown.**</collation>**

*Example*

```
<collation>
  <p>
    <formula>1-5.8 6.6 (catchword, f. 46, does not match following text)
      7-8.8 9.10, 11.2 (through f. 82) 12-14.8 15.8(-7)</formula>
    <catchwords>Catchwords are written horizontally in center
      or towards the right lower margin in various manners:
      in red ink for quires 1-6 (which are also signed in red
      ink with letters of the alphabet and arabic numerals);
      quires 7-9 in ink of text within yellow decorated frames;
      quire 10 in red decorated frame; quire 12 in ink of text;
      quire 13 with red decorative slashes; quire 14 added in
      cursive hand.</catchwords>
  </p>
</collation>
```

---

**<collection>** contains the name of a collection of manuscripts, not necessarily located within a single repository. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* altIdentifier msIdentifier

*May contain*

*gaiji:* g

*Declaration*

```
element collection
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.xtext}
```

*Example*

```
<msIdentifier>
  <country>USA</country>
  <region>California</region>
  <settlement>San Marino</settlement>
  <repository>Huntington Library</repository>
  <collection>Ellesmere</collection>
  <idno>El 26 C 9</idno>
  <msName>The Ellesmere Chaucer</msName>
</msIdentifier>
```



**<colloc>** (collocate) contains any sequence of words that co-occur with the headword with significant frequency. [9.3.2. Grammatical Information]

*Module dictionaries*

*Attributes* *Attributes* att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.entryPart model.gramPart

*Contained by*

*core:* cit

*dictionaries:* dictScrap entryFree form gramGrp

*namesdates:* nym

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

element colloc {
---------------------

att.global.attributes, att.lexicographic.attributes, att.typed.attributes, macro.paraContent}
--

*Example*

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>médire</orth>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <colloc>de</colloc>
  </gramGrp>
</entry>

```

---

**<colophon>** contains the *colophon* of a manuscript item: that is, a statement providing information regarding the date, place, agency, or reason for production of the manuscript. [10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.msQuoteLike*Contained by**msdescription:* msItem msItemStruct*May contain**analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic*gaiji:* g*header:* idno*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element colophon { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

*Example*

```
<colophon>Ricardus Franciscus Scripsit Anno Domini  
1447.</colophon>
```

*Example*

```
<colophon>Explicit expliceat/scriptor ludere eat.</colophon>
```

*Example*

```
<colophon>Explicit venenum viciorum domini illius, qui comparavit Anno  
domini Millessimo Trecentesimo nonagesimo primo, Sabbato in festo  
sancte Marthe virginis gloriose. Laus tibi criste quia finitur  
libellus iste.</colophon>
```

**<cond>** (conditional feature-structure constraint) defines a conditional feature-structure constraint; the consequent and the antecedent are specified as feature structures or feature-structure collections; the constraint is satisfied if both the antecedent and the consequent subsume a given feature structure, or if the antecedent does not. [18.11. Feature System Declaration]

*Module* iso-fs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))

*Contained by*

*iso-fs:* fsConstraints

*May contain*

*iso-fs:* f fs then

*Declaration*

```
element cond { att.global.attributes, ( ( fs | f ), then, ( fs | f ) ) }
```

*Example*

```
<cond>  
  <fs>  
    <f name="BAR">  
      <symbol value="1"/>  
    </f>  
  </fs>  
  <then/>  
  <fs>  
    <f name="SUBCAT">  
      <binary value="false"/>  
    </f>  
  </fs>  
</cond>
```

*Note* May contain an antecedent feature structure, an empty <then/> element, and a consequent feature structure.

---

**<condition>** contains a description of the physical condition of the manuscript.  
[10.7.1.5. Condition]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* binding bindingDesc sealDesc supportDesc

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb  
ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

<code>element condition { att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara }</code>
---

*Example*

```

<condition>
  <p>There are lacunae in three places in this
    manuscript. After 14v two
    leaves has been cut out and narrow strips leaves remains in the spine. After
    68v one gathering is missing and after 101v at least one gathering of 8 leaves
    has been lost. </p>
  <p>Several leaves are damaged with tears or holes or have a
    irregular shape. Some of the damages do not allow the lines to be of full
    length and they are apparently older than the script. There are tears on fol.
    2r-v, 9r-v, 10r-v, 15r-18v, 19r-v, 20r-22v, 23r-v, 24r-28v, 30r-v, 32r-35v,
    37r-v, 38r-v, 40r-43v, 45r-47v, 49r-v, 51r-v, 53r-60v, 67r-v, 68r-v, 70r-v,
    74r-80v, 82r-v, 86r-v, 88r-v, 89r-v, 95r-v, 97r-98v 99r-v, 100r-v. On fol. 98
    the corner has been torn off. Several leaves are in a bad condition due to
    moist and wear, and have become dark, bleached or
    wrinkled. </p>
  <p>The script has been
    touched up in the 17th century with black ink. The touching up on the following
    fols. was done by
    <name>Bishop Brynjólf Sveinsson</name>: 1v, 3r, 4r, 5r,
    6v, 8v,9r, 10r, 14r, 14v, 22r,30v, 36r-52v, 72v, 77r,78r,103r, 104r,. An
    AM-note says according to the lawman
    <name>Sigurður Björnsson</name> that the rest of the
    touching up was done by himself and another lawman
    <name>Sigurður Jónsson</name>.
    <name>Sigurður Björnsson</name> did the touching up
    on the following fols.: 46v, 47r, 48r, 49r-v, 50r, 52r-v.
    <name>Sigurður Jónsson</name> did the rest of the
    touching up in the section 36r-59r containing
    <title>Bretasögur</title>
  </p>
</condition>

```

<constitution> describes the internal composition of a text or text sample, for example as fragmentary, complete, etc. [15.2.1. The Text Description]

*Module corpus*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

@type specifies how the text was constituted.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Legal values are:* **single** a single complete text[Default]

**composite** a text made by combining several smaller items, each individually complete

**frags** (fragments) a text made by combining several smaller, not necessarily complete, items

**unknown** composition unknown or unspecified

*Member of* model.textDescPart

*Contained by*

*corpus:* textDesc

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index  
lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled  
term time title

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident tag val

*textcrit:* witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst  
substJoin

*Declaration*

```
element constitution
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { "single" | "composite" | "frags" | "unknown" }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}
```

*Example*

```
<constitution type="frags">Prologues only.</constitution>
```

*Note* The function of this element seems to overlap with both the *org* attribute on <div> and the <samplingDecl> in the <encodingDesc>.

---

**<constraint>** (constraint rules) the formal rules of a constraint [22.4.4. Element Specifications]

*Module* tagdocs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Contained by*

*tagdocs:* constraintSpec

*May contain* ANY

*Declaration*

element constraint { att.global.attributes, ( text | macro.anyXML )\* }

*Example*

```
<constraintSpec ident="isoconstraint"
  scheme="isoschematron"
  xmlns:sch="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron">
  <constraint>
    <s:assert test="tei:fileDesc/tei:titleStmt/tei:title[@type='main']"> a main title
    must be supplied
    </s:assert>
  </constraint>
</constraintSpec>
```

*Example*

```
<constraintSpec ident="local"
  scheme="private">
  <constraint>
    (output = (ident(title) ident(author) "You must supply a title or an author"))
  </constraint>
</constraintSpec>
```

**<constraintSpec>** (constraint on schema) contains a constraint, expressed in some formal syntax, which cannot be expressed in the structural content model [22.4.4. Element Specifications]

*Module tagdocs*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space ) (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change )) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) att.identified ( @ident, @predeclare, @module, @status ) (att.combinable ( @mode )) (att.deprecated ( @validUntil )) att.typed ( @type, @subtype )

@scheme supplies the name of the language in which the constraints are defined

*Status* Required

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Legal values are:* **schematron** (Schematron)

**isoschematron** (ISO Schematron)

**xsl** (XSLT)

**private** (private constraint language)

*Member of* model.oddDecl

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs*: fDescr fsDescr

*linking*: ab seg

*msdescription*: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
support surrogates

*spoken*: writing

*tagdocs*: attDef classSpec elementSpec macroSpec schemaSpec specGrp

*textcrit*: lem rdg witness

*textstructure*: argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr*: damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse*: rhyme

*May contain*

*core*: desc gloss

*tagdocs*: altIdent constraint equiv

*Declaration*

```
element constraintSpec
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.identified.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute scheme { "schematron" | "isoschematron" | "xsl" | "private" },
  ( model.glossLike | model.descLike )*,
  constraint?
}
```

*Schematron* Relationship between scheme attribute and contents <sch:ns prefix="s"  
uri="http://www.ascc.net/xml/schematron"/>  
<sch:report test="tei:constraint/s:\* and not(@scheme='schematron')">Rules in the  
Schematron 1.\* language must be inside a constraintSpec with a value of  
'schematron' on the scheme attribute </sch:report>

*Schematron* <sch:ns prefix="sch" uri="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron"/>  
<sch:report test="tei:constraint/sch:\* and not(@scheme='isoschematron')">Rules  
in the ISO Schematron language must be inside a constraintSpec with a value of  
'isoschematron' on the scheme attribute </sch:report>

*Schematron* <sch:ns prefix="sch" uri="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron"/>  
<sch:rule context="tei:macroSpec/tei:constraintSpec[@scheme='isoschematron']/tei:constraint">  
<sch:report test="sch:assert|sch:report">An ISO Schematron constraint  
specification for a macro should not have an 'assert' or 'report' element without a  
parent 'rule' element</sch:report></sch:rule>

*Example* This constraint uses Schematron to enforce the presence of the *spanTo* attribute  
(which comes from an attribute class) on the <addSpan/> element:

```
<constraintSpec ident="demo-c1"
  scheme="isoschematron"
  xmlns:sch="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron">
  <desc>Enforce the presence of the <att>spanTo</att> attribute</desc>
  <constraint>
    <sch:assert test="@spanTo">The spanTo= attribute of <sch:name/>
      is required.</sch:assert>
  </constraint>
</constraintSpec>
```

*Example*



```

<constraintSpec ident="demo-c2"
  scheme="isoschematron"
  xmlns:sch="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron">
  <desc>Implement an accessibility rule which says that pictures should
    have textual explanations</desc>
  <constraint>
    <sch:report test="not(tei:figDesc or tei:head)"> You should
      provide information in a figure from which
      we can construct an alt attribute in HTML </sch:report>
    </constraint>
  </constraintSpec>

```

*Example* This constraint uses a language which is not expressed in XML to check whether the title and author are identical:

```

<constraintSpec ident="local"
  scheme="private">
  <constraint>
    (output = leq(title,author) "title and author cannot be the same")
  </constraint>
</constraintSpec>

```

**<content>** (content model) contains the text of a declaration for the schema documented. [22.4.4. Element Specifications]

*Module* tagdocs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))

**@autoPrefix** controls whether or not pattern names generated in the  
 corresponding Relax NG schema source are automatically prefixed to avoid  
 potential nameclashes.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.truthValue

*Legal values are:* **true** Each name referenced in e.g. a <rng:ref>  
 element within a content model is automatically prefixed by the  
 value of the *prefix* attribute on the current  
 <schemaSpec>[Default]

**false** No prefixes are added: any prefix required by the value of the  
*prefix* attribute on the current <schemaSpec> must therefore be  
 supplied explicitly, as appropriate.

*Contained by docs:* elementSpec macroSpec moduleRef

*May contain* ANY

*Declaration*

```

element content
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute autoPrefix { "true" | "false" }?,
  ( ( valList ) | macro.anyXML+ | model.contentPart* )
}

```

*Example* This `<content>` element indicates that the element being specified has no content:

```
<content/></content>
```

*Example* This `<content>` element defines a content model allowing either a sequence of paragraphs or a series of `msItem` elements optionally preceded by a summary:

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <classRef key="model.pLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <sequence>
      <elementRef key="summary" maxOccurs="1"
        minOccurs="0"/>
      <elementRef key="msItem"
        maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

*Example* This content model defines a content model allowing either a sequence of paragraphs or a series of `msItem` elements optionally preceded by a summary:

```
<content>
  <rng:choice>
    <rng:oneOrMore>
      <rng:ref name="model.pLike"/>
    </rng:oneOrMore>
    <rng:group>
      <rng:optional>
        <rng:ref name="summary"/>
      </rng:optional>
      <rng:oneOrMore>
        <rng:ref name="msItem"/>
      </rng:oneOrMore>
    </rng:group>
  </rng:choice>
</content>
```

*Note* As the example shows, content models may be expressed using the RELAX NG syntax directly. To avoid ambiguity when schemas using elements from different namespaces are created, the name supplied for an element in a content model will be automatically prefixed by a short string, as specified by the *prefix* attribute on `<schemaSpec>`. The *autoPrefix* attribute may be used to reverse this behaviour. The macro `macro.schemaPattern` defines which elements may be used to define content models. Alternatively, a content model may be expressed using the TEI `<valList>` element.

---

**<corr>** (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text. [3.4.1. Apparent Errors]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.rendition` (`@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`)) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`)) (`att.global.responsibility` (`@cert`, `@resp`)) `att.editLike` (`@evidence`, `@instant`) (`att.dimensions` (`@unit`, `@quantity`, `@extent`, `@precision`, `@scope`) (`att.ranging` (`@atLeast`, `@atMost`, `@min`, `@max`, `@confidence`)) ) (`att.source` (`@source`)) `att.typed` (`@type`, `@subtype`)

*Member of* model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl pc phr s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo

geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element corr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

*Example* If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been corrected, <corr> may be used alone:

I don't know,  
Juan. It's so far in the past now – how <corr>can we</corr> prove  
or disprove anyone's theories?

*Example* It is also possible, using the <choice> and <sic> elements, to provide an uncorrected reading:

I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now –  
how <choice>  
  <sic>we can</sic>  
  <corr>can we</corr>  
</choice> prove or  
disprove anyone's theories?

---

**<correction>** (correction principles) states how and under what circumstances corrections have been made in the text. [2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.declarable (@default)  
**@status** indicates the degree of correction applied to the text.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Legal values are:* **high** the text has been thoroughly checked and proofread.

**medium** the text has been checked at least once.

**low** the text has not been checked.

**unknown** the correction status of the text is unknown.[Default]

**@method** indicates the method adopted to indicate corrections within the text.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Legal values are:* **silent** corrections have been made silently[Default]

**markup** corrections have been represented using markup

*Member of* model.editorialDeclPart

*Contained by*

*header:* editorialDecl

*May contain*

*core:* p

*linking:* ab

*Declaration*

```

element correction
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  attribute status { "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown" }?,
  attribute method { "silent" | "markup" }?,
  model.pLike+
}

```

*Example*

```

<correction>
  <p>Errors in transcription controlled by using the WordPerfect spelling checker,
  with a user
    defined dictionary of 500 extra words taken from Chambers Twentieth Century
    Dictionary.</p>
</correction>

```

*Note* May be used to note the results of proof reading the text against its original, indicating (for example) whether discrepancies have been silently rectified, or recorded using the editorial tags described in section 3.4. Simple Editorial Changes.

---

**<correspAction>** contains a structured description of the place, the name of a person/organization and the date related to the sending/receiving of a message or any other action related to the correspondence [2.4.6. Correspondence Description]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.typed (type, @subtype)

**@type** describes the nature of the action

*Derived from* att.typed

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Suggested values include:* **sent** information concerning the sending or dispatch of a message

**received** information concerning the receipt of a message

**transmitted** information concerning the transmission of a message, i.e. between the dispatch and the next receipt, redirect or forwarding

**redirected** information concerning the redirection of an unread message

**forwarded** information concerning the forwarding of a message

*Member of* model.correspDescPart

*Contained by*

*header:* correspDesc

*May contain*

*core:* address date email name note p rs time

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* listener reader

*dictionaries:* lang

*header:* idno

*linking:* ab

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*Declaration*

```

element correspAction
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  attribute type
  {
    "sent"
    | "received"
    | "transmitted"
    | "redirected"
    | "forwarded"
    | xsd:Name
  }?,
  ( model.correspActionPart+ | model.pLike+ )
}

```

*Example*

```

<correspAction type="sentBy">
  <persName>Adelbert von Chamisso</persName>
  <settlement>Vertus</settlement>
  <date when="1807-01-29"/>
</correspAction>

```

---

**<correspContext>** (correspondence context) provides references to preceding or following correspondence related to this piece of correspondence [2.4.6. Correspondence Description]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
( att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition ) ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select ) ) ( att.global.analytic

(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

Member of model.correspDescPart

Contained by

header: correspDesc

May contain

core: note p ptr ref

linking: ab

Declaration

```
element correspContext { att.global.attributes, model.correspContextPart+ }
```

Example

```
<correspContext>
  <ptr subtype="toAuthor"
    target="http://tei.ibi.hu-berlin.de/berliner-
intellektuelle/manuscript?Brief101VarnhagenanBoeckh" type="next"/>
  <ptr subtype="fromAuthor"
    target="http://tei.ibi.hu-berlin.de/berliner-
intellektuelle/manuscript?Brief103BoeckhanVarnhagen" type="prev"/>
</correspContext>
```

Example

```
<correspContext>
  <ref target="http://weber-gesamtausgabe.de/A040962">Previous letter of
<persName>Carl Maria von Weber</persName> to <persName>Caroline Brandt</persName>:
<date when="1816-12-30">December 30, 1816</date>
  </ref>
  <ref target="http://weber-gesamtausgabe.de/A041003">Next letter of <persName>Carl
Maria von Weber</persName> to <persName>Caroline Brandt</persName>:
<date when="1817-01-05">January 5, 1817</date>
  </ref>
</correspContext>
```

**<correspDesc>** (correspondence description) contains a description of the actions related to one act of correspondence [2.4.6. Correspondence Description]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.declarable (@default) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

core: note p

header: correspAction correspContext

linking: ab

Declaration

```

element correspDesc
{
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( model.correspDescPart+ | model.pLike+ )
}

```

*Example*

```

<correspDesc>
  <correspAction type="sending">
    <persName>Carl Maria von Weber</persName>
    <settlement>Dresden</settlement>
    <date when="1817-06-23">23 June 1817</date>
  </correspAction>
  <correspAction type="receiving">
    <persName>Caroline Brandt</persName>
    <settlement>Prag</settlement>
  </correspAction>
  <correspContext>
    <ref target="http://www.weber-gesamtausgabe.de/A041209"
      type="prev">Previous letter of <persName>Carl Maria von Weber</persName> to
    <persName>Caroline Brandt</persName>: <date from="1817-06-19" to="1817-06-20">June
    19/20, 1817</date>
    </ref>
    <ref target="http://www.weber-gesamtausgabe.de/A041217"
      type="next">Next letter of <persName>Carl Maria von Weber</persName> to
    <persName>Caroline Brandt</persName>: <date when="1817-06-27">June 27, 1817</date>
    </ref>
  </correspContext>
</correspDesc>

```

---

**<correspDesc>** Description of a correspondence. Encapsulates information about the sender(s) and the recipient(s)

*Namespace* <http://readingexp.univ-lemans.fr/tei>

*Module* derived-module-tei\_readingExp

*Member of* model.global

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view



---

*figures:* cell figure table  
*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote  
 language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance  
 rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence  
 roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*nets:* graph  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail  
*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
 front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
 surfaceGrp surplus zone  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain* Empty element  
*Declaration*

element correspDesc { empty }
-------------------------------

---

**<country>** contains the name of a geo-political unit, such as a nation, country, colony, or commonwealth, larger than or administratively superior to a region and smaller than a bloc. [13.2.3. Place Names]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef)  
 (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dataable (@calendar,  
 @period) (att.dataable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))  
 (att.dataable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso))  
 (att.dataable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom,  
 @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))

*Member of* model.placeNamePart

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc  
 distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l  
 label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote  
 ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
 preparedness purpose  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* addressee listener reader readingExpRef sender  
*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr  
*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view  
*figures:* cell figDesc  
*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition  
 extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote  
 sponsor tagUsage typeNote  
*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier catchwords collation colophon  
 condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit  
 layout material msIdentifier musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin  
 provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates  
 watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink  
 nationality occupation offset org orgName persName place placeName region  
 residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```
element country
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example*

```
<country key="DK">Denmark</country>
```

*Note* The recommended source for codes to represent coded country names is ISO 3166.

---

<creation> contains information about the creation of a text. [2.4.1. Creation 2.4. The Profile Description]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.dataable (@calendar, @period)  
 (att.dataable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dataable.iso  
 (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.dataable.custom  
 (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom,  
 @datingPoint, @datingMethod))

*Member of* model.profileDescPart

*Contained by*

*header:* profileDesc

*May contain*

*core:* abbr address choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi measure  
 measureGrp mentioned name num ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang

*header:* idno listChange

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident tag val

*transcr:* am ex subst

*Declaration*

```

element creation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  ( text | model.limitedPhrase | listChange ) *
}

```

*Example*

```

<creation>
  <date>Before 1987</date>
</creation>

```

*Example*

```

<creation>
  <date when="1988-07-10">10 July 1988</date>
</creation>

```

*Note* The <creation> element may be used to record details of a text's creation, e.g. the date and place it was composed, if these are of interest. It may also contain a more structured account of the various stages or revisions associated with the evolution of a text; this should be encoded using the <listChange> element. It should not be confused with the <publicationStmt> element, which records date and place of publication.

---

**<custEvent>** (custodial event) describes a single event during the custodial history of a manuscript. [10.9.1.2. Availability and Custodial History]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space ) ( att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition ) ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select ) ) ( att.global.analytic ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) ( att.global.change ( @change ) ) ( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) ) att.dataable ( @calendar, @period ) ( att.dataable.w3c ( @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to ) ) ( att.dataable.iso ( @when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso ) ) ( att.dataable.custom ( @when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod ) ) att.typed ( @type, @subtype )

*Contained by**msdescription:* custodialHist*May contain**analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
 offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
 surname terrain trait  
*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
 macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element custEvent
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

*Example*

```

<custEvent type="photography">Photographed by David Cooper on <date>12 Dec
1964</date>
</custEvent>

```

**<custodialHist>** (custodial history) contains a description of a manuscript's  
 custodial history, either as running prose or as a series of dated custodial events.  
 [10.9.1.2. Availability and Custodial History]

*Module msdescription*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* adminInfo

*May contain*

*core:* p

*linking:* ab

*msdescription:* custEvent

*Declaration*

```
element custodialHist { att.global.attributes, ( model.pLike+ | custEvent+ ) }
```

*Example*

```
<custodialHist>
  <custEvent notAfter="1963-02"
    notBefore="1961-03" type="conservation">Conserved between March 1961 and February
1963 at
  Birgitte Dalls Konserveringsværksted.</custEvent>
  <custEvent notAfter="1988-05-30"
    notBefore="1988-05-01" type="photography">Photographed in
  May 1988 by AMI/FA.</custEvent>
  <custEvent notAfter="1989-11-13"
    notBefore="1989-11-13" type="transfer-dispatch">Dispatched to Iceland
  13 November 1989.</custEvent>
</custodialHist>
```

---

**<damage>** contains an area of damage to the text witness. [11.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text]

*Module* transcr

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 ( att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition ) ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select ) ) ( att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) ( att.global.change ( @change ) )  
 ( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) ) att.typed ( @type, @subtype ) att.damaged  
 ( @hand, @agent, @degree, @group ) ( att.dimensions ( @unit, @quantity, @extent,  
 @precision, @scope ) ( att.ranging ( @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence ) ) )

*Member of* model.pPart.transcriptional

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl pc phr s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor  
 email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure  
 mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic  
 soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit  
 forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset  
 orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex  
 socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone  
*verse:* rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
 distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
 listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
 q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* biblFull idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
 offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
 surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
 macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element damage
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.damaged.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

#### Example

```

<l>The Moving Finger wri<damage agent="water" group="1">es; and</damage> having
writ,</l>
<l>Moves <damage agent="water" group="1">
  <supplied>on: nor all your</supplied>
</damage> Piety nor Wit</l>

```

*Note* Since damage to text witnesses frequently makes them harder to read, the <damage> element will often contain an <unclear> element. If the damaged area is not continuous (e.g. a stain affecting several strings of text), the *group* attribute may be used to group together several related <damage> elements; alternatively the <join> element may be used to indicate which <damage> and <unclear> elements are part of the same physical phenomenon. The <damage>, <gap>, <del>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

---

**<damageSpan/>** (damaged span of text) marks the beginning of a longer sequence of text which is damaged in some way but still legible. [11.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text]

*Module* transcr

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.damaged (@hand, @agent, @degree, @group) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope)) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.spanning (@spanTo)

*Member of* model.global.edit

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality



occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence  
roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
surfaceGrp surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```

element damageSpan
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.damaged.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  empty
}

```

*Schematron* <s:assert test="@spanTo">The @spanTo attribute of <s:name/> is required.</s:assert>

*Schematron* <s:assert test="@spanTo">L'attribut spanTo est requis.</s:assert>

*Example*

```

<p>Paragraph partially damaged. This is the undamaged
portion <damageSpan spanTo="#a34"/>and this the damaged
portion of the paragraph.</p>
<p>This paragraph is entirely damaged.</p>
<p>Paragraph partially damaged; in the middle of this
paragraph the damage ends and the anchor point marks
the start of the <anchor xml:id="a34"/> undamaged part of the text. ...</p>

```

*Note* Both the beginning and ending of the damaged sequence must be marked: the beginning by the <damageSpan/> element, the ending by the target of the *spanTo* attribute: if no other element available, the <anchor/> element may be used for this purpose. The damaged text must be at least partially legible, in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it. If it is not legible at all, the <damageSpan/> element should not be used. Rather, the <gap> or <unclear> element should be employed, with the value of the *reason* attribute giving the cause. See further sections 11.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text and 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination.

<datatype> specifies the declared value for an attribute, by referring to any datatype defined by the chosen schema language. [1.4.2. Datatype Macros 22.4.5. Attribute List Specification]

*Module* tagdocs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,

(*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*)) (*att.global.change* (*@change*)) (*att.global.responsibility* (*@cert*, *@resp*))

**@minOccurs** (minimum number of occurrences) indicates the minimum number of times this datatype may occur in the specification of the attribute being defined

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.count`

*Default* 1

**@maxOccurs** (maximum number of occurrences) indicates the maximum number of times this datatype may occur in the specification of the attribute being defined

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.count | "unbounded"`

*Default* 1

*Contained* ~~no~~ *docs*: *attDef*

*May contain*

*tagdocs*: *macroRef*

*Declaration*

```
element datatype
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute minOccurs { data.count }?,
  attribute maxOccurs { data.count | "unbounded" }?,
  ( macroRef | macro.schemaPattern+ )
}
```

*Example*

```
<datatype>
  <rng:data type="token"/>
</datatype>
```

*Example*

```
<datatype>
  <rng:ref name="data.enumerated"/>
</datatype>
```

*Example* The encoding in the following example requires that the attribute being defined contain at least two URIs in its value, as is the case for the *target* attribute of `<join>`.

```
<datatype maxOccurs="unbounded"
  minOccurs="2">
  <rng:ref name="data.pointer"/>
</datatype>
```

*Note* In the TEI scheme, most datatypes are expressed using pre-defined TEI macros, which map a name in the form **data.xxxx** to a RelaxNG or WSD defined datatype.

---

**<date>** contains a date in any format. [3.5.4. Dates and Times 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.5. The Revision Description 3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of

a Document, and Reprint Information 15.2.3. The Setting Description 13.3.6. Dates and Times]

*Module core*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.dateable (@calendar, @period) (att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.dateable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.duration (att.duration.w3c (@dur)) (att.duration.iso (@dur-iso)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.dateLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine analytic author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose setting

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExp readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal publicationStmt rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* recording u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

## 1 ELEMENTS

---

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```
element date
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.duration.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global ) *
}
```

### Example

```
<date when="1980-02">early February 1980</date>
```

### Example

```
Given on the <date when="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day
of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the
Republic
the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>
```

### Example

```
<date when="1990-09">September 1990</date>
```

**<dateline>** contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.divWrapper

*Contained by*

*core:* lg list

*drama:* castList epilogue performance prologue

*figures:* figure table

*textstructure:* body closer div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group opener

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*textstructure:* docDate

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```

element dateline
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global | docDate ) *
}

```

*Example*

```
<dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>
```

*Example*

```
<div type="chapter">
  <p>
<!-- ... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will Yes.</p>
  <closer>
    <dateline>
      <name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name>
      <date>1914-1921</date>
    </dateline>
  </closer>
</div>
```

---

**<death>** contains information about a person's death, such as its date and place. [15.2.2. The Participant Description]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

*Member of* model.persEventLike

*Contained by*

namesdates: person personGrp

*May contain*

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

certainty: certainty precision respons

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

derived-module-tei\_readingExp: correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo

geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element death
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

*Example*

```
<death when="1902-10-01"/>
```

*Example*

```

<death when="1960-12-10">Passed away near
<name type="place">Aix-la-Chapelle</name>, after suffering from cerebral palsy.
</death>

```

**<decoDesc>** (decoration description) contains a description of the decoration of a manuscript, either as a sequence of paragraphs, or as a sequence of topically organized <decoNote> elements. [10.7.3. Bindings, Seals, and Additional Material]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.physDescPart

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* physDesc

*May contain*

*core:* p

*linking:* ab

*msdescription:* decoNote summary

*Declaration*

```

element decoDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( summary?, decoNote+ ) )
}

```

*Example*

```
<decoDesc>
  <p>The start of each book of the Bible with a 10-line historiated
    illuminated initial; prefaces decorated with 6-line blue initials with red
    penwork flourishing; chapters marked by 3-line plain red initials; verses
    with 1-line initials, alternately blue or red.</p>
</decoDesc>
```

---

**<decoNote>** (note on decoration) contains a note describing either a decorative component of a manuscript, or a fairly homogenous class of such components. [10.7.3. Bindings, Seals, and Additional Material]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.msItemPart

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* binding bindingDesc decoDesc msItem msItemStruct seal sealDesc

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText



*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element decoNote
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

*Example*

```
<decoDesc>
  <decoNote type="initial">
    <p>The start of each book of the Bible with
      a 10-line historiated illuminated initial;
      prefaces decorated with 6-line blue initials
      with red penwork flourishing; chapters marked by
      3-line plain red initials; verses with 1-line initials,
      alternately blue or red.</p>
  </decoNote>
</decoDesc>

```

**<def>** (definition) contains definition text in a dictionary entry. [9.3.3.1. Definitions]

*Module* dictionaries

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split,  
@value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

*Member of* model.entryPart model.entryPart.top

*Contained by*

*core:* cit

*dictionaries:* dictScrap entry entryFree etym hom re sense

*namesdates:* nym

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element def
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

*Example*

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>competitor</orth>
    <hyph>com|peti|tor</hyph>
    <pron>k@"petit@(r)</pron>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <pos>n</pos>
  </gramGrp>
  <def>person who competes.</def>
</entry>
```

---

**<default/>** (default feature value) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which contains a defaulted value. [18.9. Default Values]

*Module* iso-fs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.featureVal.single

*Contained by*

*iso-fs:* f fvLib if vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel vMerge vNot vRange

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration* element default { att.global.attributes, empty }

*Example*

```
<f name="gender">
  <default/>
</f>
```

**<defaultVal>** (default value) specifies the default declared value for an attribute.  
[22.4.5. Attribute List Specification]

*Module* tagdocs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Contained by*

*tagdocs:* attDef

*May contain* Character data only

*Declaration* element defaultVal { att.global.attributes, text }

*Example*

```
<defaultVal>#IMPLIED</defaultVal>
```

*Note* any legal declared value or TEI-defined keyword

**<del>** (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.transcriptional (@hand, @status,  
@cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit,  
@quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min,  
@max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.pPart.transcriptional

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl pc phr s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor  
email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure  
mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic  
soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit  
forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset  
orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex  
socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace subst supplied surplus zone

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

element del
-------------

```
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

*Example*

```
<l>
  <del rend="overtyped">Mein</del> Frisch
  <del rend="overstrike" type="primary">schwebt</del>
  weht der Wind
</l>
```

*Example*

```
<del rend="overstrike">
  <gap quantity="5" reason="illegible"
    unit="character"/>
</del>
```

*Note* This element should be used for deletion of shorter sequences of text, typically single words or phrases. The <delSpan/> element should be used for longer sequences of text, for those containing structural subdivisions, and for those containing overlapping additions and deletions. The text deleted must be at least partially legible in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it (unless it is restored in a <supplied> tag). Illegible or lost text within a deletion may be marked using the <gap> tag to signal that text is present but has not been transcribed, or is no longer visible. Attributes on the <gap> element may be used to indicate how much text is omitted, the reason for omitting it, etc. If text is not fully legible, the <unclear> element (available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources) should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence in a similar way.

Degrees of uncertainty over what can still be read, or whether a deletion was intended may be indicated by use of the <certainty> element (see 21. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility).

There is a clear distinction in the TEI between <del> and <surplus> on the one hand and <gap> or <unclear> on the other. <del> indicates a deletion present in the source being transcribed, which states the author's or a later scribe's intent to cancel or remove text. <surplus> indicates material present in the source being transcribed which should have been so deleted, but which is not in fact. <gap> or <unclear>, by contrast, signal an editor's or encoder's decision to omit something or their inability to read the source text. See sections 11.3.1.7. Text Omitted from or Supplied in the Transcription and 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for the relationship between these and other related elements used in detailed transcription.

---

<delSpan/> (deleted span of text) marks the beginning of a longer sequence of text deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise signaled as superfluous or spurious by an author, scribe, annotator, or corrector. [11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions]

*Module* transcr

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.transcriptional (@hand, @status,  
@cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit,  
@quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min,  
@max, @confidence))) (att.source (@source))) att.typed (@type, @subtype)  
att.spanning (@spanTo)

*Member of* model.global.edit

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del  
distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint  
item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q  
quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang  
time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom  
hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg  
xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue  
role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote  
language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance  
rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence  
roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
surfaceGrp surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

<pre>element delSpan {   att.global.attributes,</pre>
---

```

    att.transcriptional.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    att.spanning.attributes,
    empty
}

```

*Schematron* <s:assert test="@spanTo">The @spanTo attribute of <s:name/> is required.</s:assert>

*Schematron* <s:assert test="@spanTo">L'attribut spanTo est requis.</s:assert>

*Example*

```

<p>Paragraph partially deleted. This is the undeleted
portion <delSpan spanTo="#a23"/>and this the deleted
portion of the paragraph.</p>
<p>Paragraph deleted together with adjacent material.</p>
<p>Second fully deleted paragraph.</p>
<p>Paragraph partially deleted; in the middle of this
paragraph the deletion ends and the anchor point marks
the resumption <anchor xml:id="a23"/> of the text. ...</p>

```

*Note* Both the beginning and ending of the deleted sequence must be marked: the beginning by the <delSpan/> element, the ending by the target of the *spanTo* attribute. The text deleted must be at least partially legible, in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it. If it is not legible at all, the <delSpan/> tag should not be used. Rather, the <gap> tag should be employed to signal that text cannot be transcribed, with the value of the *reason* attribute giving the cause for the omission from the transcription as deletion. If it is not fully legible, the <unclear> element should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence. See further sections 11.3.1.7. Text Omitted from or Supplied in the Transcription and, for the close association of the <delSpan/> tag with the <gap>, <damage>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements, 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination. The <delSpan/> tag should not be used for deletions made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the <corr> tag or the <gap> tag should be used.

<depth> contains a measurement measured across the spine of a book or codex, or (for other text-bearing objects) perpendicular to the measurement given by the 'width' element. [10.3.4. Dimensions]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))

*Member of* model.dimLike model.measureLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure measureGrp meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q

quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title  
unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder  
geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage  
typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote dimensions explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit  
layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance  
rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink  
nationality occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence  
roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*gaiji:* g

*Declaration*

element depth { att.global.attributes, att.dimensions.attributes, macro.xtext }

*Example*

```
<depth quantity="4" unit="in"/>
```

*Note* If used to specify the width of a non text-bearing portion of some object, for example a monument, this element conventionally refers to the axis facing the observer, and perpendicular to that indicated by the ‘width’ axis.

---

**<derivation>** describes the nature and extent of originality of this text. [15.2.1. The Text Description]

*Module* corpus

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic



(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

@type categorizes the derivation of the text.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.enumerated`

*Sample values include:* **original** text is original

**revision** text is a revision of some other text

**translation** text is a translation of some other text

**abridgment** text is an abridged version of some other text

**plagiarism** text is plagiarized from some other text

**traditional** text has no obvious source but is one of a number  
 derived from some common ancestor

*Member of* model.textDescPart

*Contained by*

*corpus:* textDesc

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index  
 lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled  
 term time title

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident tag val

*textcrit:* witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst  
 substJoin

*Declaration*

```
element derivation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

*Example*

```
<derivation type="original"/>
```

*Note* For derivative texts, details of the ancestor may be included in the source description.

**<desc>** (description) contains a brief description of the object documented by its parent element, including its intended usage, purpose, or application where this is appropriate. [22.4.1. Description of Components]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.translatable (*@versionDate*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

*Member of* model.descLike model.labelLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* add corr del desc emph gap graphic head hi item l lg media meeting note orig p q  
quote ref reg said sic stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure notatedMusic

*gaiji:* char charDecl glyph

*header:* application category change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage  
taxonomy typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab join seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
support surrogates

*namesdates:* climate event location org place population relation state terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic vocal writing

*tagdocs:* attDef classSpec constraintSpec elementSpec macroSpec moduleSpec  
schemaSpec valItem

*textcrit:* lem rdg witness

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace space substJoin supplied surface surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*core:* abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign  
gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref  
rs said soCalled stage term time title

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* table

*header:* biblFull idno

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specGrp specGrpRef tag val

*textcrit:* listApp listWit

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* am ex subst

*Declaration*

```

element desc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.translatable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.limitedContent}

```

*Example*

**<desc>**contains a brief description of the purpose and application for an element, attribute, attribute value, class, or entity.**</desc>**

*Note* TEI convention requires that this be expressed as a finite clause, beginning with an active verb.

---

**<dictScrap>** (dictionary scrap) encloses a part of a dictionary entry in which other phrase-level dictionary elements are freely combined. [9.1. Dictionary Body and Overall Structure 9.2. The Structure of Dictionary Entries]

*Module* dictionaries

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*)  
(att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic  
(*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))  
(att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

*Member of* model.entryPart.top

*Contained by*

*dictionaries:* entry hom re sense superEntry

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl  
measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote  
ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* case colloc def etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl  
mood number oRef oVar orth pRef pVar per pos pron re sense subc superEntry syll  
tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element dictScrap
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.entryPart    | model.morphLike    | model.phrase      | model.
  )
}
```

*Example*

```
<entry>
  <dictScrap>
    <orth>biryani</orth> or <orth>biriani</orth>
    <pron>(%bIrI"A:nI)</pron>
    <def>any of a variety of Indian dishes ...</def>
    <etym>[from <lang>Urdu</lang>]</etym>
  </dictScrap>
</entry>
```

*Note* May contain any dictionary elements in any combination. This element is used to mark part of a dictionary entry in which lower level dictionary elements appear, but which does not itself form an identifiable structural unit.

---

**<dim>** contains any single measurement forming part of a dimensional specification of some sort. [10.3.4. Dimensions]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* *Attributes* att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dimensions  
 (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost,  
 @min, @max, @confidence))

*Member of* model.measureLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct  
 editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label  
 measure measureGrp meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q  
 quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title  
 unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
 preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder  
 geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage  
 typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote dimensions explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit  
 layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance  
 rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink  
 nationality occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence  
 roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*gaiji:* g

*Declaration*

<pre> element dim {   att.global.attributes, </pre>
---

```
att.typed.attributes,
att.dimensions.attributes,
macro.xtext}
```

*Example*

```
<dim extent="4.67 in" type="circumference"/>
```

*Note* The specific elements <width>, <height>, and <depth> should be used in preference to this generic element wherever appropriate.

---

**<dimensions>** contains a dimensional specification. [10.3.4. Dimensions]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))

**@type** indicates which aspect of the object is being measured.

*Status* Optional*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Sample values include:* **leaves** dimensions relate to one or more leaves (e.g. a single leaf, a gathering, or a separately bound part)

**ruled** dimensions relate to the area of a leaf which has been ruled in preparation for writing.

**pricked** dimensions relate to the area of a leaf which has been pricked out in preparation for ruling (used where this differs significantly from the ruled area, or where the ruling is not measurable).

**written** dimensions relate to the area of a leaf which has been written, with the height measured from the top of the minims on the top line of writing, to the bottom of the minims on the bottom line of writing.

**miniatures** dimensions relate to the miniatures within the manuscript

**binding** dimensions relate to the binding in which the codex or manuscript is contained

**box** dimensions relate to the box or other container in which the manuscript is stored.

*Member of* model.pPart.msdesc*Contained by**analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr  
*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view  
*figures:* cell figDesc  
*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder  
 geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage  
 typeNote  
*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
 settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*msdescription:* depth dim height width  
*Declaration*

```

element dimensions
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dimensions.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  ( ( dim | model.dimLike ) * )
}

```

*Schematron* <s:report test="count(tei:width)> 1">The element <s:name/> may appear  
 once only </s:report> <s:report test="count(tei:height)> 1">The element  
 <s:name/> may appear once only </s:report> <s:report test="count(tei:depth)>  
 1">The element <s:name/> may appear once only </s:report>

*Example*

```

<dimensions type="leaves">
  <height scope="range">157-160</height>
  <width>105</width>
</dimensions>
<dimensions type="ruled">
  <height scope="most">90</height>
  <width scope="most">48</width>
</dimensions>
<dimensions unit="in">
  <height>12</height>

```

```
<width>10</width>
</dimensions>
```

*Example* This element may be used to record the dimensions of any text-bearing object, not necessarily a codex. For example:

```
<dimensions type="panels">
  <height scope="all">7004</height>
  <width scope="all">1803</width>
  <dim type="relief" unit="mm">345</dim>
</dimensions>
```

This might be used to show that the inscribed panels on some (imaginary) monument are all the same size (7004 by 1803 cm) and stand out from the rest of the monument by 345 mm.

*Example* When simple numeric quantities are involved, they may be expressed on the *quantity* attribute of any or all of the child elements, as in the following example:

```
<dimensions type="leaves">
  <height scope="range">157-160</height>
  <width quantity="105"/>
</dimensions>
<dimensions type="ruled">
  <height quantity="90" scope="most"
    unit="cm"/>
  <width quantity="48" scope="most" unit="cm"/>
</dimensions>
<dimensions unit="in">
  <height quantity="12"/>
  <width quantity="10"/>
</dimensions>
```

*Note* Contains no more than one of each of the specialized elements used to express a three-dimensional object's height, width, and depth, combined with any number of other kinds of dimensional specification.

---

**<distinct>** identifies any word or phrase which is regarded as linguistically distinct, for example as archaic, technical, dialectal, non-preferred, etc., or as forming part of a sublanguage. [3.3.2.3. Other Linguistically Distinct Material]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (*att.global.rendition* (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (*att.global.linking* (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*)) (*att.global.change* (*@change*)) (*att.global.responsibility* (*@cert*, *@resp*))

*@type* specifies the sublanguage or register to which the word or phrase is being assigned

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*@time* specifies how the phrase is distinct diachronically

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.text

*@space* specifies how the phrase is distinct diatopically

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.text



**@social** specifies how the phrase is distinct diastatically

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.text

*Member of* model.emphLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct  
editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label  
measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref  
reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder  
geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage  
typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```

element distinct
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute time { data.text }?,
  attribute space { data.text }?,
  attribute social { data.text }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

*Example*

```

Next morning a boy
in that dormitory confided to his bosom friend, a
<distinct type="ps_slang">fag</distinct> of
Macrea's, that there was trouble in their midst which King
<distinct type="archaic">would fain</distinct>
keep secret.

```

---

**<istributor>** supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.imprintPart model.publicationStmntPart.agency

*Contained by*

*core:* bibl imprint

*header:* publicationStmnt

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```
element distributor { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

#### Example

```
<distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor>
<distributor>Redwood and Burn Ltd</distributor>
```

**<district>** contains the name of any kind of subdivision of a settlement, such as a parish, ward, or other administrative or geographic unit. [13.2.3. Place Names]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*)  
 (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic  
 (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))  
 (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*)  
 (att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.dataable (*@calendar*,  
*@period*) (att.dataable.w3c (*@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*))  
 (att.dataable.iso (*@when-iso*, *@notBefore-iso*, *@notAfter-iso*, *@from-iso*, *@to-iso*))  
 (att.dataable.custom (*@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*, *@notAfter-custom*,  
*@from-custom*, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*, *@datingMethod*))

*Member of* model.placeNamePart

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc  
 distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l

label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote  
ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  
*corpus*: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp*: readingExpRef  
*dictionaries*: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr  
*drama*: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view  
*figures*: cell figDesc  
*header*: authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition  
extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote  
sponsor tagUsage typeNote  
*iso-fs*: fDescr fsDescr  
*linking*: ab seg  
*msdescription*: accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier catchwords collation colophon  
condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit  
layout material msIdentifier musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin  
provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates  
watermark  
*namesdates*: addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink  
nationality occupation offset org orgName persName place placeName region  
residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*spoken*: u writing  
*tagdocs*: eg valDesc  
*textcrit*: lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure*: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr*: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse*: metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis*: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty*: certainty precision respons  
*core*: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp*: correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries*: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures*: figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji*: g  
*header*: idno  
*iso-fs*: fLib fs fvLib  
*linking*: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription*: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates*: addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo

geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element district
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

*Example*

```

<placeName>
  <district type="ward">Jericho</district>
  <settlement>Oxford</settlement>
</placeName>

```

*Example*

```

<placeName>
  <district type="area">South Side</district>
  <settlement>Chicago</settlement>
</placeName>

```

---

**<div>** (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1. Divisions of the Body]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.divLike (@org, @sample) (att.metrical  
 (@met, @real, @rhyme)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)  
 att.declaring (@decls)

*Member of* model.divLike

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* back body div front

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* bibl biblStruct cb cit desc divGen gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl  
 meeting milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc textread

*dictionaries:* entry entryFree superEntry

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure notatedMusic table  
*header:* biblFull  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  
*msdescription:* msDesc  
*namesdates:* listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace  
*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* classSpec constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec listRef macroSpec moduleSpec  
           schemaSpec specGrp specGrpRef  
*textcrit:* listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate epigraph  
                 floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer  
*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin  
*Declaration*

```

element div
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+ )
        | (
            ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
            ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )*
          )
      ),
      ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
    )?
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<body>
<div type="part">
  <head>Fallacies of Authority</head>
  <p>The subject of which is Authority in various shapes, and the object, to repress
all
  exercise of the reasoning faculty.</p>
  <div n="1" type="chapter">
    <head>The Nature of Authority</head>
    <p>With reference to any proposed measures having for their object the greatest
happiness of the greatest number....</p>
    <div n="1.1" type="section">
      <head>Analysis of Authority</head>
      <p>What on any given occasion is the legitimate weight or influence to be
attached to
        authority ... </p>
    </div>
    <div n="1.2" type="section">
      <head>Appeal to Authority, in What Cases Fallacious.</head>
      <p>Reference to authority is open to the charge of fallacy when... </p>
    </div>
  </div>

```

```

</div>
</div>
</div>
</body>

```

**<div1>** (level-1 text division) contains a first-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1.2. Numbered Divisions]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.divLike (@org, @sample) (att.metrical (@met, @real, @rhyme)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls)

*Member of* model.div1Like

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* back body front

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* bibl biblStruct cb cit desc divGen gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl meeting milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc textread

*dictionaries:* entry entryFree superEntry

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure notatedMusic table

*header:* biblFull

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription:* msDesc

*namesdates:* listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs:* classSpec constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec listRef macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specGrp specGrpRef

*textcrit:* listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline div2 docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```

element div1
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,

```

```

    (
      ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
      (
        (
          ( ( model.div2Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+
          | (
              ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
              ( ( model.div2Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )*
            )
        ),
        ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
      )?
    )
  }

```

*Example*

```

<div1 n="I" type="part" xml:id="levi">
  <head>Part I: Of Man </head>
  <div2 n="1" type="chapter" xml:id="levi1">
    <head>Chap. I. Of Sense </head>
    <p>Concerning the Thoughts of man... </p>
  </div2>
</div1>
<div1 n="II" type="part" xml:id="levii">
  <head>Part II: Of Common-Wealth</head>
</div1>

```

*Note* any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

---

**<div2>** (level-2 text division) contains a second-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1.2. Numbered Divisions]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 ( att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition ) ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select ) ) ( att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) ( att.global.change ( @change ) )  
 ( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) ) att.divLike ( @org, @sample ) ( att.metrical  
 ( @met, @real, @rhyme ) ) ( att.fragmentable ( @part ) ) att.typed ( @type, @subtype )  
 att.declaring ( @decls )

*Member of* model.div2Like

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* div1

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* bibl biblStruct cb cit desc divGen gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl  
 meeting milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc textread

*dictionaries:* entry entryFree superEntry

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure notatedMusic table

*header:* biblFull



*iso-fs*: fLib fs fvLib

*linking*: ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription*: msDesc

*namesdates*: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace

*nets*: eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken*: incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs*: classSpec constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec listRef macroSpec moduleSpec  
schemaSpec specGrp specGrpRef

*textcrit*: listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure*: argument byline closer dateline div3 docAuthor docDate epigraph  
floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer

*transcr*: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```

element div2
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( ( model.div3Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+
        | (
          ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
          ( ( model.div3Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )*
        )
      ),
      ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
    )?
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<div1 n="2" type="part">
  <head>The Second Partition:
    The Cure of Melancholy</head>
  <div2 n="2.1" type="section">
    <div3 n="2.1.1" type="member">
      <div4 n="2.1.1.1" type="subsection">
        <head>Unlawful Cures rejected.</head>
        <p>Inveterate melancholy, howsoever it may seem to
          be a continue, inexorable disease, hard to be
          cured, accompanying them to their graves most part
          (as <ref target="#a">Montanus</ref> observes), yet many
          times it may be helped...
        </p>
      </div4>
    </div3>
  </div2>
  <div2 n="2.2" type="section">
    <div3 n="2.2.1" type="member">
      <head>Sect. II. Memb. I</head>
      <p>
    </div3>
  </div2>

```

```
<div2 n="2.3" type="section">
  <div3 n="2.3.1" type="member">
    <head>Sect. III. Memb. I</head>
    <p/>
  </div3>
</div2>
</div1>
```

*Note* any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

---

**<div3>** (level-3 text division) contains a third-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1.2. Numbered Divisions]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) att.divLike ( @org, @sample) (att.metrical  
( @met, @real, @rhyme)) (att.fragmentable ( @part)) att.typed ( @type, @subtype)  
att.declaring ( @decls)

*Member of* model.div3Like

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* div2

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* bibl biblStruct cb cit desc divGen gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl  
meeting milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc textread

*dictionaries:* entry entryFree superEntry

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure notatedMusic table

*header:* biblFull

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription:* msDesc

*namesdates:* listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs:* classSpec constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec listRef macroSpec moduleSpec  
schemaSpec specGrp specGrpRef

*textcrit:* listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline div4 docAuthor docDate epigraph  
floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```

element div3
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( ( model.div4Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+
        | (
          ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
          ( ( model.div4Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )*
        )
      ),
      ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
    )?
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<div2 n="2.2" type="section">
  <div3 n="2.2.1" type="member">
    <head>Sect. II. Memb. I</head>
    <p/>
  </div3>
  <div3 n="2.2.2" type="member">
    <head>Memb. II Retention and Evacuation rectified.</head>
    <p/>
  </div3>
  <div3 n="2.2.3" type="member">
    <head>Memb. III Ayr rectified. With a digression of the Ayr.</head>
    <p/>
  </div3>
</div2>

```

*Note* any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

**<div4>** (level-4 text division) contains a fourth-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1.2. Numbered Divisions]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 ( att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition ) ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select ) ) ( att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) ( att.global.change ( @change ) )  
 ( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) ) att.divLike ( @org, @sample ) ( att.metrical  
 ( @met, @real, @rhyme ) ) ( att.fragmentable ( @part ) ) att.typed ( @type, @subtype )  
 att.declaring ( @decls )

*Member of* model.div4Like

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* div3

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* bibl biblStruct cb cit desc divGen gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl  
meeting milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc textread  
*dictionaries:* entry entryFree superEntry  
*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view  
*figures:* figure notatedMusic table  
*header:* biblFull  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  
*msdescription:* msDesc  
*namesdates:* listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace  
*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* classSpec constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec listRef macroSpec moduleSpec  
schemaSpec specGrp specGrpRef  
*textcrit:* listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline div5 docAuthor docDate epigraph  
floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer  
*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin  
*Declaration*

```
element div4
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( ( model.div5Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+
        | (
          ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
          ( ( model.div5Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )*
        )
      ),
      ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
    )?
  )
}
```

#### Example

```
<div3 n="2.2.1" type="member">
  <head>Sect. II. Memb. I</head>
  <div4 n="2.2.1.1" type="subsection">
    <head>Subsect I. – Dyet rectified in substance.</head>
    <p>Diet, <term xml:lang="grc">diaitotiku</term>,
  <term xml:lang="la">victus</term> or
    living </p>
  </div4>
  <div4 n="2.2.2.1" type="subsection">
    <head>Subsect II. – Dyet rectified in quantity.</head>
    <p>Man alone, saith Cardan, eates and drinks without appetite, and useth all his
```

```

pleasures
  without necessity </p>
</div4>
</div3>

```

*Note* any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

**<div5>** (level-5 text division) contains a fifth-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1.2. Numbered Divisions]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.divLike (@org, @sample) (att.metrical (@met, @real, @rhyme)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls)

*Member of* model.div5Like

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* div4

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* bibl biblStruct cb cit desc divGen gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl meeting milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc textread

*dictionaries:* entry entryFree superEntry

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure notatedMusic table

*header:* biblFull

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription:* msDesc

*namesdates:* listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs:* classSpec constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec listRef macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specGrp specGrpRef

*textcrit:* listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline div6 docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```

element div5
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,

```

```
att.typed.attributes,  
att.declaring.attributes,  
(  
  ( model.divTop | model.global )*,  
  (  
    (  
      ( ( model.div6Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+  
      | (  
        ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,  
        ( ( model.div6Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )*  
      )  
    ),  
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*  
  )?  
)  
)  
}
```

*Example*

```
<div2 type="chapter">  
  <head>Recipes</head>  
  <head>Chapter VI.</head>  
  <div3>  
    <head>Fruit and vegetable soups</head>  
    <p>...</p>  
    <div4>  
      <head>Stocks for all kinds of soups</head>  
      <div5 type="recipe">  
        <head>Rich strong stock</head>  
        <!-- ... -->  
      </div5>  
      <div5 type="recipe">  
        <head>Medium Stock</head>  
        <!-- ... -->  
      </div5>  
    </div4>  
    <div4 type="recipe">  
      <head>Apple soup</head>  
      <div5>  
        <head>Ingredients</head>  
        <list>  
          <item>2 lbs. of good boiling apples,</item>  
          <item>3/4 teaspoonful of white pepper,</item>  
          <item>6 cloves,</item>  
          <item>cayenne or ginger to taste,</item>  
          <item>3 quarts of medium stock</item>  
        </list>  
      </div5>  
      <div5>  
        <head>Mode</head>  
        <p>Peel and quarter the apples taking out their cores; put them into  
          the stock, stew them gently till tender, Rub the whole through a  
          strainer, add the seasoning. give it one boil up, and serve.</p>  
      </div5>  
      <div5>  
        <head>Time</head>  
        <p>1 hour.</p>  
      </div5>  
      <div5>  
        <head>Average cost</head>  
        <p>per quart, 1s.</p>  
      </div5>  
    </div4>  
  </div3>
```

```

    <head>Seasonable</head>
    <p>from September to December.</p>
  </div5>
  <div5>
    <head>Sufficient</head>
    <p> for 10 persons</p>
  </div5>
  <div5>
    <head>The apple</head>
    <p>This useful fruit is mentioned in Holy Writ; and Homer describes it
      as valuable in his time... As a food, the apple cannot be considered
      to rank high, as more than the half of it consists of water, and
      the rest of its properties are not the most nourishing. It is
      however a useful adjunct to other kinds of food, and, when cooked, is
      esteemed as slightly laxative.</p>
  </div5>
</div4>
<div4 type="recipe">
  <head>Artichoke (Jerusalem) soup</head>
  <p>...</p>
</div4>
<!-- other recipes here -->
</div3>
</div2>

```

*Note* any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

**<div6>** (level-6 text division) contains a sixth-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1.2. Numbered Divisions]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) att.divLike ( @org, @sample) (att.metrical  
 ( @met, @real, @rhyme)) (att.fragmentable ( @part)) att.typed ( @type, @subtype)  
 att.declaring ( @decls)

*Member of* model.div6Like

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* div5

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* bibl biblStruct cb cit desc divGen gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl  
 meeting milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc textread

*dictionaries:* entry entryFree superEntry

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure notatedMusic table

*header:* biblFull

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription:* msDesc

*namesdates:* listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs:* classSpec constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec listRef macroSpec moduleSpec  
schemaSpec specGrp specGrpRef

*textcrit:* listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline div7 docAuthor docDate epigraph  
floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```
element div6
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( ( model.div7Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+
        | (
          ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
          ( ( model.div7Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )*
        )
      ),
      ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
    )?
  )
}
```

*Example*

```
<div2 type="chapter">
  <head>Recipes</head>
  <head>Chapter VI.</head>
  <div3>
    <head>Fruit and vegetable soups</head>
    <p>...</p>
    <div4>
      <head>Stocks for all kinds of soups</head>
      <div5 type="recipe">
        <head>Rich strong stock</head>
        <div6>
          <head>Ingredients</head>
          <list>
            <item>4 lbs of shin of beef,</item>
            <item>4 lbs of knuckle of veal,</item>
            <!-- .... -->
            <item>4 quarts of water</item>
          </list>
        </div6>
        <div6>
          <head>Mode</head>
          <p>Line a delicately clean stewpan... Strain through a very
            fine hair sieve, or tammy, and it will be fit for use</p>
```



```

</div6>
<div6>
  <head>Time</head>
  <p>5 hours.</p>
</div6>
<div6>
  <head>Average cost</head>
  <p>1s 3d. per quart</p>
</div6>
</div5>
<div5 type="recipe">
  <head>Medium Stock</head>
<!-- ... -->
</div5>
</div4>
<!-- .... -->
</div3>
</div2>

```

*Note* any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

**<div7>** (level-7 text division) contains the smallest possible subdivision of the front, body or back of a text, larger than a paragraph. [4.1.2. Numbered Divisions]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.divLike (@org, @sample) (att.metrical (@met, @real, @rhyme)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls)

*Member of* model.div7Like

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* div6

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* bibl biblStruct cb cit desc gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl meeting milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc textread

*dictionaries:* entry entryFree superEntry

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure notatedMusic table

*header:* biblFull

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription:* msDesc

*namesdates:* listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs:* classSpec constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec listRef macroSpec moduleSpec  
schemaSpec specGrp specGrpRef

*textcrit:* listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText  
opener postscript salute signed trailer

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```
element div7
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    (
      ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
      ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
    )?
  )
}
```

*Example*

```
<div2 type="chapter">
<head>Recipes</head>
<head>Chapter VI.</head>
<div3>
<head>Fruit and vegetable soups</head>
<p>...</p>
<div4>
<head>Stocks for all kinds of soups</head>
<div5 type="recipe">
<head>Asparagus soup</head>
<div6 type="altRecipe">
<head>I.</head>
<div7>
<head>Ingredients</head>
<list>
<item> ...</item>
</list>
</div7>
<div7>
<head>Mode</head>
<p>Put the beef, cut into pieces and rolled in flour, into a
stewpan...</p>
</div7>
<!-- ... -->
</div6>
<div6 type="altRecipe">
<head>II.</head>
<div7>
<head>Ingredients</head>
<list>
<item> ...</item>
</list>
</div7>
<div7>
<head>Mode</head>
<p>Boil the peas, and rub them through a sieve; add the gravy...</p>
```

```

</div7>
</div6>
</div5>
</div4>
</div3>
</div2>

```

*Note* any sequence of low-level structural elements, e.g., paragraphs (<p>), lists (<list>), or examples (<eg> or <egXML>).

**<divGen>** (automatically generated text division) indicates the location at which a textual division generated automatically by a text-processing application is to appear. [3.8.2. Index Entries]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

**@type** specifies what type of generated text division (e.g. index, table of contents, etc.) is to appear.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Sample values include:* **index** an index is to be generated and inserted at this point.

**toc** a table of contents

**figlist** a list of figures

**tablist** a list of tables

*Note* Valid values are application-dependent; those shown are of obvious utility in document production, but are by no means exhaustive.

*Member of* model.divGenLike model.frontPart

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 front

*May contain*

*core:* head

*Declaration*

```

element divGen
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  model.headLike*
}

```

*Example* One use for this element is to allow document preparation software to generate an index and insert it in the appropriate place in the output. The example below assumes that the *indexName* attribute on <index> elements in the text has been used to specify index entries for the two generated indexes, named NAMES and THINGS:

```

<back>
<div1 type="backmat">

```

```

    <head>Bibliography</head>
  <!-- .... -->
</div1>
<div1 type="backmat">
  <head>Indices</head>
  <divGen n="Index Nominum" type="NAMES"/>
  <divGen n="Index Rerum" type="THINGS"/>
</div1>
</back>

```

*Example* Another use for <divGen> is to specify the location of an automatically produced table of contents:

```

<front>
<!--<titlePage>...</titlePage>-->
  <divGen type="toc"/>
  <div>
    <head>Preface</head>
    <p> ... </p>
  </div>
</front>

```

*Note* This element is intended primarily for use in document production or manipulation, rather than in the transcription of pre-existing materials; it makes it easier to specify the location of indices, tables of contents, etc., to be generated by text preparation or word processing software.

---

**<docAuthor>** (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline). [4.6. Title Pages]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)

*Member of* model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

*Contained by*

*core:* lg list

*drama:* castList epilogue performance prologue

*figures:* figure table

*msdescription:* msItem

*textstructure:* back body byline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group titlePage

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element docAuthor
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

#### Example

```

<titlePage>
  <docTitle>
    <titlePart>Travels into Several Remote Nations of the World, in Four
      Parts.</titlePart>
  </docTitle>
  <byline>By <docAuthor>Lemuel Gulliver</docAuthor>, First a Surgeon,
    and then a Captain of several Ships</byline>
</titlePage>

```

*Note* The document author's name often occurs within a byline, but the <docAuthor> element may be used whether the <byline> element is used or not. It should be used only for the author(s) of the entire document, not for author(s) of any subset or part of it.

**<docDate>** (document date) contains the date of a document, as given on a title page or in a dateline. [4.6. Title Pages]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

**@when** gives the value of the date in standard form, i.e. YYYY-MM-DD.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.temporal.w3c

*Note* For simple dates, the *when* attribute should give the Gregorian or proleptic Gregorian date in one of the formats specified in *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*.

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: castList epilogue performance prologue

figures: figure table

msdescription: msItem

textstructure: back body dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docImprint front group titlePage

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

certainty: certainty precision respons

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

derived-module-tei\_readingExp: correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

spoken: incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

tagdocs: att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element docDate
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute when { data.temporal.w3c }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<docImprint>Oxford, Clarendon Press, <docDate>1987</docDate>
</docImprint>
```

*Note* Cf. the general `<date>` element in the core tag set. This specialized element is provided for convenience in marking and processing the date of the documents, since

it is likely to require specialized handling for many applications. It should be used only for the date of the entire document, not for any subset or part of it.

**<docEdition>** (document edition) contains an edition statement as presented on a title page of a document. [4.6. Title Pages]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* msItem

*textstructure:* back front titlePage

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

element docEdition { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
---

*Example***<docEdition>**The Third edition Corrected**</docEdition>**

*Note* Cf. the <edition> element of bibliographic citation. As usual, the shorter name has been given to the more frequent element.

---

**<docImprint>** (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page. [4.6. Title Pages]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart*Contained by**msdescription:* msItem*textstructure:* back front titlePage*May contain**analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr pubPlace publisher ref reg rs sic soCalled term  
 time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic*gaiji:* g*header:* idno*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val*textcrit:* app witDetail*textstructure:* docDate

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo



*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element docImprint
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | pubPlace      | docDate      | publisher      | model.
```

*Example*

```
<docImprint>Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1987</docImprint>
```

Imprints may be somewhat more complex:

```
<docImprint>
  <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
Printed for <name>E. Nutt</name>,
at
<pubPlace>Royal Exchange</pubPlace>;
<name>J. Roberts</name> in
<pubPlace>wick-Lane</pubPlace>;
<name>A. Dodd</name> without
<pubPlace>Temple-Bar</pubPlace>;
and <name>J. Graves</name> in
<pubPlace>St. James's-street.</pubPlace>
<date>1722.</date>
</docImprint>
```

*Note* Cf. the <imprint> element of bibliographic citations. As with title, author, and editions, the shorter name is reserved for the element likely to be used more often.

---

**<docTitle>** (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page. [4.6. Title Pages]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)

*Member of* model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* msItem

*textstructure:* back front titlePage

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* cb gap gb index lb milestone note pb

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*textcrit:* witDetail

*textstructure:* titlePart

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```

element docTitle
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  ( model.global*, ( titlePart, model.global* )+ )
}

```

*Example*

```

<docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main">The DUNCIAD, VARIOURVM.</titlePart>
  <titlePart type="sub">WITH THE PROLEGOMENA of SCRIBLERUS.</titlePart>
</docTitle>

```

---

**<domain>** (domain of use) describes the most important social context in which the text was realized or for which it is intended, for example private vs. public, education, religion, etc. [15.2.1. The Text Description]

*Module* corpus

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))

**@type** categorizes the domain of use.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Sample values include:* **art** art and entertainment

**domestic** domestic and private

**religious** religious and ceremonial

**business** business and work place

**education** education

**govt** (government) government and law

**public** other forms of public context

*Member of* model.textDescPart

*Contained by*

*corpus:* textDesc

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index  
 lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled  
 term time title

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang

*figures:* figure notatedMusic  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident tag val  
*textcrit:* witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst  
 substJoin  
*Declaration*

```

element domain
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

### Example

```

<domain type="domestic"/>
<domain type="rel">religious broadcast</domain>

```

*Note* Usually empty, unless some further clarification of the type attribute is needed, in which case it may contain running prose. The list presented here is primarily for illustrative purposes.

**<eLeaf>** (leaf or terminal node of an embedding tree) provides explicitly for a leaf of an embedding tree, which may also be encoded with the eTree element. [19.3. Another Tree Notation]

### Module nets

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

**@value** indicates the value of an embedding leaf, which is a feature structure or other analytic element.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

*Contained by* eTree triangle

*May contain*

*core:* label ptr ref

*Declaration*

```

element eLeaf
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute value { data.pointer }?,
  ( label?, model.ptrLike? )
}

```

*Example*

```

<eLeaf value="http://an.furl.tei/#FSWITH">
  <label>with</label>
</eLeaf>

```

*Note* The <eTree> tag may be used if the encoder does not wish to distinguish by name between nonleaf and leaf nodes in embedding trees; they are distinguished by their arrangement.

---

**<eTree>** (embedding tree) provides an alternative to tree element for representing ordered rooted tree structures. [19.3. Another Tree Notation]

*Module* nets

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

**@value** provides the value of an embedding tree, which is a feature structure or other analytic element.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

*Member of* model.divPart

*Contained by*

*core:* item note q quote said stage

*drama:* castList epilogue performance prologue set view

*figures:* cell figure

*header:* change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
support surrogates

*nets:* eTree forest triangle

*tagdocs:* specGrp

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph postscript

*transcr:* metamark

*May contain*

*core:* label ptr ref

*nets:* eLeaf eTree triangle

*Declaration*

```

element eTree
{

```

```

    att.global.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    attribute value { data.pointer }?,
    ( label?, ( eTree | triangle | eLeaf | model.ptrLike ) * )
}

```

*Example*

```

<eTree n="ex1">
  <label>PP</label>
  <eTree>
    <label>P</label>
    <eLeaf>
      <label>with</label>
    </eLeaf>
  </eTree>
  <eTree>
    <label>NP</label>
    <eTree>
      <label>Art</label>
      <eLeaf>
        <label>the</label>
      </eLeaf>
    </eTree>
  </eTree>
  <eTree>
    <label>N</label>
    <eLeaf>
      <label>periscope</label>
    </eLeaf>
  </eTree>
</eTree>

```

*Note* an optional label followed by zero or more embedding trees, triangles, or embedding leafs.

**<edition>** describes the particularities of one edition of a text. [2.2.2. The Edition Statement]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 ( att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition ) ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select ) ) ( att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) ( att.global.change ( @change ) )  
 ( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) )

*Member of* model.biblPart

*Contained by*

*core:* bibl monogr

*header:* editionStmt

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element edition { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

*Example*

```
<edition>First edition <date>Oct 1990</date>
</edition>
<edition n="S2">Students' edition</edition>
```

---

**<editionStmt>** (edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text. [2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2. The File Description]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))

*Contained by*

*header:* biblFull fileDesc

*May contain*

*core:* author editor meeting p respStmt

*header:* edition funder principal sponsor

*linking:* ab

*Declaration*

```
element editionStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( edition, model.respLike* ) )
}
```

*Example*

```

<editionStmt>
  <edition n="S2">Students' edition</edition>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>Adapted by </resp>
    <name>Elizabeth Kirk</name>
  </respStmt>
</editionStmt>

```

*Example*

```

<editionStmt>
  <p>First edition, <date>Michaelmas Term, 1991.</date>
  </p>
</editionStmt>

```

**<editor>** contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors]

*Module core*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

*Member of* model.respLike

*Contained by*

*core:* analytic bibl monogr series

*header:* editionStmt seriesStmt titleStmt

*msdescription:* msItem

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element editor
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example*

```
<editor>Eric Johnson</editor>
<editor role="illustrator">John Tenniel</editor>
```

*Note* A consistent format should be adopted. Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names.

---

**<editorialDecl>** (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text. [2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration 2.3. The Encoding Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*)  
(att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic  
(*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))  
(att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.declarable (*@default*)

*Member of* model.encodingDescPart

*Contained by*

*header:* encodingDesc

*May contain*

*core:* p

*header:* correction hyphenation interpretation normalization punctuation quotation  
segmentation stdVals

*linking:* ab

*Declaration*

```
element editorialDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( model.pLike | model.editorialDeclPart )+
}
```

*Example*

```
<editorialDecl>
  <normalization>
    <p>All words converted to Modern American spelling using
      Websters 9th Collegiate dictionary
    </p>
```



```

</normalization>
<quotation marks="all">
  <p>All opening quotation marks converted to “ all closing
    quotation marks converted to &cdq;.</p>
</quotation>
</editorialDecl>

```

**<education>** contains a description of the educational experience of a person. [15.2.2. The Participant Description]

*Module namesdates*

*Attributes* *Attributes* att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

*Member of* model.persStateLike

*Contained by*

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* addressee listener reader sender

*namesdates:* person personGrp

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element education
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example*

```
<education>Left school at age 16</education>
```

*Example*

```
<education from="1986-01-01"
to="1990-06-30">Attended <name>Cherwell School</name>
</education>
```

*Example*

```
<education notAfter="1690-06"
notBefore="1685-07">Anthony Hammond
smuggled her into the University of Cambridge, where she was
disguised as his male cousin, Jack. She remained there for some
months learning grammar, logic, rhetoric, and ethics</education>
```

---

**<eg>** (example) contains any kind of illustrative example. [22.4.4. Element Specifications  
22.4.5. Attribute List Specification]

*Module* tagdocs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.egLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said  
sic stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
support surrogates

*spoken:* writing

*tagdocs:* exemplum  
*textcrit:* lem rdg witness  
*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
 imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```
element eg { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

#### Example

```

<p>The
<gi>term</gi> element is declared using the following syntax:
<eg><![CDATA[<![ELEMENT term (%phrase.content;)>]]</eg>
</p>

```

*Note* If the example contains material in XML markup, either it must be enclosed within a CDATA marked section, or character entity references must be used to represent the markup delimiters. If the example contains well-formed XML, it should be marked using the more specific <egXML> element.

---

<egXML> (example of XML) contains a single well-formed XML fragment demonstrating the use of some XML element or attribute, in which the <egXML> element itself functions as the root element. [22.1.1. Phrase Level Terms]

*Namespace* <http://www.tei-c.org/ns/Examples>

*Module* tagdocs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*)  
(att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic  
(*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))  
(att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.source (*@source*)

**@valid** indicates the intended validity of the example with respect to a schema.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Legal values are:* **true** the example is intended to be fully valid,  
assuming that its root element, or a provided root element,  
could have been used as a possible root element in the schema  
concerned.[Default]

**feasible** the example could be transformed into a valid document  
by inserting any number of valid attributes and child elements  
anywhere within it; or it is valid against a version of the schema  
concerned in which the provision of character data, list,  
element, or attribute values has been made optional.

**false** the example is not intended to be valid, and contains  
deliberate errors.

*Member of* model.egLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said  
sic stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
support surrogates

*spoken:* writing

*tagdocs:* exemplum

*textcrit:* lem rdg witness

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain* ANY

*Declaration*

element egXML {
--------------------

```

    att.global.attributes,
    att.source.attributes,
    attribute valid { "true" | "feasible" | "false" }?,
    text | macro.anyXML*
}

```

*Example*

```

<egXML><div>
  <head>A slide about <gi>egXML</gi>
</head>
  <list>
    <item>
      <gi>egXML</gi> can be used to give XML examples in the TEI
      Examples namespace</item>
    <item>Attributes values for <att>valid</att>:
    <list rend="collapsed">
      <item>
        <val rend="green">true</val>: intended to be fully
        valid</item>
      <item>
        <val rend="amber">feasible</val>: valid if missing nodes
        provided</item>
      <item>
        <val rend="red">false</val>: not intended to be valid</item>
    </list>
    </item>
    <item>The <att>rend</att> attribute in the TEI namespace can be
    used for recording how parts of the example was rendered.</item>
  </list>
</div>
</egXML>

```

*Example*

```

<egXML valid="feasible"><text>
  <front>
<!-- front matter for the whole group -->
  </front>
  <group>
    <text>
<!-- first text -->
    </text>
    <text>
<!-- second text -->
    </text>
  </group>
</text>
<!-- This example is not valid TEI, but could be made so by
adding missing components -->
</egXML>

```

*Example*

```

<egXML xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/Examples" valid="false">
  <para xml:lang="en">Doubloons are a pirate's best friend</para>
</egXML>

```

*Note* In the source of the TEI Guidelines, this element declares itself and its content as belonging to the namespace <http://www.tei-c.org/ns/Examples>. This enables the content of the element to be validated independently against the TEI scheme. Where this element is used outside this context, a different namespace or none at all may be preferable. The content must however be a well-formed XML fragment or document:

where this is not the case, the more general `<eg>` element should be used in preference. In a TEI context use of the *rend* attribute in the TEI namespace, as opposed to the TEI Examples namespace, enables recording of rendition information.

---

**<elementRef/>** points to the specification for some element which is to be included in a schema [22.2. Modules and Schemas]

*Module* tagdocs

*Attributes* Attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (*att.global.rendition* (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (*att.global.linking* (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*)) (*att.global.change* (*@change*)) (*att.global.responsibility* (*@cert*, *@resp*)) *att.repeatable* (*@context*, *@minOccurs*, *@maxOccurs*) *att.readFrom* (*@source*)

**@key** the identifier used for the required element within the source indicated.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* **data.xmlName**

*Member of* model.contentPart model.oddRef

*Contained by*

*tagdocs:* alternate content schemaSpec sequence specGrp

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element elementRef
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.repeatable.attributes,
  att.readFrom.attributes,
  attribute key { data.xmlName },
  empty
}
```

*Example*

```
<elementRef key="p"/>
```

Include in the schema an element named `<p>` available from the current default source.

*Example*

```
<elementRef key="p" source="tei:1.2.1"/>
```

Include in the schema an element named `<p>` available from the TEI P5 1.2.1 release.

*Note* Elements are identified by the name supplied as value for the *ident* attribute on the `<elementSpec>` element in which they are declared. TEI element names are unique.

---

**<elementSpec>** (element specification) documents the structure, content, and purpose of a single element type. [22.4.4. Element Specifications 22. Documentation Elements]

*Module* tagdocs

*Attributes* Attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (*att.global.rendition* (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (*att.global.linking* (*@corresp*,

(*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.identified (*@ident*, *@predeclare*, *@module*, *@status*) (att.combinable (*@mode*) (att.deprecated (*@validUntil*)) ) att.namespaceable (*@ns*)

**@prefix** specifies a default prefix which will be prepended to all patterns relating to the element, unless otherwise stated.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* " " | data.xmlName

*Note* Colons, although permitted inside the value, will cause an invalid schema to be generated.

*Member of* model.oddDecl

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

*spoken:* writing

*tagdocs:* schemaSpec specGrp

*textcrit:* lem rdg witness

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*core:* desc gloss

*tagdocs:* altIdent attList classes constraintSpec content equiv exemplum listRef remarks valList

*Declaration*

```

element elementSpec
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.identified.attributes,
  att.namespaceable.attributes,
  attribute prefix { " " | data.xmlName }?,
  (
    ( model.glossLike | model.descLike )*,
    classes?,
    content?,
    valList?,
  )
}

```

```
        constraintSpec*,
        attList?,
        exemplum*,
        remarks*,
        listRef*
    )
}
```

*Example*

```
<elementSpec ident="code" module="tagdocs">
  <gloss/>
  <desc>contains literal code</desc>
  <classes>
    <memberOf key="model.emphLike"/>
  </classes>
  <content>
    <rng:text/>
  </content>
  <attList>
    <attDef ident="type" usage="opt">
      <desc>the language of the code</desc>
      <datatype>
        <rng:ref name="data.enumerated"/>
      </datatype>
    </attDef>
  </attList>
</elementSpec>
```

---

**<email>** (electronic mail address) contains an email address identifying a location to which email messages can be delivered. [3.5.2. Addresses]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.addressLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct  
editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label  
measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref  
reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition



extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote  
 sponsor tagUsage typeNote  
*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink  
 nationality occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence  
 roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

element email { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
--

*Example*

```
<email>membership@tei-c.org</email>
```

*Note* The format of a modern Internet email address is defined in RFC 2822

---

**<emotion>** Contains information regarding the emotions generated by the reading experience.

*Namespace* `http://readingexp.univ-lemans.fr/tei`

*Module* `derived-module-tei_readingExp`

*Attributes* Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.rendition` (`@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`)) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`)) (`att.global.responsibility` (`@cert`, `@resp`))

*@ref* Reference

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 0–1 occurrences of `data.text` separated by whitespace

*@type* Type

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 0–1 occurrences of `data.text` separated by whitespace

*Contained by* `derived-module-tei_readingExp`: `readingExp`

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element emotion
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute ref { data.text }?,
  attribute type { data.text }?,
  empty
}
```

---

**<emph>** (emphasized) marks words or phrases which are stressed or emphasized for linguistic or rhetorical effect. [3.3.2.2. Emphatic Words and Phrases 3.3.2. Emphasis, Foreign Words, and Unusual Language]

*Module* `core`

*Attributes* Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.rendition` (`@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`)) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`)) (`att.global.responsibility` (`@cert`, `@resp`))

*Member of* `model.emphLike`

*Contained by*

*analysis:* `cl` `phr` `s` `span`

*core:* `abbr` `add` `addrLine` `author` `bibl` `biblScope` `citedRange` `corr` `date` `del` `desc` `distinct` `editor` `email` `emph` `expan` `foreign` `gloss` `head` `headItem` `headLabel` `hi` `item` `l` `label`

measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref  
 reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  
*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
 preparedness purpose  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr  
*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view  
*figures:* cell figDesc  
*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder  
 geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage  
 typeNote  
*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
 settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
 distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
 listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
 q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* biblFull idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo

geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
 offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
 surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
 macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

element emph { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }

*Example*

You took the car and did **<emph>what</emph>?!!**

*Example*

```

<q>What it all comes to is this,</q> he said.
<q>
  <emph>What
    does Christopher Robin do in the morning nowadays?</emph>
</q>

```

---

**<encodingDesc>** (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived. [2.3. The Encoding Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*)  
 (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic  
 (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))  
 (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

*Member of* model.teiHeaderPart*Contained by*

*header:* teiHeader

*May contain*

*core:* p

*gaiji:* charDecl

*header:* appInfo classDecl editorialDecl geoDecl listPrefixDef projectDesc refsDecl  
 samplingDecl styleDefDecl tagsDecl

*iso-fs:* fsdDecl

*linking:* ab

*tagdocs:* schemaSpec

*textcrit:* variantEncoding

*verse:* metDecl

*Declaration*

```

element encodingDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( model.encodingDescPart | model.pLike )+ )
}

```

*Example*

```

<encodingDesc>
  <p>Basic encoding, capturing lexical information only. All
    hyphenation, punctuation, and variant spellings normalized. No
    formatting or layout information preserved.</p>
</encodingDesc>

```

**<entry>** contains a single structured entry in any kind of lexical resource, such as a dictionary or lexicon. [9.1. Dictionary Body and Overall Structure 9.2. The Structure of Dictionary Entries]

*Module* dictionaries

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.entryLike (@type) att.sortable (@sortKey)

*Member of* model.entryLike

*Contained by*

*dictionaries:* superEntry

*drama:* castList epilogue performance prologue set

*figures:* figure

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph postscript

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* cb cit gap gb index lb milestone note pb ptr ref

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc

*dictionaries:* def dictScrap etym form gramGrp hom re sense usg xr

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*textcrit:* witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```

element entry
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.entryLike.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
}

```

```
( hom | sense | model.entryPart.top | model.global | model.ptrLike )+
}
```

*Example*

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>disproof</orth>
    <pron>dIs"pru:f</pron>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <pos>n</pos>
  </gramGrp>
  <sense n="1">
    <def>facts that disprove something.</def>
  </sense>
  <sense n="2">
    <def>the act of disproving.</def>
  </sense>
</entry>
```

*Note* Like all elements, `<entry>` inherits an *xml:id* attribute from the class *global*. No restrictions are placed on the method used to construct *xml:ids*; one convenient method is to use the orthographic form of the headword, appending a disambiguating number where necessary. Identification codes are sometimes included on machine-readable tapes of dictionaries for in-house use. It is recommended to use the `<sense>` element even for an entry that has only one sense to group together all parts of the definition relating to the word sense since this leads to more consistent encoding across entries.

---

**<entryFree>** (unstructured entry) contains a single unstructured entry in any kind of lexical resource, such as a dictionary or lexicon. [9.1. Dictionary Body and Overall Structure 9.2. The Structure of Dictionary Entries]

*Module* dictionaries

*Attributes* Attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (*att.global.rendition* (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (*att.global.linking* (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*)) (*att.global.change* (*@change*)) (*att.global.responsibility* (*@cert*, *@resp*)) *att.entryLike* (*@type*) *att.lexicographic* (*@expand*, *@norm*, *@split*, *@value*, *@orig*, *@location*, *@mergedIn*, *@opt*) (*att.datcat* (*@datcat*, *@valueDatcat*)) *att.sortable* (*@sortKey*)

*Member of* model.entryLike

*Contained by*

*drama:* castList epilogue performance prologue set

*figures:* figure

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph postscript

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread  
*dictionaries:* case colloc def etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl  
 mood number oRef oVar orth pRef pVar per pos pron re sense subc superEntry syll  
 tns usg xr  
*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* biblFull idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
 offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
 surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
 macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element entryFree
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.entryLike.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.entryPart    | model.morphLike    | model.phrase      | model.
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<entryFree>
<orth>biryani</orth> or <orth>biriani</orth>
<pron>(%bIrI"A:nI)</pron>
<def>any of a variety of Indian dishes ...</def>
<etym>[from <lang>Urdu</lang>]</etym>
</entryFree>

```

*Note* May contain any dictionary elements in any combination.

<epigraph> contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start or end of a section or on a title page. [4.2.3. Arguments, Epigraphs, and Postscripts  
 4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions 4.6. Title Pages]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

*Contained by*

*core:* lg list

*drama:* castList epilogue performance prologue

*figures:* figure table

*msdescription:* msItem

*textstructure:* back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group opener  
titlePage

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* bibl biblStruct cb cit desc gap gb index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb  
q quote said sp stage

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc textread

*dictionaries:* entry entryFree superEntry

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure notatedMusic table

*header:* biblFull

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription:* msDesc

*namesdates:* listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs:* classSpec constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec listRef macroSpec moduleSpec  
schemaSpec specGrp specGrpRef

*textcrit:* listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```
element epigraph { att.global.attributes, ( model.common | model.global )* }
```

*Example*

```
<epigraph xml:lang="la">
  <cit>
    <bibl>Lucret.</bibl>
    <quote>
      <l part="F">petere inde coronam,</l>
      <l>Vnde prius nulli velarint tempora Musae.</l>
    </quote>
  </cit>
</epigraph>
```



**<epilogue>** contains the epilogue to a drama, typically spoken by an actor out of character, possibly in association with a particular performance or venue. [7.1.2. Prologues and Epilogues 7.1. Front and Back Matter ]

*Module* drama

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))

*Member of* model.frontPart.drama

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* back front

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* bibl biblStruct cb cit desc gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl meeting  
 milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc textread

*dictionaries:* entry entryFree superEntry

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure notatedMusic table

*header:* biblFull

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription:* msDesc

*namesdates:* listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs:* classSpec constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec listRef macroSpec moduleSpec  
 schemaSpec specGrp specGrpRef

*textcrit:* listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText  
 opener postscript salute signed trailer

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```

element epilogue
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<epilogue>
  <head>Written by <name>Colley Cibber, Esq</name> and spoken by <name>Mrs.
  Cibber</name>

```

```
</head>
<sp>
  <lg type="couplet">
    <l>Since Fate has robb'd me of the hapless Youth,</l>
    <l>For whom my heart had hoarded up its truth;</l>
  </lg>
  <lg type="couplet">
    <l>By all the Laws of Love and Honour, now,</l>
    <l>I'm free again to chuse, – and one of you</l>
  </lg>
  <lg type="triplet">
    <l>Suppose I search the sober Gallery; – No,</l>
    <l>There's none but Prentices – & Cuckolds all a row:</l>
    <l>And these, I doubt, are those that make 'em so.</l>
  </lg>
  <stage type="business">Pointing to the Boxes.</stage>
  <lg type="couplet">
    <l>'Tis very well, enjoy the jest:</l>
  </lg>
</sp>
</epilogue>
```

*Note* Contains optional headings, a sequence of one or more component-level elements, and an optional sequence of closing material.

---

**<equipment>** provides technical details of the equipment and media used for an audio or video recording used as the source for a spoken text. [8.2. Documenting the Source of Transcribed Speech 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

*Module* spoken

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.declarable (@default)

*Member of* model.recordingPart

*Contained by*

*spoken:* recording

*May contain*

*core:* p

*linking:* ab

*Declaration*

```
element equipment
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  model.pLike+
}
```

*Example*

```
<equipment>
  <p>"Hi-8" 8 mm NTSC camcorder with integral directional
    microphone and windshield and stereo digital sound
    recording channel.
```

```

</p>
</equipment>

```

*Example*

```

<equipment>
  <p>8-track analogue transfer mixed down to 19 cm/sec audio
    tape for cassette mastering</p>
</equipment>

```

**<equiv/>** (equivalent) specifies a component which is considered equivalent to the parent element, either by co-reference, or by external link. [3.3.4. Terms, Glosses, Equivalents, and Descriptions 22.4.1. Description of Components]

*Module* tagdocs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change)) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) att.internetMedia ( @mimeType)

**@name** a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>), naming the underlying concept of which the parent is a representation.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.name

**@uri** (uniform resource identifier) references the underlying concept of which the parent is a representation by means of some external identifier

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

**@filter** references an external script which contains a method to transform instances of this element to canonical TEI

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

*Member of* model.glossLike

*Contained by*

*header:* category taxonomy

*linking:* joinGrp

*tagdocs:* attDef classSpec constraintSpec elementSpec macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec valItem

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```

element equiv
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.internetMedia.attributes,
  attribute name { data.name }?,
  attribute uri { data.pointer }?,
  attribute filter { data.pointer }?,
  empty
}

```

*Example* The following example declares that the **<bo>** element is conceptually equivalent to the markup construct **<hi rend='bold'>**, and that an external definition of this concept is available from the URI indicated

```
<elementSpec ident="hi" mode="change">
  <equiv name="BOLD"/>
  <desc>bold typography</desc>
  <attList>
    <attDef ident="rend" mode="change">
      <valList>
        <valItem ident="bold"/>
      </valList>
    </attDef>
  </attList>
</elementSpec>
<elementSpec ident="bo" mode="add">
  <equiv name="BOLD"
    uri="http://www.example.com/typesetting/bold"/>
</elementSpec>
```

*Note* The *mimeType* attribute should be used to supply the MIME media type of the filter script specified by the *filter* attribute.

---

**<etym>** (etymology) encloses the etymological information in a dictionary entry. [9.3.4. Etymological Information]

*Module* dictionaries

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

*Member of* model.entryPart model.entryPart.top

*Contained by*

*core:* cit

*dictionaries:* dictScrap entry entryFree hom re sense

*namesdates:* nym

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* case def gen gram iType lang lbl mood number oRef oVar pRef pVar per tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
 offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
 surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
 macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element etym
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter      | usg      | lbl      | def      | mode
  )
}

```

#### Example

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>publish</orth> ... </form>
  <etym>
    <lang>ME.</lang>
    <mentioned>publisshen</mentioned>,
    <lang>F.</lang>
    <mentioned>publier</mentioned>, <lang>L.</lang>
    <mentioned>publicare,
      publicatum</mentioned>. <xr>See <ref>public</ref>; cf. 2d
  <ref>-ish</ref>.</xr>
  </etym>
</entry> (From: Webster's Second International)

```

*Note* May contain character data mixed with any other elements defined in the dictionary tag set. There is no consensus on the internal structure of etymologies, or even on whether such a structure is appropriate. The <etym> element accordingly simply contains prose, within which names of languages, cited words, or parts of words, glosses, and examples will typically be prominent. The tagging of such internal objects is optional.

---

**<event>** contains data relating to any kind of significant event associated with a person, place, or organization. [13.3.1. Basic Principles]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,

*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (*att.global.analytic*  
*(@ana)* (*att.global.facs (@facs)*) (*att.global.change (@change)*)  
*(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.dataable (@calendar, @period)*  
*(att.dataable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dataable.iso*  
*(@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.dataable.custom*  
*(@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom,*  
*@datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions*  
*(@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost,*  
*@min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)*  
*att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.sortable (@sortKey)*  
*@where* indicates the location of an event by pointing to a *<place>* element

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.pointer**

*Member of* model.persEventLike model.placeEventLike

*Contained by*

*namesdates:* event listEvent person personGrp place

*May contain*

*core:* bibl biblStruct desc head label listBibl note p

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* textread

*header:* biblFull

*linking:* ab link linkGrp

*msdescription:* msDesc

*namesdates:* event

*textcrit:* witDetail

*Declaration*

```

element event
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  attribute where { data.pointer }?,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    ( ( model.pLike+ ) | ( model.labelLike+ ) ),
    ( model.noteLike | model.biblLike | linkGrp | link )*,
    event*
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<person>
  <event type="mat" when="1972-10-12">
    <label>matriculation</label>
  </event>
  <event type="grad" when="1975-06-23">
    <label>graduation</label>
  </event>
</person>

```

<ex> (editorial expansion) contains a sequence of letters added by an editor or transcriber when expanding an abbreviation. [11.3.1.2. Abbreviation and Expansion]

*Module* transcr

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant)  
 (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging  
 (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source))

*Member of* model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl pc phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del desc  
 distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l  
 label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote  
 ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
 preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder  
 geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage  
 typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
 settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*gaiji:* g

*Declaration*

```
element ex { att.global.attributes, att.editLike.attributes, macro.xtext }
```

*Example*

```
The address is Southmoor <choice>
<expan>R<ex>oa</ex>d</expan>
<abbr>Rd</abbr>
</choice>
```

---

**<exemplum>** groups an example demonstrating the use of an element along with optional paragraphs of commentary. [22.4.4. Element Specifications]

*Module* tagdocs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space ) ( att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition ) ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select ) ) ( att.global.analytic ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) ( att.global.change ( @change ) ) ( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) ) att.typed ( @type, @subtype ) att.translatable ( @versionDate )

*Contained by*

*tagdocs:* attDef classSpec elementSpec macroSpec moduleSpec

*May contain*

*core:* p

*linking:* ab

*tagdocs:* eg egXML

*Declaration*

```
element exemplum
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.translatable.attributes,
  ( model.pLike*, ( egXML | eg ), model.pLike* )
}
```

*Example*

```
<exemplum xml:lang="en">
  <p>The <gi>name</gi> element can be used for both personal names and place
names:</p>
  <eg xml:space="preserve"><![CDATA[ <q>My dear <name type="person">Mr.
    Bennet</name>,</q> said his lady to him one day,
    <q>have you heard that <name type="place">Netherfield
    Park</name> is let at last?</q>]]></eg>
  <p>As shown above, the <att>type</att> attribute may be used to distinguish the one
from the
  other.</p>
</exemplum>
```

---

**<expan>** (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation. [3.5.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions]

*Module* core



*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) att.editLike ( @evidence, @instant)  
 (att.dimensions ( @unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging  
 ( @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source ( @source))

*Member of* model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl pc phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del desc  
 distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l  
 label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote  
 ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
 preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder  
 geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage  
 typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
 settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element expan
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

## Example

```

The address is Southmoor <choice>
  <expan>Road</expan>
  <abbr>Rd</abbr>
</choice>

```

## Example

```

<expan xml:lang="la">
  <abbr>Imp</abbr>
  <ex>erator</ex>
</expan>

```

*Note* The content of this element should usually be a complete word or phrase. The <ex> element provided by the *transcr* module may be used to mark up sequences of letters supplied within such an expansion.

---

**<experienceType>** Contains information about the type of reading experience

*Namespace* <http://readingexp.univ-lemans.fr/tei>

*Module* derived-module-tei\_readingExp

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

**@ref** Reference

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 0–1 occurrences of `data.text` separated by whitespace

*Contained by* *derived-module-tei\_readingExp*: readingExp

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```

element experienceType
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute ref { data.text }?,
  empty
}

```

**<explicit>** contains the *explicit* of a manuscript item, that is, the closing words of the text proper, exclusive of any rubric or colophon which might follow it. [10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.msExcerpt (@defective)

*Member of* model.msQuoteLike

*Contained by*

*msdescription*: msItem msItemStruct

*May contain*

*analysis*: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty*: certainty precision respons

*core*: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp*: correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries*: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures*: figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji*: g

*header*: idno

*iso-fs*: fLib fs fvLib

*linking*: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription*: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates*: addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken*: incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs*: att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit*: app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element explicit
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.msExcerpt.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example*

```
<explicit>sed libera nos a malo.</explicit>
<rubric>Hic explicit oratio qui dicitur dominica.</rubric>
<explicit type="defective">ex materia quasi et forma sibi
proporti<gap/>
</explicit>
<explicit type="reverse">saued be shulle that doome of day the at
</explicit>
```

---

**<extent>** describes the approximate size of a text stored on some carrier medium or of some other object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units. [2.2.3. Type and Extent of File 2.2. The File Description 3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 10.7.1. Object Description]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.biblPart

*Contained by*

*core:* bibl monogr

*header:* biblFull fileDesc

*msdescription:* supportDesc

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element extent { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

#### Example

```
<extent>3200 sentences</extent>
<extent>between 10 and 20 Mb</extent>
<extent>ten 3.5 inch high density diskettes</extent>
```

*Example* The <measure> element may be used to supplied normalised or machine tractable versions of the size or sizes concerned.

```
<extent>
  <measure quantity="4.2" unit="MiB">About four megabytes</measure>
  <measure quantity="245" unit="pages">245 pages of source
    material</measure>
</extent>
```

<f> (feature) represents a *feature value specification*, that is, the association of a name with a value of any of several different types. [18.2. Elementary Feature Structures and the Binary Feature Value]

*Module* iso-fs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) att.datcat ( @datcat, @valueDatcat)

*@name* a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see  
<http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>), providing a name for  
the feature.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* data.name

*@fVal* (feature value) references any element which can be used to represent the  
value of a feature.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

*Note* If this attribute is supplied as well as content, the value referenced  
is to be unified with that contained.

*Contained by:* bicond cond fLib fs if

*May contain*

*gaiji:* g

*iso-fs:* binary default fs numeric string symbol vAlt vColl vLabel vMerge vNot

*Declaration*

```

element f
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datcat.attributes,
  attribute name { data.name },
  attribute fVal { data.pointer }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.featureVal )*
}

```

*Schematron* <s:rule context="tei:fVal"> <s:assert test="not(tei:\* and text)"> A feature value cannot contain both text and element content</s:assert></s:rule>

<s:rule context="tei:fVal"> <s:report test="count(tei:\*)>1"> A feature value can contain only one child element</s:report></s:rule>

*Example*

```

<f name="gender">
  <symbol value="feminine"/>
</f>

```

*Example*

```

<fs>
  <f name="voice">active</f>
  <f name="tense">SimPre</f>
</fs>

```

*Note* If the element is empty then a value must be supplied for the *fVal* attribute. The content of <f> may also be textual, with the assumption that the data type of the feature value is determined by the schema—this is the approach used in many language-technology-oriented projects and recommendations.

---

**<fDecl>** (feature declaration) declares a single feature, specifying its name, organization, range of allowed values, and optionally its default value. [18.11. Feature System Declaration]

*Module* iso-fs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change)) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))

**@name** a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>), indicating the name of the feature being declared; matches the *name* attribute of <f> elements in the text.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* data.name

**@optional** indicates whether or not the value of this feature may be present.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.truthValue

*Default* true

*Note* If a feature is marked as optional, it is possible for it to be omitted from a feature structure. If an obligatory feature is omitted, then it is understood to have a default value, either explicitly declared, or, if no default is supplied, the special value any. If an optional feature is omitted, then it is understood to be missing and any possible value (including the default) is ignored.

*Contained by:* fsDecl

*May contain*

*iso-fs:* fDescr vDefault vRange

*Declaration*

```
element fDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute name { data.name },
  attribute optional { data.truthValue }?,
  ( fDescr?, vRange, vDefault? )
}
```

*Example*

```
<fDecl name="INV">
  <fDescr>inverted sentence</fDescr>
  <vRange>
    <vAlt>
      <binary value="true"/>
      <binary value="false"/>
    </vAlt>
  </vRange>
  <vDefault>
    <binary value="false"/>
  </vDefault>
</fDecl>
```

**<fDescr>** (feature description (in FSD)) describes in prose what is represented by the feature being declared and its values. [18.11. Feature System Declaration]

*Module* iso-fs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space ) (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change )) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))

*Contained by*

*iso-fs:* fDecl

*May contain*

*core:* abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref rs said soCalled stage term time title

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* table

*header:* biblFull idno

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specGrp specGrpRef tag val

*textcrit:* listApp listWit

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* am ex subst

*Declaration*

`element fDescr { att.global.attributes, macro.limitedContent }`

*Example*

```
<fDecl name="INV">
  <fDescr>inverted sentence</fDescr>
  <vRange>
    <vAlt>
      <binary value="true"/>
      <binary value="false"/>
    </vAlt>
  </vRange>
  <vDefault>
    <binary value="false"/>
  </vDefault>
</fDecl>
```

*Note* May contain character data, phrase-level elements, and inter-level elements.

---

**<fLib>** (feature library) assembles a library of feature elements. [18.4. Feature Libraries and Feature-Value Libraries]

*Module* iso-fs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.global.meta

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del  
distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint  
item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q  
quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang  
time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose



*derived-module-tei\_readingExp*: readingExpRef  
*dictionaries*: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom  
hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg  
xr  
*drama*: actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue  
role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view  
*figures*: cell figure table  
*header*: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote  
language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote  
*linking*: ab seg  
*msdescription*: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance  
rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates*: addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence  
roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*nets*: graph  
*spoken*: u writing  
*tagdocs*: eg valDesc  
*textcrit*: app lem rdg wit witDetail  
*textstructure*: argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer  
*transcr*: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
surfaceGrp surplus zone  
*verse*: metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*iso-fs*: f  
*Declaration*

```
element fLib { att.global.attributes, f+ }
```

### Example

```

<fLib n="agreement features">
  <f name="person" xml:id="pers1">
    <symbol value="first"/>
  </f>
  <f name="person" xml:id="pers2">
    <symbol value="second"/>
  </f>
<!-- ... -->
  <f name="number" xml:id="nums">
    <symbol value="singular"/>
  </f>
  <f name="number" xml:id="nump">
    <symbol value="plural"/>
  </f>
<!-- ... -->
</fLib>

```

*Note* The global *n* attribute may be used to supply an informal name to categorize the library's contents.

---

**<facsimile>** contains a representation of some written source in the form of a set of images rather than as transcribed or encoded text. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles]

*Module* transcr

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) att.declaring ( @decls )

*Member of* model.resourceLike

*Contained by*

*core:* teiCorpus

*textstructure:* TEI

*May contain*

*core:* binaryObject graphic media

*figures:* formula

*textstructure:* back front

*transcr:* surface surfaceGrp

*Declaration*

```
element facsimile
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  ( front?, ( model.graphicLike | surface | surfaceGrp )+, back? )
}
```

*Example*

```
<facsimile>
  <graphic url="page1.png"/>
  <surface>
    <graphic url="page2-highRes.png"/>
    <graphic url="page2-lowRes.png"/>
  </surface>
  <graphic url="page3.png"/>
  <graphic url="page4.png"/>
</facsimile>
```

*Example*

```
<facsimile>
  <surface lrx="200" lry="300" ulx="0" uly="0">
    <graphic url="Bovelles-49r.png"/>
  </surface>
</facsimile>
```

---

**<factuality>** describes the extent to which the text may be regarded as imaginative or non-imaginative, that is, as describing a fictional or a non-fictional world. [15.2.1. The Text Description]

*Module* corpus

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))

**@type** categorizes the factuality of the text.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Legal values are:* **fiction** the text is to be regarded as entirely  
 imaginative

**fact** the text is to be regarded as entirely informative or factual

**mixed** the text contains a mixture of fact and fiction

**inapplicable** the fiction/fact distinction is not regarded as helpful  
 or appropriate to this text

*Member of* model.textDescPart

*Contained by*

*corpus:* textDesc

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index  
 lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled  
 term time title

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident tag val

*textcrit:* witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst  
 substJoin

*Declaration*

```

element factuality
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { "fiction" | "fact" | "mixed" | "inapplicable" }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

*Example*

```
<factuality type="fiction"/>
```

*Example*

```
<factuality type="mixed">contains a mixture of gossip and  
speculation about real people and events</factuality>
```

*Note* Usually empty, unless some further clarification of the type attribute is needed, in which case it may contain running prose. For many literary texts, a simple binary opposition between ‘fiction’ and ‘fact’ is naïve in the extreme; this parameter is not intended for purposes of subtle literary analysis, but as a simple means of characterizing the claimed fictiveness of a given text. No claim is made that works characterized as ‘fact’ are in any sense ‘true’.

---

**<faith>** specifies the faith, religion, or belief set of a person. [13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source)) att.dataable (@calendar, @period) (att.dataable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dataable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.dataable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)

*Member of* model.persStateLike

*Contained by*

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* addressee listener reader sender

*namesdates:* person personGrp

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo

geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element faith
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

*Example*

```
<faith>protestant</faith>
```

*Example*

```
<faith ref="http://dbpedia.org/page/Manichaeism">Manichaeism</faith>
```

**<figDesc>** (description of figure) contains a brief prose description of the appearance or content of a graphic figure, for use when documenting an image without displaying it. [14.4. Specific Elements for Graphic Images]

*Module figures*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))

*Contained by*

*figures:* figure

*May contain*

*core:* abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign  
 gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref  
 rs said soCalled stage term time title

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* table

*header:* biblFull idno

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink

offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
 surname terrain trait  
*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
 macroSpec moduleSpec specGrp specGrpRef tag val  
*textcrit:* listApp listWit  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* am ex subst  
*Declaration*

```
element figDesc { att.global.attributes, macro.limitedContent }
```

*Example*

```
<figure>
  <graphic url="emblem1.png"/>
  <head>Emblemi d'Amore</head>
  <figDesc>A pair of naked winged cupids, each holding a
    flaming torch, in a rural setting.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

*Note* This element is intended for use as an alternative to the content of its parent  
 <figure> element ; for example, to display when the image is required but the  
 equipment in use cannot display graphic images. It may also be used for indexing or  
 documentary purposes.

---

**<figure>** groups elements representing or containing graphic information such as an  
 illustration, formula, or figure. [14.4. Specific Elements for Graphic Images]

*Module* figures

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.placement (@place) att.typed (@type,  
 @subtype)

*Member of* model.global

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del  
 distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint  
 item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q  
 quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang  
 time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
 preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom  
 hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg  
 xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue  
 role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*gaiji*: char glyph  
*header*: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote  
 language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote  
*linking*: ab seg  
*msdescription*: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance  
 rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates*: addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence  
 roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*nets*: graph  
*spoken*: u writing  
*tagdocs*: eg valDesc  
*textcrit*: app lem rdg wit witDetail  
*textstructure*: argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
 front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer  
*transcr*: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
 surfaceGrp surplus zone  
*verse*: metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis*: interp interpGrp span spanGrp  
*certainty*: certainty precision respons  
*core*: bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb cit desc gap gb graphic head index l label lb lg list  
 listBibl media meeting milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp*: correspDesc textread  
*dictionaries*: entry entryFree superEntry  
*drama*: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view  
*figures*: figDesc figure formula notatedMusic table  
*header*: biblFull  
*iso-fs*: fLib fs fvLib  
*linking*: ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  
*msdescription*: msDesc  
*namesdates*: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace  
*nets*: eTree forest graph listForest tree  
*spoken*: incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing  
*tagdocs*: classSpec constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec listRef macroSpec moduleSpec  
 schemaSpec specGrp specGrpRef  
*textcrit*: listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure*: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText  
 postscript salute signed trailer  
*transcr*: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin  
*Declaration*

```

element figure
{

```

```
    att.global.attributes,  
    att.placement.attributes,  
    att.typed.attributes,  
    (  
        model.headLike      | model.common      | figDesc      | model.graphicLike      | model.glo
```

*Example*

```
<figure>  
  <head>The View from the Bridge</head>  
  <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the foreground,  
  and a  
    series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>  
  <graphic scale="0.5"  
    url="http://www.example.org/fig1.png"/>  
</figure>
```

---

**<fileDesc>** (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file. [2.2. The File Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Contained by*

*header:* teiHeader

*May contain*

*header:* editionStmt extent notesStmt publicationStmt seriesStmt sourceDesc titleStmt

*Declaration*

```
element fileDesc  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  (  
    (  
      titleStmt,  
      editionStmt?,  
      extent?,  
      publicationStmt,  
      seriesStmt?,  
      notesStmt?  
    ),  
    sourceDesc+  
  )  
}
```

*Example*

```
<fileDesc>  
  <titleStmt>  
    <title>The shortest possible TEI document</title>  
  </titleStmt>  
  <publicationStmt>  
    <p>Distributed as part of TEI P5</p>  
  </publicationStmt>
```



```

<sourceDesc>
<p>No print source exists: this is an original digital text</p>
</sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>

```

*Note* The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived.

<filiation> contains information concerning the manuscript's *filiation*, i.e. its relationship to other surviving manuscripts of the same text, its *protographs*, *antigraphs* and *apographs*. [10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.msItemPart

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* msItem

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

## 1 ELEMENTS

---

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element filiation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}
```

*Example*

```
<msContents>
  <msItem>
    <title>Beljakovski sbornik</title>
    <filiation type="protograph">Bulgarian</filiation>
    <filiation type="antigraph">Middle Bulgarian</filiation>
    <filiation type="apograph">
      <ref target="#DN17">Dujchev N 17</ref>
    </filiation>
  </msItem>
</msContents>
<!-- ... -->
<msDesc xml:id="DN17">
  <msIdentifier>
    <settlement>Faraway</settlement>
  </msIdentifier>
<!-- ... -->
</msDesc>
```

In this example, the reference to ‘Dujchev N17’ includes a link to some other manuscript description which has the identifier **DN17**.

*Example*

```
<msItem>
  <title>Guan-ben</title>
  <filiation>
    <p>The "Guan-ben" was widely current among mathematicians in the
      Qing dynasty, and "Zhao Qimei version" was also read. It is
      therefore difficult to know the correct filiation path to follow.
      The study of this era is much indebted to Li Di. We explain the
      outline of his conclusion here. Kong Guangsen
      (1752-1786)(17) was from the same town as Dai Zhen, so he obtained
      "Guan-ben" from him and studied it(18). Li Huang (d. 1811)
      (19) took part in editing Si Ku Quan Shu, so he must have had
      "Guan-ben". Then Zhang Dunren (1754-1834) obtained this version,
      and studied "Da Yan Zong Shu Shu" (The General Dayan
      Computation). He wrote Jiu Yi Suan Shu (Mathematics
      Searching for One, 1803) based on this version of Shu Xue Jiu
      Zhang (20).</p>
    <p>One of the most important persons in restoring our knowledge
      concerning the filiation of these books was Li Rui (1768(21)
      -1817)(see his biography). ... only two volumes remain of this
      manuscript, as far as chapter 6 (chapter 3 part 2) p.13, that is,
      question 2 of "Huan Tian San Ji" (square of three loops),
      which later has been lost.</p>
  </filiation>
```

```
</msItem>
<!--http://www2.nkfust.edu.tw/~jochi/ed1.htm-->
```

**<finalRubric>** contains the string of words that denotes the end of a text division, often with an assertion as to its author and title, usually set off from the text itself by red ink, by a different size or type of script, or by some other such visual device. [10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.msQuoteLike

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* msItem msItemStruct

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element finalRubric
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example*

```
<finalRubric>Explicit le romans de la Rose ou l'art
d'amours est toute enclose.</finalRubric>
<finalRubric>ok lúkv ver þar Brennu-Níals savgv</finalRubric>
```

---

**<floatingText>** contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, which interrupts the text containing it at any point and after which the surrounding text resumes. [4.3.2. Floating Texts]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.qLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

*spoken:* writing

*textcrit:* lem rdg witness

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* cb gap gb index lb milestone note pb

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*textcrit:* witDetail

*textstructure:* back body front group

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```

element floatingText
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( front, model.global* )?,
    ( body | group ),
    model.global*,
    ( back, model.global* )?
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<body>
  <div type="scene">
    <sp>
      <p>Hush, the players begin...</p>
    </sp>
    <floatingText type="pwp">
      <body>
        <div type="act">
          <sp>
            <l>In Athens our tale takes place ....</l>
          </sp>
        <!-- ... rest of nested act here -->
        </div>
      </body>
    </floatingText>
    <sp>
      <p>Now that the play is finished ...</p>
    </sp>
  </div>
</body>

```

*Note* A floating text has the same content as any other and may thus be interrupted by another floating text, or contain a group of tessellated texts.

<floruit> contains information about a person's period of activity. [13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space ) ( att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition ) ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select ) ) ( att.global.analytic ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) ( att.global.change ( @change ) ) ( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) ) att.dateable ( @calendar, @period ) ( att.dateable.w3c ( @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to ) ) ( att.dateable.iso ( @when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso ) ) ( att.dateable.custom ( @when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod ) ) att.editLike ( @evidence, @instant ) ( att.dimensions

(@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source))

*Member of* model.persStateLike

*Contained by*

*namesdates:* person personGrp

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element floruit
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example*

```
<floruit notAfter="1100" notBefore="1066"/>
```

---

**<foliation>** describes the numbering system or systems used to count the leaves or pages in a codex. [10.7.1.4. Foliation]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic

(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* supportDesc

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
 distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
 listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb  
 ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
 offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
 surname terrain trait

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
 macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element foliation { att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara }
```

*Example*

```
<foliation>Contemporary foliation in red  
roman numerals in the centre  
of the outer margin.</foliation>
```

<foreign> identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text. [3.3.2.1. Foreign Words or Expressions]

*Module core*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.emphLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct  
editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label  
measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref  
reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder  
geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage  
typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar



*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element foreign { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

*Example*

This is  
heathen Greek to you still? Your <foreign xml:lang="la">lapis  
philosophicus</foreign>?

*Note* The global *xml:lang* attribute should be supplied for this element to identify the language of the word or phrase marked. As elsewhere, its value should be a language tag as defined in 6.1. Language Identification. This element is intended for use only where no other element is available to mark the phrase or words concerned. The global *xml:lang* attribute should be used in preference to this element where it is intended to mark the language of the whole of some text element. The <distinct> element may be used to identify phrases belonging to sublanguages or registers not generally regarded as true languages.

<forename> contains a forename, given or baptismal name. [13.2.1. Personal Names]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) att.personal ( @full, @sort) (att.naming  
( @role, @nymRef) (att.canonical ( @key, @ref)) ) att.typed ( @type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.persNamePart

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc  
distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l  
label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote  
ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition  
extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote  
sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
occupation offset org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element forename
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

*Example*

```
<persName>
<roleName>Ex-President</roleName>
<forename>George</forename>
<surname>Bush</surname>
</persName>

```

**<forest>** provides for groups of rooted trees. [19.3. Another Tree Notation]

*Module* nets

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.divPart

*Contained by*

*core:* item note q quote said stage

*drama:* castList epilogue performance prologue set view

*figures:* cell figure

*header:* change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
support surrogates

*nets:* listForest

*tagdocs:* specGrp

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph postscript

*transcr:* metamark

*May contain*

*nets:* eTree tree triangle

*Declaration*

```
element forest
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( tree | eTree | triangle )+
}

```

*Example*

```

<forest n="ex5" type="derivation-syntactic">
  <eTree n="Stage 1" xml:id="s1SBAR">
    <label>S'</label>
    <eTree xml:id="s1S">
      <label>S</label>
      <eTree xml:id="s1NP1">
        <label>NP</label>
        <eLeaf>
          <label>you</label>
        </eLeaf>
      </eTree>
    <eTree xml:id="s1VP">
      <label>VP</label>
      <eTree xml:id="s1V">
        <label>V</label>
        <eLeaf>
          <label>do</label>
        </eLeaf>
      </eTree>
    </eTree>
  </eTree>
  <eTree corresp="#s1SBAR" n="Stage 2"
    xml:id="s2SBAR">
    <label>S'</label>
    <eTree corresp="#s1S" xml:id="s2S">
      <label>S</label>
      <eTree copyOf="#s1NP1" xml:id="s2NP1">
        <label>NP</label>
      </eTree>
      <eTree corresp="#s1VP" xml:id="s2VP">
        <label>VP</label>
        <eTree copyOf="#s1V" xml:id="s2V">
          <label>V</label>
        </eTree>
      <eTree corresp="#s1NP2" xml:id="s2NP2">
        <label>NP</label>
        <eLeaf corresp="#s1WH">
          <label>t</label>
        </eLeaf>
      </eTree>
    </eTree>
  </eTree>
</forest>

```

*Note* One or more trees, embedding trees, or underspecified embedding trees (triangles).

---

**<form>** (form information group) groups all the information on the written and spoken forms of one headword. [9.3.1. Information on Written and Spoken Forms]

*Module* dictionaries

*Attributes* Attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (*att.global.rendition* (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (*att.global.linking* (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*)) (*att.global.change* (*@change*)) (*att.global.responsibility* (*@cert*, *@resp*)) *att.lexicographic* (*@expand*, *@norm*, *@split*, *@value*, *@orig*, *@location*, *@mergedIn*, *@opt*) (*att.datcat* (*@datcat*, *@valueDatcat*))

**@type** classifies form as simple, compound, etc.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Suggested values include:* **simple** single free lexical item

**lemma** the headword itself

**variant** a variant form

**compound** word formed from simple lexical items

**derivative** word derived from headword

**inflected** word in other than usual dictionary form

**phrase** multiple-word lexical item

*Member of* model.entryPart model.entryPart.top model.formPart

*Contained by*

*core:* cit

*dictionaries:* dictScrap entry entryFree form hom re sense superEntry

*namesdates:* nym

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl  
measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote  
ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* case colloc form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number oRef  
oVar orth pRef pVar per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element form
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  attribute type
  {
    "simple"
    | "lemma"
    | "variant"
    | "compound"
    | "derivative"
    | "inflected"
    | "phrase"
    | xsd:Name
  }?,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter      | model.formPart      | model.globa
  )
}
```

*Example*

```
<form>
  <orth>zaptié</orth>
  <orth>zaptyé</orth>
</form>
```

(from TLFi)

---

**<formula>** contains a mathematical or other formula. [14.2. Formulæ and Mathematical Expressions]

*Module figures*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

**@notation** names the notation used for the content of the element.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Member of* model.graphicLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email  
emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure  
mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic  
soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figure formula table

*gaiji:* char glyph

*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit  
forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset  
orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex  
socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage facsimile fw metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
surplus zone

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*core:* binaryObject graphic hi media

*figures:* formula

*Declaration*

```

element formula
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute notation { data.enumerated }?,
  ( text | model.graphicLike | model.hiLike ) *
}

```

*Example*

```
<formula notation="tex">$E=mc^2$</formula>
```

*Example*

```
<formula notation="none">E=mc<hi rend="sup">2</hi>
</formula>
```

*Example*

```

<formula notation="mathml">
  <m:math>
    <m:mi>E</m:mi>
    <m:mo>=</m:mo>
    <m:mi>m</m:mi>
    <m:msup>
      <m:mrow>
        <m:mi>c</m:mi>
      </m:mrow>
      <m:mrow>
        <m:mn>2</m:mn>
      </m:mrow>
    </m:msup>
  </m:math>
</formula>

```

**<front>** (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body. [4.6. Title Pages 4. Default Text Structure]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) att.declaring ( @decls )

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* floatingText text

*transcr:* facsimile

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* cb divGen gap gb head index lb meeting milestone note p pb

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc

*drama:* castList epilogue performance prologue set

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*textcrit:* witDetail

*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline div div1 docAuthor docDate docEdition  
 docImprint docTitle epigraph postscript salute signed titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```
element front
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    ( ( model.frontPart | model.pLike | model.pLike.front | model.global )* ),
    (
      (
        (
          model.div1Like,
          ( model.div1Like | model.frontPart | model.global )*
        )
        | (
          model.divLike,
          ( model.divLike | model.frontPart | model.global )*
        )
      ),
      ( ( ( model.divBottom ), ( model.divBottom | model.global )* )? )
    )?
  )
}
```

*Example*

```
<front>
<epigraph>
```



```

<quote>Nam Sibyllam quidem Cumis ego ipse oculis meis
vidi in ampulla pendere, et cum illi pueri dicerent:
<q xml:lang="gr">Σίβυλλα τί θέλεις</q>; respondebat
illa: <q xml:lang="gr">ἀποθανεῖν θέλω.</q>
</quote>
</epigraph>
<div type="dedication">
<p>For Ezra Pound <q xml:lang="it">il miglior fabbro.</q>
</p>
</div>
</front>

```

*Example*

```

<front>
<div type="dedication">
<p>To our three selves</p>
</div>
<div type="preface">
<head>Author's Note</head>
<p>All the characters in this book are purely imaginary, and if the
author has used names that may suggest a reference to living persons
she has done so inadvertently.
...</p>
</div>
</front>

```

*Note* Because cultural conventions differ as to which elements are grouped as front matter and which as back matter, the content models for the <front> and <back> elements are identical.

**<fs>** (feature structure) represents a *feature structure*, that is, a collection of feature-value pairs organized as a structural unit. [18.2. Elementary Feature Structures and the Binary Feature Value]

*Module* iso-fs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)

**@type** specifies the type of the feature structure.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

**@feats** (features) references the feature-value specifications making up this feature structure.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of **data.pointer** separated by whitespace

*Note* May be used either instead of having features as content, or in addition. In the latter case, the features referenced and contained are unified.

*Member of* model.featureVal.complex model.global.meta

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del

distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint  
item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q  
quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang  
time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom  
hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg  
xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue  
role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote  
language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*iso-fs:* bicond cond f fvLib if vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel vMerge vNot vRange

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance  
rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence  
roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
surfaceGrp surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*iso-fs:* f

*Declaration*

```
element fs
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datcat.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute feats { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  f*
}
```

*Example*

```
<fs type="agreement_structure">
  <f name="person">
    <symbol value="third"/>
  </f>
  <f name="number">
    <symbol value="singular"/>
  </f>
</fs>
```

**<fsConstraints>** (feature-structure constraints) specifies constraints on the content of valid feature structures. [18.11. Feature System Declaration]

*Module* iso-fs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))

*Contained by*

*iso-fs:* fsDecl

*May contain*

*iso-fs:* bicond cond

*Declaration*

```
element fsConstraints { att.global.attributes, ( cond | bicond )* }
```

*Example*

```
<fsConstraints>
  <cond>
    <fs>
<!-- .....>
    </fs>
    <then/>
    <fs>
<!-- ... -->
    </fs>
  </cond>
</fsConstraints>
```

*Note* May contain a series of conditional or biconditional elements.

**<fsDecl>** (feature structure declaration) declares one type of feature structure. [18.11. Feature System Declaration]

*Module* iso-fs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))

**@type** gives a name for the type of feature structure being declared.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

**@baseTypes** gives the name of one or more typed feature structures from which this type inherits feature specifications and constraints; if this type includes a feature specification with the same name as that of any of those specified by this attribute, or if more than one specification of the same name is inherited, then the set of possible values is defined by unification. Similarly, the set of constraints applicable is derived by combining those specified explicitly within this element with those implied by the *baseTypes* attribute. When no *baseTypes* attribute is specified, no feature specification or constraint is inherited.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.name` separated by whitespace

*Note* Inheritance is defined here as a monotonous relation. The process of combining constraints may result in a contradiction, for example if two specifications for the same feature specify disjoint ranges of values, and at least one such specification is mandatory. In such a case, there is no valid representative for the type being defined.

*Contained by:* fsDecl

*May contain*

*iso-fs:* fDecl fsConstraints fsDescr

*Declaration*

```
element fsDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated },
  attribute baseTypes { list { data.name+ } }?,
  ( fsDescr?, fDecl+, fsConstraints? )
}
```

*Example*

```
<fsDecl type="SomeName">
  <fsDescr>Describes what this type of fs represents</fsDescr>
  <fDecl name="featureOne">
    <!-- The declaration for featureOne -->
    <vRange>
    <!-- the range of possible values for this feature -->
    </vRange>
  </fDecl>
  <fDecl name="featureTwo">
    <!-- The declaration for featureTwo -->
    <vRange>
    <!-- the range of possible values for this feature -->
    </vRange>
  </fDecl>
  <fsConstraints>
    <!-- Any additional constraints for the feature structure -->
  </fsConstraints>
</fsDecl>
```

---

**<fsDescr>** (feature system description (in FSD)) describes in prose what is represented by the type of feature structure declared in the enclosing fsDecl. [18.11. Feature System Declaration]

*Module* iso-fs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Contained by*

*iso-fs:* fsDecl

*May contain*

*core:* abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign  
 gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref  
 rs said soCalled stage term time title

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* table

*header:* biblFull idno

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
 offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
 surname terrain trait

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
 macroSpec moduleSpec specGrp specGrpRef tag val

*textcrit:* listApp listWit

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* am ex subst

*Declaration*

```
element fsDescr { att.global.attributes, macro.limitedContent }
```

*Example*

```
<fsDecl type="Agreement">
  <fsDescr>This type of feature structure encodes the features
    for subject-verb agreement in English</fsDescr>
  <fDecl name="PERS">
    <fDescr>person (first, second, or third)</fDescr>
    <vRange>
      <vAlt>
        <symbol value="first"/>
        <symbol value="second"/>
        <symbol value="third"/>
      </vAlt>
    </vRange>
  </fDecl>
  <fDecl name="NUM">
    <fDescr>number (singular or plural)</fDescr>
    <vRange>
      <vAlt>
        <symbol value="singular"/>
        <symbol value="plural"/>
      </vAlt>
    </vRange>
  </fDecl>
</fsDecl>
```

```
</fDecl>
</fsDecl>
```

*Note* May contain character data, phrase-level elements, and inter-level elements.

---

**<fsdDecl>** (feature system declaration) provides a feature system declaration comprising one or more feature structure declarations or feature structure declaration links. [18.11. Feature System Declaration]

*Module* iso-fs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.encodingDescPart model.resourceLike

*Contained by*

*core:* teiCorpus

*header:* encodingDesc

*textstructure:* TEI

*May contain*

*iso-fs:* fsDecl fsdLink

*Declaration*

```
element fsdDecl { att.global.attributes, ( fsDecl | fsdLink )+ }
```

*Example*

```
<fsdDecl>
  <fsDecl type="GPSG">
    <fDecl name="GPSG_feat1" xml:id="GPSG-1">
      <vRange>
        <vAlt>
          <symbol value="red"/>
          <symbol value="blue"/>
          <symbol value="green"/>
        </vAlt>
      </vRange>
    </fDecl>
  <!--other feature declarations for GPSG here ... -->
</fsDecl>
<fsdLink target="http://www.example.com/fsdLib.xml#LX123"
  type="subentry"/>
</fsdDecl>
```

**<fsdLink/>** (feature structure declaration link) associates the name of a typed feature structure with a feature structure declaration for it. [18.11. Feature System Declaration]

*Module* iso-fs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic

(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

**@type** identifies the type of feature structure to be documented; this will be the value of the *type* attribute on at least one feature structure.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

**@target** supplies a pointer to a feature structure declaration (<fsDecl>) element within the current document or elsewhere.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* **data.pointer**

*Contained by:* fsDecl

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```

element fsdLink
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated },
  attribute target { data.pointer },
  empty
}

```

*Example*

```

<fsdLink target="http://www.example.com/fsdLib.xml#L1234"
  type="subentry"/>

```

**<funder>** (funding body) specifies the name of an individual, institution, or organization responsible for the funding of a project or text. [2.2.1. The Title Statement]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)

*Member of* model.respLike

*Contained by*

*core:* bibl monogr

*header:* editionStmt titleStmt

*msdescription:* msItem

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index  
 lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled  
 term time title

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang

*figures:* figure notatedMusic  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident tag val  
*textcrit:* witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst  
 substJoin  
*Declaration*

```

element funder
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

## Example

```

<funder>The National Endowment for the Humanities, an independent federal
agency</funder>
<funder>Directorate General XIII of the Commission of the European
Communities</funder>
<funder>The Andrew W. Mellon Foundation</funder>
<funder>The Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council of Canada</funder>

```

*Note* Funders provide financial support for a project; they are distinct from *sponsors*, who provide intellectual support and authority.

---

**<fvLib>** (feature-value library) assembles a library of reusable feature value elements (including complete feature structures). [18.4. Feature Libraries and Feature-Value Libraries]

*Module* iso-fs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.global.meta

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del  
 distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint  
 item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q  
 quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang  
 time title unclear



*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
 preparedness purpose  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom  
 hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg  
 xr  
*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue  
 role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view  
*figures:* cell figure table  
*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote  
 language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance  
 rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence  
 roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*nets:* graph  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail  
*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
 front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
 surfaceGrp surplus zone  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*iso-fs:* binary default fs numeric string symbol vAlt vColl vLabel vMerge vNot  
*Declaration*

```
element fvLib { att.global.attributes, model.featureVal* }
```

### Example

```

<fvLib n="symbolic values">
  <symbol value="first" xml:id="sfirst"/>
  <symbol value="second" xml:id="ssecond"/>
<!-- ... -->
  <symbol value="singular" xml:id="ssing"/>
  <symbol value="plural" xml:id="splur"/>
<!-- ... -->
</fvLib>

```

*Note* A feature value library may include any number of values of any kind, including multiple occurrences of identical values such as **<binary value="true"/>** or **default**. The only thing guaranteed unique in a feature value library is the set of labels used to identify the values.

**<fw>** (forme work) contains a running head (e.g. a header, footer), catchword, or similar material appearing on the current page. [11.6. Headers, Footers, and Similar Matter]

*Module* transcr

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*)  
(att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic  
(*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))  
(att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.placement (*@place*)

**@type** classifies the material encoded according to some useful typology.

*Status* Recommended

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Sample values include:* **header** a running title at the top of the page

**footer** a running title at the bottom of the page

**pageNum** (page number) a page number or foliation symbol

**lineNum** (line number) a line number, either of prose or poetry

**sig** (signature) a signature or gathering symbol

**catch** (catchword) a catch-word

*Member of* model.milestoneLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del  
distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint  
item l label lg list listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace  
publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term  
textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom  
hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg  
xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue  
role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote  
language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance  
rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
occupation offset org orgName persName person personGrp placeName region  
residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail  
*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc subst supplied surface  
surfaceGrp surplus zone  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element fw
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

### Example

```
<fw place="bottom" type="sig">C3</fw>
```

*Note* Where running heads are consistent throughout a chapter or section, it is usually more convenient to relate them to the chapter or section, e.g. by use of the *rend* attribute. The <fw> element is intended for cases where the running head changes from page to page, or where details of page layout and the internal structure of the running heads are of paramount importance.

**<g>** (character or glyph) represents a glyph, or a non-standard character. [5. Characters, Glyphs, and Writing Modes]

*Module* gaiji

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

*@ref* points to a description of the character or glyph intended.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

*Member of* model.gLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* c cl interp m pc phr s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure measureGrp mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said series sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number oVar orth pVar per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell

*gaiji:* mapping value

*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote idno licence scriptNote typeNote

*iso-fs:* f string

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation collection colophon condition custEvent decoNote depth dim explicit filiation finalRubric foliation height heraldry incipit institution layout locus material msName musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance repository rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg memberOf

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* am damage ex fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain* Character data only

*Declaration*

```

element g
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute ref { data.pointer }?,
  text
}

```

*Example*

```
<g ref="#ctlig">ct</g>
```

This example points to a <glyph> element with the identifier **ctlig** like the following:

```

<glyph xml:id="ctlig">
<!-- here we describe the particular ct-ligature intended -->
</glyph>

```

*Example*

```
<g ref="#per-glyph">per</g>
```

The medieval brevisgraph *per* could similarly be considered as an individual glyph, defined in a <glyph> element with the identifier **per** like the following:

```

<glyph xml:id="per-glyph">
<!-- ... -->
</glyph>

```

*Note* The name **g** is short for *gaiji*, which is the Japanese term for a non-standardized character or glyph.

**<gap>** indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible. [3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

*Module core*

*Attributes* Attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (*att.global.rendition* (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (*att.global.linking* (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*)) (*att.global.change* (*@change*)) (*att.global.responsibility* (*@cert*, *@resp*)) *att.duration* (*att.duration.w3c* (*@dur*)) (*att.duration.iso* (*@dur-iso*)) *att.editLike* (*@evidence*, *@instant*) (*att.dimensions* (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*) (*att.ranging* (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*)) ) (*att.source* (*@source*))

**@reason** gives the reason for omission. Sample values include sampling, inaudible, irrelevant, cancelled.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of **data.word** separated by whitespace

**@hand** in the case of text omitted from the transcription because of deliberate deletion by an identifiable hand, indicates the hand which made the deletion.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.pointer**

**@agent** in the case of text omitted because of damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Sample values include:* **rubbing** damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges

**mildew** damage results from mildew on the leaf surface

**smoke** damage results from smoke

*Member of* model.global.edit

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* desc

*Declaration*

```

element gap
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.duration.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  attribute reason { list { data.word+ } }?,
  attribute hand { data.pointer }?,
  attribute agent { data.enumerated }?,
  ( model.descLike | model.certLike )*
}

```

*Example*

```

<gap quantity="4" reason="illegible"
  unit="chars"/>

```

*Example*

```

<gap quantity="1" reason="sampling"
  unit="essay"/>

```

*Example*

```

<del>
  <gap atleast="4" atMost="8"
    reason="illegible" unit="chars"/>
</del>

```

*Example*

```

<gap extent="unknown" reason="lost"
  unit="lines"/>

```

*Note* The <gap>, <unclear>, and <del> core tag elements may be closely allied in use with the <damage> and <supplied> elements, available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance. The <gap> tag simply signals the editors decision to omit or inability to transcribe a span of text. Other information, such as the interpretation that text was deliberately erased or covered, should be indicated using the relevant tags, such as <del> in the case of deliberate deletion.

<gb/> (gathering begins) marks the point in a transcribed codex at which a new gathering or quire begins. [3.10.3. Milestone Elements]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space ) ( att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition ) ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select ) ) ( att.global.analytic ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) ( att.global.change ( @change ) ) ( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) ) att.typed ( @type, @subtype ) att.spanning ( @spanTo ) att.breaking ( @break )

*Member of* model.milestoneLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del  
distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint  
item l label lg list listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace  
publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term  
textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom  
hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg  
xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue  
role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote  
language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance  
rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
occupation offset org orgName persName person personGrp placeName region  
residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc subst supplied surface  
surfaceGrp surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element gb
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.breaking.attributes,
  empty
}
```

#### Example

```
<gb n="iii"/>
<pb n="2r"/>
<!-- material from page 2 recto of gathering iii here -->
```



```
<pb n="2v"/>
<!-- material from page 2 verso of gathering iii here -->
```

*Note* By convention, <gb/> elements should appear at the start of the first page in the gathering. The global *n* attribute indicates the number or other value used to identify this gathering in a collation. The *type* attribute may be used to further characterize the gathering in any respect.

**<gen>** (gender) identifies the morphological gender of a lexical item, as given in the dictionary. [9.3.1. Information on Written and Spoken Forms]

*Module dictionaries*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

*Member of* model.morphLike

*Contained by*

*dictionaries:* dictScrap entryFree etym form gramGrp

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element gen
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

*Example*

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>pamplemousse</orth>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <pos>noun</pos>
    <gen>masculine</gen>
  </gramGrp>
</entry>
```

*Note* May contain character data and phrase-level elements. Typical content will be *masculine*, *feminine*, *neuter* etc. This element is synonymous with `<gram type="gender">`.

---

**<genName>** (generational name component) contains a name component used to distinguish otherwise similar names on the basis of the relative ages or generations of the persons named. [13.2.1. Personal Names]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming  
(@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.persNamePart

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc  
distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l  
label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote  
ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition  
 extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote  
 sponsor tagUsage typeNote  
*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
 settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

element genName {
----------------------

```
att.global.attributes,
att.personal.attributes,
att.typed.attributes,
macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example*

```
<persName>
  <forename>Charles</forename>
  <genName>II</genName>
</persName>
```

*Example*

```
<persName>
  <surname>Pitt</surname>
  <genName>the Younger</genName>
</persName>
```

---

**<genre>** Contains information about the literary genre of the text read during the reading experience

*Namespace* <http://readingexp.univ-lemans.fr/tei>*Module* derived-module-tei\_readingExp

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Contained by**derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* textread*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration* element genre { att.global.attributes, empty }

---

**<geo>** (geographical coordinates) contains any expression of a set of geographic coordinates, representing a point, line, or area on the surface of the earth in some notation. [13.3.4.1. Varieties of Location]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.declaring (@decls)

*Member of* model.measureLike*Contained by**analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure measureGrp meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
 preparedness purpose  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr  
*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view  
*figures:* cell figDesc  
*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder  
 geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage  
 typeNote  
*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink  
 nationality occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence  
 roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain* Character data only  
*Declaration*

```
element geo { att.global.attributes, att.declaring.attributes, text }
```

#### Example

```

<geoDecl datum="WGS84" xml:id="WGS">World Geodetic System</geoDecl>
<geoDecl datum="OSGB36" xml:id="OS">Ordnance Survey</geoDecl>
<!-- .... -->
<location>
  <desc>A tombstone plus six lines of
    Anglo-Saxon text, built into the west tower (on the south side
    of the archway, at 8 ft. above the ground) of the
    Church of St. Mary-le-Wigford in Lincoln.</desc>
  <geo decls="#WGS">53.226658 -0.541254</geo>
  <geo decls="#OS">SK 97481 70947</geo>
</location>

```

#### Example

```
<geo>41.687142 -74.870109</geo>
```

*Note* Uses of <geo> can be associated with a coordinate system, defined by a <geoDecl> element supplied in the TEI header, using the *decls* attribute. If no such link is made, the assumption is that the content of each <geo> element will be a pair of numbers separated by whitespace, to be interpreted as latitude followed by longitude according to the World Geodetic System.

**<geoDecl>** (geographic coordinates declaration) documents the notation and the datum used for geographic coordinates expressed as content of the **<geo>** element elsewhere within the document. [2.3.8. The Geographic Coordinates Declaration]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.declarable (*@default*)

**@datum** supplies a commonly used code name for the datum employed.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Suggested values include:* **WGS84** (World Geodetic System) a pair of numbers to be interpreted as latitude followed by longitude according to the World Geodetic System.[Default]

**MGRS** (Military Grid Reference System) the values supplied are geospatial entity object codes, based on

**OSGB36** (ordnance survey great britain) the value supplied is to be interpreted as a British National Grid Reference.

**ED50** (European Datum coordinate system) the value supplied is to be interpreted as latitude followed by longitude according to the European Datum coordinate system.

*Member of* model.encodingDescPart

*Contained by*

*header:* encodingDesc

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element geoDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  attribute datum { "WGS84" | "MGRS" | "OSGB36" | "ED50" | xsd:Name }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example*

```
<geoDecl datum="OSGB36"/>
```

**<geogFeat>** (geographical feature name) contains a common noun identifying some geographical feature contained within a geographic name, such as valley, mount, etc. [13.2.3. Place Names]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.dataable (@calendar, @period) (att.dataable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dataable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.dataable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope)) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source)) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.offsetLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc  
distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l  
label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote  
ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition  
extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote  
sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink  
nationality occupation offset org orgName persName placeName region residence  
roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```
element geogFeat
{
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
```



att.typed.attributes, macro.phraseSeq}
---

*Example*

<geogName> The <geogFeat>vale</geogFeat> of White Horse</geogName>

**<geogName>** (geographical name) identifies a name associated with some geographical feature such as Windrush Valley or Mount Sinai. [13.2.3. Place Names]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source)) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.placeNamePart

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msIdentifier musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink

nationality occupation offset org orgName persName place placeName region  
 residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element geogName
{
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

*Example*

```

<geogName>
  <geogFeat>Mount</geogFeat>
  <name>Sinai</name>
</geogName>

```

<gi> (element name) contains the name (generic identifier) of an element. [22.  
Documentation Elements 22.4.4. Element Specifications]

*Module* tagdocs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

**@scheme** supplies the name of the scheme in which this name is defined.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Sample values include:* **TEI** this element is part of the TEI  
scheme.[Default]

**DBK** (docbook) this element is part of the Docbook scheme.

**XX** (unknown) this element is part of an unknown scheme.

**Schematron** this element is from Schematron.

**HTML** this element is from the HTML scheme.

*Member of* model.phrase.xml

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor  
email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure  
meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs  
said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder  
geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage  
typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain* Character data only

*Declaration*

```

element gi
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute scheme { data.enumerated }?,
  data.name}

```

*Example*

**<p>**The **<gi>**xmlns:li</gi> element is roughly analogous to the **<gi>**item</gi> element, as is the **<gi** scheme="DBK">listItem</gi> element.**</p>**

This example shows the use of both a namespace prefix and the schema attribute as alternative ways of indicating that the gi in question is not a TEI element name: in practice only one method should be adopted.

---

**<gloss>** identifies a phrase or word used to provide a gloss or definition for some other word or phrase. [3.3.4. Terms, Glosses, Equivalents, and Descriptions 22.4.1. Description of Components]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.declaring (@decls) att.translatable (@versionDate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.cReferencing (@cRef)

*Member of* model.emphLike model.glossLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct  
editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label  
measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref  
reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc category change classCode creation distributor edition extent  
 funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor  
 tagUsage taxonomy typeNote  
*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr  
*linking:* ab joinGrp seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
 settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* attDef classSpec constraintSpec eg elementSpec macroSpec moduleSpec  
 schemaSpec valDesc valItem  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.translatable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.cReferencing.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example*

We may define `<term rend="sc" xml:id="tdpv">discoursal point of view</term>` as `<gloss target="#tdpv">the relationship, expressed through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the fiction.</gloss>`

*Note* The *target* and *cRef* attributes are mutually exclusive.

---

**<glyph>** (character glyph) provides descriptive information about a character glyph.  
[5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs]

*Module* gaiji

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Contained by*

*gaiji:* charDecl

*May contain*

*core:* binaryObject desc graphic media note

*figures:* figure formula

*gaiji:* charProp glyphName mapping

*textcrit:* witDetail

*Declaration*

```
element glyph
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    glyphName?,
    model.descLike*,
    charProp*,
    mapping*,
    figure*,
    model.graphicLike*,
    model.noteLike*
  )
}
```

*Example*

```
<glyph xml:id="rstroke">
  <glyphName>LATIN SMALL LETTER R WITH A FUNNY STROKE</glyphName>
  <charProp>
    <localName>entity</localName>
```

```

<value>rstroke</value>
</charProp>
<figure>
  <graphic url="glyph-rstroke.png"/>
</figure>
</glyph>

```

**<glyphName>** (character glyph name) contains the name of a glyph, expressed following Unicode conventions for character names. [5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs]

*Module* gaiji

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Contained by*

*gaiji:* glyph

*May contain* Character data only

*Declaration* element glyphName { att.global.attributes, text }

*Example*

```
<glyphName>CIRCLED IDEOGRAPH 4EBA</glyphName>
```

*Note* For characters of non-ideographic scripts, a name following the conventions for Unicode names should be chosen. For ideographic scripts, an *Ideographic Description Sequence* (IDS) as described in Chapter 10.1 of the Unicode Standard is recommended where possible. Projects working in similar fields are recommended to coordinate and publish their list of <glyphName>s to facilitate data exchange.

**<gram>** (grammatical information) within an entry in a dictionary or a terminological data file, contains grammatical information relating to a term, word, or form. [9.3.2. Grammatical Information]

*Module* dictionaries

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

**@type** classifies the grammatical information given according to some convenient typology—in the case of terminological information, preferably the dictionary of data element types specified in ISO 12620.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Sample values include:* **pos** (part of speech) any of the word classes to which a word may be assigned in a given language, based on form, meaning, or a combination of features, e.g. noun, verb, adjective, etc.

**gen** (gender) formal classification by which nouns and pronouns, and often accompanying modifiers, are grouped and inflected, or changed in form, so as to control certain syntactic relationships

**num** (number) grammatical number, e.g. singular, plural, dual, ...

**animate** animate or inanimate

**proper** proper noun or common noun

*Note* A much fuller list of values for the *type* attribute may be generated from the data category registry accessible from <http://www.isocat.org> and maintained by ISO technical committee 37.

*Member of* model.morphLike

*Contained by*

*dictionaries:* dictScrap entryFree etym form gramGrp

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element gram
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
```



```
attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
macro.paraContent}
```

*Example*

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>pamplemousse</orth>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <gram type="pos">noun</gram>
    <gram type="gen">masculine</gram>
  </gramGrp>
</entry>
```

**<gramGrp>** (grammatical information group) groups morpho-syntactic information about a lexical item, e.g. <pos>, <gen>, <number>, <case>, or <iType> (inflectional class). [9.3.2. Grammatical Information]

*Module dictionaries*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.entryPart model.entryPart.top model.gramPart

*Contained by*

*core:* cit

*dictionaries:* dictScrap entry entryFree form gramGrp hom re sense

*namesdates:* nym

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* case colloc gen gram gramGrp iType lang lbl mood number oRef oVar pRef pVar per pos subc tns usg

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```

element gramGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter      | model.gramPart      | model.globa
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>luire</orth>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <pos>verb</pos>
    <subc>intransitive</subc>
  </gramGrp>
</entry>

```

---

**<graph>** encodes a graph, which is a collection of nodes, and arcs which connect the nodes. [19.1. Graphs and Digraphs]

*Module* nets

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

**@type** describes the type of graph.

*Status* Recommended

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Suggested values include:* **undirected** undirected graph

**directed** directed graph

**transitionNetwork** a directed graph with distinguished initial  
and final nodes

**transducer** a transition network with up to two labels on each arc

*Note* If *type* is specified as undirected, then the distinction between the *to* and *from* attributes of the <arc> tag is neutralized. Also, the *adj* attribute, rather than the *adjFrom* and *adjTo* attributes, should be used to encode pointers to the ends of the arcs. If *type* is specified as directed (or any other value which implies directionality), then the *adjFrom* and *adjTo* attributes should be used, instead of the *adj* attribute.

**@order** states the order of the graph, i.e., the number of its nodes.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.count`

**@size** states the size of the graph, i.e., the number of its arcs.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.count`

*Member of* model.divPart

*Contained by*

*core:* item note q quote said stage

*drama:* castList epilogue performance prologue set view

*figures:* cell figure

*header:* change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote

filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary

support surrogates

*tagdocs:* specGrp

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph postscript

*transcr:* metamark

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* cb gap gb index label lb milestone note pb

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*nets:* arc node

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*textcrit:* witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```

element graph
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type
  {
    "undirected" | "directed" | "transitionNetwork" | "transducer" | xsd:Name
  }?,
  attribute order { data.count }?,
  attribute size { data.count }?,
  (
    ( label, model.global* )?,

```

```

    (
      ( ( node, model.global* )+, ( arc, model.global* )* )
      | ( ( arc, model.global* )+, ( node, model.global* )+ )
    )
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<graph order="5"
  rend="LABEL-PLACE bottom center NODE-FRAME none ARC solid
  line" size="4" type="undirected" xml:id="cug1">
  <label>Airline Connections in Southwestern USA</label>
  <node degree="2" xml:id="lax">
    <label>LAX</label>
  </node>
  <node degree="2" xml:id="lvg">
    <label>LVG</label>
  </node>
  <node degree="3" xml:id="phx">
    <label>PHX</label>
  </node>
  <node degree="1" xml:id="tus">
    <label>TUS</label>
  </node>
  <node degree="0" xml:id="cib">
    <label>CIB</label>
  </node>
  <arc from="#lax" to="#lvg"/>
  <arc from="#lax" to="#phx"/>
  <arc from="#lvg" to="#phx"/>
  <arc from="#phx" to="#tus"/>
</graph>

```

*Note* One or more nodes and zero or more arcs in any order.

---

**<graphic>** indicates the location of an inline graphic, illustration, or figure. [3.9. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.media (@width, @height, @scale)  
 (att.internetMedia (@mimeType)) att.resourced (@url) att.declaring (@decls)

*Member of* model.graphicLike model.titlepagePart

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email  
 emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure  
 mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic  
 soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view  
*figures:* cell figure formula notatedMusic table  
*gaiji:* char glyph  
*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance  
 rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit  
 forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset  
 orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex  
 socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePage titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage facsimile fw metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
 surplus zone  
*verse:* rhyme  
*May contain*  
*core:* desc  
*Declaration*

```

element graphic
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.media.attributes,
  att.resourced.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  model.descLike*
}

```

#### Example

```

<figure>
  <graphic url="fig1.png"/>
  <head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head>
  <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the foreground,
  and a
    series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
</figure>

```

*Note* The *contentType* attribute should be used to supply the MIME media type of the image specified by the *url* attribute.

**<group>** contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc. [4. Default Text Structure 4.3.1. Grouped Texts 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) att.declaring ( @decls) att.typed ( @type,  
 @subtype)

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* floatingText group text

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* cb gap gb head index lb meeting milestone note pb

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*textcrit:* witDetail

*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph group opener  
 postscript salute signed text trailer

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```

element group
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    ( ( text | group ), ( text | group | model.global )* ),
    model.divBottom*
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<text>
<!-- Section on Alexander Pope starts -->
  <front>
<!-- biographical notice by editor -->
  </front>
  <group>
    <text>
<!-- first poem -->
    </text>
    <text>
<!-- second poem -->
    </text>
  </group>
</text>
<!-- end of Pope section-->

```

**<handDesc>** (description of hands) contains a description of all the different kinds of writing used in a manuscript. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

**@hands** specifies the number of distinct hands identified within the manuscript

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.count**

*Member of* model.physDescPart

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* physDesc

*May contain*

*core:* p

*header:* handNote

*linking:* ab

*msdescription:* summary

*Declaration*

```
element handDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute hands { data.count }?,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( summary?, handNote+ ) )
}
```

*Example*

```
<handDesc>
  <handNote scope="major">Written throughout in <term>angelicana
  formata</term>.</handNote>
</handDesc>
```

*Example*

```
<handDesc hands="2">
  <p>The manuscript is written in two contemporary hands, otherwise
  unknown, but clearly those of practised scribes. Hand I writes
  ff. 1r-22v and hand II ff. 23 and 24. Some scholars, notably
  Verner Dahlerup and Hreinn Benediktsson, have argued for a third hand
  on f. 24, but the evidence for this is insubstantial.</p>
</handDesc>
```

**<handNote>** (note on hand) describes a particular style or hand distinguished within a manuscript. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]

*Module* header

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.handFeatures (@scribe, @scribeRef, @script, @scriptRef, @medium, @scope)

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* handDesc

*transcr:* handNotes

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb  
ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element handNote
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.handFeatures.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

*Example*

```
<handNote scope="sole">
  <p>Written in insular
    phase II half-uncial with interlinear Old English gloss in an Anglo-Saxon pointed
    minuscule.</p>
</handNote>

```



**<handNotes>** contains one or more <handNote> elements documenting the different hands identified within the source texts. [11.3.2.1. Document Hands]

*Module* transcr

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.profileDescPart

*Contained by*

*header:* profileDesc

*May contain*

*header:* handNote

*Declaration*

```
element handNotes { att.global.attributes, handNote+ }
```

*Example*

```
<handNotes>
  <handNote medium="brown-ink"
    script="copperplate" xml:id="H1">Carefully written with regular
descenders</handNote>
  <handNote medium="pencil" script="print"
    xml:id="H2">Unschool ed scrawl</handNote>
</handNotes>
```

**<handShift/>** marks the beginning of a sequence of text written in a new hand, or the beginning of a scribal stint. [11.3.2.1. Document Hands]

*Module* transcr

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.handFeatures (@scribe, @scribeRef, @script, @scriptRef, @medium, @scope) att.source (@source)

**@new** indicates a <handNote> element describing the hand concerned.

*Status* Recommended

*Datatype* **data.pointer**

*Note* This attribute serves the same function as the *hand* attribute provided for those elements which are members of the att.transcriptional class. It may be renamed at a subsequent major release.

*Member of* model.pPart.transcriptional

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl pc phr s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp*: readingExpRef

*dictionaries*: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama*: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures*: cell

*header*: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking*: ab seg

*msdescription*: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates*: addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit  
forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset  
orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex  
socecStatus surname

*spoken*: u writing

*tagdocs*: eg

*textcrit*: lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure*: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr*: am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

*verse*: rhyme

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element handShift
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.handFeatures.attributes,
  att.source.attributes,
  attribute new { data.pointer }?,
  empty
}
```

*Example*

```
<l>When wolde the cat dwelle in his ynn</l>
<handShift medium="greenish-ink"/>
<l>And if the cattes skynne be slyk <handShift medium="black-ink"/> and gaye</l>
```

*Note* The `<handShift/>` element may be used either to denote a shift in the document hand (as from one scribe to another, on one writing style to another). Or, it may indicate a shift within a document hand, as a change of writing style, character or ink. Like other milestone elements, it should appear at the point of transition from some other state to the state which it describes.

---

**<head>** (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc. [4.2.1. Headings and Trailers]

*Module core*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*)  
(att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic

(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.headLike model.pLike.front

*Contained by*

*core:* divGen lg list listBibl

*drama:* castGroup castList epilogue performance prologue set spGrp

*figures:* figure table

*msdescription:* msDesc msPart

*namesdates:* climate event listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation org  
 place population state terrain trait

*textcrit:* listApp listWit

*textstructure:* argument back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group  
 postscript

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
 distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
 listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
 q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
 offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
 surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
 macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```

element head
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,

```

(	text	lg	model.gLike	model.phrase	model.inter	model.lLike	model.
}							

*Example* The most common use for the <head> element is to mark the headings of sections. In older writings, the headings or *incipits* may be rather longer than usual in modern works. If a section has an explicit ending as well as a heading, it should be marked as a <trailer>, as in this example:

```
<div1 n="I" type="book">
  <head>In the name of Christ here begins the first book of the ecclesiastical
  history of
    Georgius Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.</head>
  <div2 type="section">
    <head>In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the history.</head>
    <p>Proposing as I do ...</p>
    <p>From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin four hundred and
    twelve
      years passed.</p>
    <trailer>Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand, five hundred and
    ninety-six
      years from the beginning of the world down to the death of Saint
    Martin.</trailer>
  </div2>
</div1>
```

*Example* The <head> element is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists:

```
With a few exceptions, connectives are equally
useful in all kinds of discourse: description, narration, exposition, argument.
<list rend="bulleted">
  <head>Connectives</head>
  <item>above</item>
  <item>accordingly</item>
  <item>across from</item>
  <item>adjacent to</item>
  <item>again</item>
  <item>
<!-- ... -->
  </item>
</list>
```

*Note* The <head> element is used for headings at all levels; software which treats (e.g.) chapter headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the proper processing of a <head> element based on its structural position. A <head> occurring as the first element of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the first element of a <div1> is the title of that chapter or section.

---

**<headItem>** (heading for list items) contains the heading for the item or gloss column in a glossary list or similar structured list. [3.7. Lists]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Contained by*

*core:* list

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element headItem { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

*Example*

```
The simple, straightforward statement of an
idea is preferable to the use of a worn-out expression. <list type="gloss">
<headLabel rend="smallcaps">TRITE</headLabel>
<headItem rend="smallcaps">SIMPLE, STRAIGHTFORWARD</headItem>
<label>bury the hatchet</label>
<item>stop fighting, make peace</item>
<label>at loose ends</label>
<item>disorganized</item>
<label>on speaking terms</label>
<item>friendly</item>
<label>fair and square</label>
<item>completely honest</item>
<label>at death's door</label>
<item>near death</item>
</list>
```

*Note* The <headItem> element may appear only if each item in the list is preceded by a <label>.

---

**<headLabel>** (heading for list labels) contains the heading for the label or term column in a glossary list or similar structured list. [3.7. Lists]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))

*Contained by*

*core:* list

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

<pre>element headLabel { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>
---

*Example*

The simple, straightforward statement of an idea is preferable to the use of a worn-out expression. <list type="gloss">  
<headLabel rend="smallcaps">TRITE</headLabel>  
<headItem rend="smallcaps">SIMPLE, STRAIGHTFORWARD</headItem>  
<label>bury the hatchet</label>  
<item>stop fighting, make peace</item>  
<label>at loose ends</label>  
<item>disorganized</item>  
<label>on speaking terms</label>  
<item>friendly</item>  
<label>fair and square</label>  
<item>completely honest</item>  
<label>at death's door</label>  
<item>near death</item>  
</list>

*Note* The <headLabel> element may appear only if each item in the list is preceded by a <label>.

**<height>** contains a measurement measured along the axis at right angles to the bottom of the written surface, i.e. parallel to the spine for a codex or book. [10.3.4.

Dimensions]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))

*Member of* model.dimLike model.measureLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure measureGrp meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote dimensions explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*gaiji:* g

*Declaration*

```
element height
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dimensions.attributes,
  macro.xtext}
```

*Example*

```
<height quantity="7" unit="in"/>
```

*Note* If used to specify the height of a non text-bearing portion of some object, for example a monument, this element conventionally refers to the axis perpendicular to the surface of the earth.

---

**<heraldry>** contains a heraldic formula or phrase, typically found as part of a blazon, coat of arms, etc. [10.3.8. Heraldry]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.pPart.msdesc

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp h iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark



*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
 settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

element heraldry { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }

#### Example

```

<p>Ownership stamp (xvii cent.) on i recto with the arms
<heraldry>A bull passant within a bordure bezanty,
  in chief a crescent for difference</heraldry> [Cole],
crest, and the legend <q>Cole Deum</q>.</p>

```

text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made. [3.3.2.2. Emphatic Words and Phrases 3.3.2. Emphasis, Foreign Words, and Unusual Language]

*Module core*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*)  
(att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic  
(*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))  
(att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

*Member of* model.hiLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct  
editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label  
measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref  
reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc formula

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder  
geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage  
typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list

listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
 q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp*: correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread  
*dictionaries*: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*drama*: camera caption castList move sound tech view  
*figures*: figure formula notatedMusic table  
*gaiji*: g  
*header*: biblFull idno  
*iso-fs*: fLib fs fvLib  
*linking*: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription*: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates*: addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
 offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
 surname terrain trait  
*spoken*: incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs*: att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
 macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit*: app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure*: floatingText  
*transcr*: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse*: caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```
element hi { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

#### Example

```
<hi rend="gothic">And this Indenture further witnesseth</hi>
that the said <hi rend="italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant,
in consideration of the said intended marriage ...
```

<history> groups elements describing the full history of a manuscript or manuscript part. [10.8. History]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Contained by*

*msdescription*: msDesc msPart

*May contain*

*core*: p

*linking*: ab

*msdescription*: acquisition origin provenance summary

*Declaration*

```
element history
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( summary?, origin?, provenance*, acquisition? ) )
}
```

*Example*

```
<history>
  <origin>
    <p>Written in Durham during the mid twelfth
      century.</p>
  </origin>
  <provenance>
    <p>Recorded in two medieval
      catalogues of the books belonging to Durham Priory, made in 1391 and
      1405.</p>
  </provenance>
  <provenance>
    <p>Given to W. Olleyf by William Ebchester, Prior (1446-56)
      and later belonged to Henry Dalton, Prior of Holy Island (Lindisfarne)
      according to inscriptions on ff. 4v and 5.</p>
  </provenance>
  <acquisition>
    <p>Presented to Trinity College in 1738 by
      Thomas Gale and his son Roger.</p>
  </acquisition>
</history>
```

---

**<hom>** (homograph) groups information relating to one homograph within an entry. [9.2. The Structure of Dictionary Entries]

*Module* dictionaries

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) att.lexicographic ( @expand, @norm, @split,  
@value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt ) (att.datcat ( @datcat, @valueDatcat ))

*Member of* model.entryPart

*Contained by*

*core:* cit

*dictionaries:* dictScrap entry entryFree

*namesdates:* nym

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* cb cit gap gb index lb milestone note pb

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc

*dictionaries:* def dictScrap etym form gramGrp re sense usg xr

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*textcrit:* witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```

element hom
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  ( sense | model.entryPart.top | model.global )*
}

```

*Example*

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>bray</orth>
    <pron>breI</pron>
  </form>
  <hom>
    <gramGrp>
      <pos>n</pos>
    </gramGrp>
    <def>cry of an ass; sound of a trumpet.</def>
  </hom>
  <hom>
    <gramGrp>
      <pos>vt</pos>
      <subc>VP2A</subc>
    </gramGrp>
    <def>make a cry or sound of this kind.</def>
  </hom>
</entry>

```

<hyph> (hyphenation) contains a hyphenated form of a dictionary headword, or hyphenation information in some other form. [9.3.1. Information on Written and Spoken Forms]

*Module dictionaries*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

*Member of* model.entryPart model.formPart

*Contained by*

*core:* cit

*dictionaries:* dictScrap entryFree form

*namesdates:* nym

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element hyph
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

#### Example

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>competitor</orth>
    <hyph>com|peti|tor</hyph>
    <pron>k@m"petit@r</pron>
  </form>
</entry>

```

---

**<hyphenation>** summarizes the way in which hyphenation in a source text has been treated in an encoded version of it. [2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic

(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.declarable (@default)  
**@eol** (end-of-line) indicates whether or not end-of-line hyphenation has been retained in a text.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Legal values are:* **all** all end-of-line hyphenation has been retained, even though the lineation of the original may not have been.

**some** end-of-line hyphenation has been retained in some cases.[Default]

**hard** all soft end-of-line hyphenation has been removed: any remaining end-of-line hyphenation should be retained.

**none** all end-of-line hyphenation has been removed: any remaining hyphenation occurred within the line.

*Member of* model.editorialDeclPart

*Contained by*

*header:* editorialDecl

*May contain*

*core:* p

*linking:* ab

*Declaration*

```

element hyphenation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  attribute eol { "all" | "some" | "hard" | "none" }?,
  model.pLike+
}

```

*Example*

```

<hyphenation eol="some">
  <p>End-of-line hyphenation silently removed where appropriate</p>
</hyphenation>

```

**<iNode>** (intermediate (or internal) node) represents an intermediate (or internal) node of a tree. [19.2. Trees]

*Module* nets

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

**@value** indicates an intermediate node, which is a feature structure or other analytic element.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.pointer**

**@children** provides a list of identifiers of the elements which are the children of the intermediate node.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

**@parent** provides the identifier of the element which is the parent of this node.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.pointer`

**@ord** (ordered) indicates whether or not the internal node is ordered.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.xTruthValue`

*Note* The value true indicates that the children of the intermediate node are ordered, whereas false indicates the are unordered. Use if and only if *ord* is specified as partial on the <tree> element and the intermediate node has more than one child.

**@follow** provides the identifier of an element which this node follows.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.pointer`

*Note* If the tree is unordered or partially ordered, this attribute has the property of fixing the relative order of the intermediate node and the element which is the value of the attribute.

**@outDegree** gives the out degree of an intermediate node, the number of its children.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.count`

*Note* The in degree of an intermediate node is always 1.

*Contained by* tree

*May contain*

*core:* label

*Declaration*

```
element iNode
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute value { data.pointer }?,
  attribute children { list { data.pointer+ } },
  attribute parent { data.pointer }?,
  attribute ord { data.xTruthValue }?,
  attribute follow { data.pointer }?,
  attribute outDegree { data.count }?,
  label?
}
```

*Example*

```
<iNode children="#GD-UP1" follow="#GD-PN1"
  outDegree="1" parent="#GD-VB1" xml:id="pt1">
  <label>PT</label>
</iNode>
```

---

**<iType>** (inflectional class) indicates the inflectional class associated with a lexical item.

[9.3.1. Information on Written and Spoken Forms]

*Module* dictionaries



*Attributes* *Attributes* att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*)  
 (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic  
 (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))  
 (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.lexicographic (*@expand*, *@norm*, *@split*,  
*@value*, *@orig*, *@location*, *@mergedIn*, *@opt*) (att.datcat (*@datcat*, *@valueDatcat*))

**@type** indicates the type of indicator used to specify the inflection class, when it  
 is necessary to distinguish between the usual abbreviated indications (e.g.  
*inv*) and other kinds of indicators, such as special codes referring to  
 conjugation patterns, etc.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Sample values include:* **abbrev** abbreviated indicator

**verbTable** coded reference to a table of verbs

*Note* This element is synonymous with <gram type='inflectional  
 type'>.

*Member of* model.morphLike

*Contained by*

*dictionaries:* dictScrap entryFree etym form gramGrp

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
 distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
 listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
 q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
 offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
 surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
 macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```

element iType
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Example*

```

<form>
  <orth>horrifier</orth>
  <pron>ORifje</pron>
  <iType type="vbtable">7</iType>
</form>

```

*Note* May contain character data and phrase-level elements. Typical content will be *invariant*, *n 3* etc.

---

**<ident>** (identifier) contains an identifier or name for an object of some kind in a formal language. <ident> is used for tokens such as variable names, class names, type names, function names etc. in formal programming languages. [22.1.1. Phrase Level Terms]

*Module* tagdocs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.emphLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout

material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
 settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain* Character data only  
*Declaration*

```
element ident { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, text }
```

#### Example

```
<ident type="namespace">http://www.tei-c.org/ns/Examples</ident>
```

*Note* In running prose, this element may be used for any kind of identifier in any formal language. It should not be used for element and attribute names in XML, for which the special elements <gi> and <att> are provided.

---

**<idno>** (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way.  
 [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2.5. The Series Statement  
 3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

#### Module header

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.sortable (@sortKey)  
**@type** categorizes the identifier, for example as an ISBN, Social Security number,  
 etc.  
*Status* Optional  
*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Member of* model.msItemPart model.nameLike model.personPart  
 model.publicationStmtPart.detail

#### Contained by

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine address analytic author bibl biblScope biblStruct citedRange  
 corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem  
 headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned monogr name note num orig p  
 pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled speaker stage street  
 term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition  
extent funder geoDecl handNote idno language licence principal publicationStmt  
rendition scriptNote seriesStmt sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier catchwords collation colophon  
condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit  
layout material msIdentifier msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace  
origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates  
watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
occupation offset org orgName persName person personGrp place placeName region  
residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*Declaration*

```
element idno
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | idno )*
}
```

#### Example

```
<idno type="ISBN">978-1-906964-22-1</idno>
<idno type="ISSN">0143-3385</idno>
<idno type="DOI">10.1000/123</idno>
<idno type="URI">http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/185922478</idno>
<idno type="URI">http://authority.nzetc.org/463</idno>
<idno type="LT">Thomason Tract E.537(17)</idno>
<idno type="Wing">C695</idno>
<idno type="oldCat">
  <g ref="#sym"/>345
</idno>
```

In the last case, the identifier includes a non-Unicode character which is defined elsewhere by means of a <glyph> or <char> element referenced here as **#sym**.

*Note* <idno> should be used for labels which identify an object or concept in a formal cataloguing system such as a database or an RDF store, or in a distributed system such as the World Wide Web. Some suggested values for *type* on <idno> are **ISBN**, **ISSN**, **DOI**, and **URI**.

**<if>** defines a conditional default value for a feature; the condition is specified as a feature structure, and is met if it subsumes the feature structure in the text for which a default value is sought. [18.11. Feature System Declaration]

*Module* iso-fs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))

*Contained by*

*iso-fs:* vDefault

*May contain*

*iso-fs:* binary default f fs numeric string symbol then vAlt vColl vLabel vMerge vNot

*Declaration*

```

element if
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( fs | f ), then, ( model.featureVal ) )
}

```

*Example*

```

<vDefault>
  <if>
    <fs>
      <f name="VFORM">
        <symbol value="INF"/>
      </f>
      <f name="SUBJ">
        <binary value="true"/>
      </f>
    </fs>
    <then/>
    <symbol value="for"/>
  </if>
</vDefault>

```

*Note* May contain a feature structure, followed by a feature value; the two are separated by a <then/> element.

**<iff/>** (if and only if) separates the condition from the consequence in a bicond element. [18.11. Feature System Declaration]

*Module* iso-fs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,

*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*)) (*att.global.change* (*@change*)) (*att.global.responsibility* (*@cert*, *@resp*))

*Contained by*

*iso-fs:* bicond

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration* **element iff { att.global.attributes, empty }**

*Example*

```
<bicond>
  <fs>
    <f name="F00">
      <symbol value="42"/>
    </f>
  </fs>
  <iff/>
  <fs>
    <f name="BAR">
      <binary value="true"/>
    </f>
  </fs>
</bicond>
```

*Note* This element is provided primarily to enhance the human readability of the feature-system declaration.

---

**<imprimatur>** contains a formal statement authorizing the publication of a work, sometimes required to appear on a title page or its verso. [4.6. Title Pages]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* *Attributes* *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (*att.global.rendition* (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (*att.global.linking* (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*)) (*att.global.change* (*@change*)) (*att.global.responsibility* (*@cert*, *@resp*))

*Member of* model.titlepagePart

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* msItem

*textstructure:* titlePage

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
 offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
 surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
 macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```
element imprimatur { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

#### Example

```
<imprimatur>Licensed and entred acording to Order.</imprimatur>
```

**<imprint>** groups information relating to the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*)  
 (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic  
 (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))  
 (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

*Contained by*

*core:* monogr

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* biblScope cb date gap gb index lb milestone note pb pubPlace publisher respStmt  
 time

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*header:* catRef classCode distributor

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*textcrit:* witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```
element imprint
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( classCode | catRef )*,
    (
      ( ( model.imprintPart ) | ( model.dateLike ) ),
      respStmt*,
      model.global*
    )+
  )
}
```

*Example*

```
<imprint>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher>
  <date>1987</date>
</imprint>
```

---

**<incident>** marks any phenomenon or occurrence, not necessarily vocalized or communicative, for example incidental noises or other events affecting communication. [8.3.3. Vocal, Kinesic, Incident]

*Module spoken*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space ) ( att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition ) ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select ) ) ( att.global.analytic ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) ( att.global.change ( @change ) ) ( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) ) att.timed ( @start, @end ) ( att.duration ( att.duration.w3c ( @dur ) ) ( att.duration.iso ( @dur-iso ) ) ) att.typed ( @type, @subtype ) att.ascribed ( @who )

*Member of* model.global.spoken

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xi

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table



*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote  
language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance  
rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence  
roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
surfaceGrp surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*core:* desc

*Declaration*

```
element incident
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.timed.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  model.descLike*
}
```

*Example*

```
<incipit>
  <desc>ceiling collapses</desc>
</incipit>
```

**<incipit>** contains the *incipit* of a manuscript item, that is the opening words of the text proper, exclusive of any *rubric* which might precede it, of sufficient length to identify the work uniquely; such incipits were, in former times, frequently used a means of reference to a work, in place of a title. [10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.msExcerpt  
(@defective)

*Member of* model.msQuoteLike

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* msItem msItemStruct

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element incipit
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.msExcerpt.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example*

```
<incipit>Pater noster qui es in celis</incipit>
<incipit defective="true">tatem dedit hominibus alleluia.</incipit>
<incipit type="biblical">Ghif ons huden onse dagelix broet</incipit>
<incipit>0 onghoerde gewerdighe christi</incipit>
<incipit type="lemma">Firmiter</incipit>
<incipit>Ideo dicit firmiter quia ordo fidei nostre probari non potest</incipit>
```

---

**<index>** (index entry) marks a location to be indexed for whatever purpose. [3.8.2.

Index Entries]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*)  
 (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic  
 (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))  
 (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.spanning (*@spanTo*)

**@indexName** a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name  
 (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>), supplying a name  
 to specify which index (of several) the index entry belongs to.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.name

*Note* This attribute makes it possible to create multiple indexes for a  
 text.

*Member of* model.global.meta

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del  
 distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint  
 index item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace  
 publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term  
 textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
 preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom  
 hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg  
 xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue  
 role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote  
 language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance  
 rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence  
 roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
 front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
surfaceGrp surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*core:* index term

*Declaration*

```
element index
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  attribute indexName { data.name }?,
  ( term, index? )*
}
```

*Example*

David's other principal backer, Josiah ha-Kohen

```
<index indexName="NAMES">
  <term>Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya</term>
</index> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura <index indexName="PLACES">
  <term>Sura</term>
</index> was David's own first cousin.
```

---

**<institution>** contains the name of an organization such as a university or library, with which a manuscript is identified, generally its holding institution. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) att.naming ( @role, @nymRef )  
(att.canonical ( @key, @ref ))

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* altIdentifier msIdentifier

*May contain*

*gaiji:* g

*Declaration*

```
element institution
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.xtext}
}
```

*Example*

```
<msIdentifier>
  <settlement>Oxford</settlement>
  <institution>University of Oxford</institution>
  <repository>Bodleian Library</repository>
  <idno>MS. Bodley 406</idno>
</msIdentifier>
```

<interaction> describes the extent, cardinality and nature of any interaction among those producing and experiencing the text, for example in the form of response or interjection, commentary, etc. [15.2.1. The Text Description]

*Module* corpus

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

**@type** specifies the degree of interaction between active and passive participants in the text.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Legal values are:* **none** no interaction of any kind, e.g. a monologue

**partial** some degree of interaction, e.g. a monologue with set responses

**complete** complete interaction, e.g. a face to face conversation

**inapplicable** this parameter is inappropriate or inapplicable in this case

**@active** specifies the number of active participants (or *addressors*) producing parts of the text.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Suggested values include:* **singular** a single addressor

**plural** many addressors

**corporate** a corporate addressor

**unknown** number of addressors unknown or unspecifiable

**@passive** specifies the number of passive participants (or *addressees*) to whom a text is directed or in whose presence it is created or performed.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Suggested values include:* **self** text is addressed to the originator e.g. a diary

**single** text is addressed to one other person e.g. a personal letter

**many** text is addressed to a countable number of others e.g. a conversation in which all participants are identified

**group** text is addressed to an undefined but fixed number of participants e.g. a lecture

**world** text is addressed to an undefined and indeterminately large number e.g. a published book

*Member of* model.textDescPart

*Contained by*

*corpus:* textDesc

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index

lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled  
term time title

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident tag val

*textcrit:* witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst  
substJoin

*Declaration*

```

element interaction
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { "none" | "partial" | "complete" | "inapplicable" }?,
  attribute active
  {
    "singular" | "plural" | "corporate" | "unknown" | xsd:Name
  }?,
  attribute passive
  {
    "self" | "single" | "many" | "group" | "world" | xsd:Name
  }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

*Example*

```
<interaction active="plural" passive="many"
type="complete"/>
```

*Example*

```
<interaction active="singular"
passive="group" type="none"/>
```

---

**<interp>** (interpretation) summarizes a specific interpretative annotation which can be linked to a span of text. [17.3. Spans and Interpretations]

*Module analysis*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.interpLike (@type, @inst) (att.source  
(@source))

*Member of* model.global.meta

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl interpGrp m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del  
distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint  
item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q  
quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang  
time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom  
hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg  
xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue  
role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote  
language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance  
rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence  
roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
surfaceGrp surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* desc

*gaiji:* g

*Declaration*

```

element interp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.interpLike.attributes,

```

```
( text | model.gLike | model.descLike | model.certLike )*
}
```

*Example*

```
<interp type="structuralunit"
xml:id="ana_am">aftermath</interp>
```

*Note* Generally, each `<interp>` element carries an *xml:id* attribute. This permits the encoder to explicitly associate the interpretation represented by the content of an `<interp>` with any textual element through its *ana* attribute. Alternatively (or, in addition) an `<interp>` may carry an *inst* attribute which points to one or more textual elements to which the analysis represented by the content of the `<interp>` applies.

---

**<interpGrp>** (interpretation group) collects together a set of related interpretations which share responsibility or type. [17.3. Spans and Interpretations]

*Module analysis*

*Attributes* Attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (*att.global.rendition* (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (*att.global.linking* (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*)) (*att.global.change* (*@change*)) (*att.global.responsibility* (*@cert*, *@resp*)) *att.interpLike* (*@type*, *@inst*) (*att.source* (*@source*))

*Member of* model.global.meta*Contained by**analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality



occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence  
roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
surfaceGrp surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp

*core:* desc

*Declaration*

```

element interpGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.interpLike.attributes,
  ( model.descLike*, interp+ )
}

```

*Example*

```

<interpGrp resp="#TMA"
  type="structuralunit">
  <desc>basic structural organization</desc>
  <interp xml:id="I1">introduction</interp>
  <interp xml:id="I2">conflict</interp>
  <interp xml:id="I3">climax</interp>
  <interp xml:id="I4">revenge</interp>
  <interp xml:id="I5">reconciliation</interp>
  <interp xml:id="I6">aftermath</interp>
</interpGrp>
<bibl xml:id="TMA">
<!-- bibliographic citation for source of this
interpretive framework -->
</bibl>

```

*Note* Any number of <interp> elements.

<interpretation> describes the scope of any analytic or interpretive information added to the text in addition to the transcription. [2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) att.declarable ( @default)

*Member of* model.editorialDeclPart

*Contained by*

*header:* editorialDecl

*May contain*

*core:* p

*linking:* ab

*Declaration*

```
element interpretation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  model.pLike+
}
```

*Example*

```
<interpretation>
  <p>The part of speech analysis applied throughout section 4 was added by hand and
has not
  been checked</p>
</interpretation>
```

---

**<item>** contains one component of a list. [3.7. Lists 2.5. The Revision Description]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.sortable (@sortKey)

*Contained by*

*core:* list

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb  
ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink

offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
 surname terrain trait  
*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
 macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element item
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

*Example*

```

<list rend="numbered">
  <head>Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV</head>
  <item n="4.1">The death of Queen Clotild.</item>
  <item n="4.2">How King Lothar wanted to appropriate one third of the Church
revenues.</item>
  <item n="4.3">The wives and children of Lothar.</item>
  <item n="4.4">The Counts of the Bretons.</item>
  <item n="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.</item>
  <item n="4.6">The priest Cato.</item>
  <item> ...</item>
</list>

```

*Note* May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks. Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global *n* attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. In ordered lists, the *n* attribute on the <item> element is by definition synonymous with the use of the <label> element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the <label> element, not *n*.

---

**<join>** identifies a possibly fragmented segment of text, by pointing at the possibly discontinuous elements which compose it. [16.7. Aggregation]

*Module linking*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target,  
 @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

**@result** specifies the name of an element which this aggregation may be understood to represent.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.name

**@scope** indicates whether the targets to be joined include the entire element indicated (the entire subtree including its root), or just the children of the target (the branches of the subtree).

*Status* Recommended

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Legal values are:* **root** the rooted subtrees indicated by the *target* attribute are joined, each subtree become a child of the virtual element created by the join[Default]

**branches** the children of the subtrees indicated by the *target* attribute become the children of the virtual element (i.e. the roots of the subtrees are discarded)

*Member of* model.global.meta

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab joinGrp seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*teststructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* desc

*Declaration*

```

element join
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute result { data.name }?,
  attribute scope { "root" | "branches" }?,
  ( model.descLike | model.certLike )*
}

```

*Schematron* <s:assert test="contains(@target, ' ')">You must supply at least two values for @target on <s:name/></s:assert>

*Example* The following example is discussed in section SAAG:

```

<sp>
  <speaker>Hughie</speaker>
  <p>How does it go? <q>
    <l xml:id="frog_x1">da-da-da</l>
    <l xml:id="frog_l2">gets a new frog</l>
    <l>...</l>
  </q>
</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Louie</speaker>
  <p>
    <q>
      <l xml:id="frog_l1">When the old pond</l>
      <l>...</l>
    </q>
  </p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Dewey</speaker>
  <p>
    <q>... <l xml:id="frog_l3">It's a new pond.</l>
  </q>
</p>
  <join result="lg" scope="root"
    target="#frog_l1 #frog_l2 #frog_l3"/>
</sp>

```

The <join> element here identifies a linegroup (<lg>) comprising the three lines indicated by the *target* attribute. The value **root** for the *scope* attribute indicates that the resulting virtual element contains the three <l> elements linked to at #frog\_l1 #frog\_l2 #frog\_l3, rather than their character data content.

*Example* In this example, the attribute *scope* is specified with the value of **branches** to indicate that the virtual list being constructed is to be made by taking the lists indicated by the *target* attribute of the <join> element, discarding the <list> tags which enclose them, and combining the items contained within the lists into a single virtual list:

```

<p>Southern dialect (my own variety, at least) has only <list xml:id="LP1">
  <item>
    <s>I done gone</s>

```

```

</item>
<item>
  <s>I done went</s>
</item>
</list> whereas Negro Non-Standard basilect has both these and <list xml:id="LP2">
  <item>
    <s>I done go</s>
  </item>
</list>.</p>
<p>White Southern dialect also has <list xml:id="LP3">
  <item>
    <s>I've done gone</s>
  </item>
  <item>
    <s>I've done went</s>
  </item>
</list> which, when they occur in Negro dialect, should probably be considered as
borrowings from other varieties of English.</p>
<join result="list" scope="branches"
  target="#LP1 #LP2 #LP3" xml:id="LST1">
  <desc>Sample sentences in Southern speech</desc>
</join>

```

---

**<joinGrp>** (join group) groups a collection of join elements and possibly pointers. [16.7. Aggregation]

*Module* linking

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.pointing.group (@domains, @targFunc)  
 (att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)) (att.typed (@type, @subtype))

**@result** supplies the default value for the *result* on each <join> included within  
 the group.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.name

*Member of* model.global.meta

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del  
 distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint  
 item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q  
 quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang  
 time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
 preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom  
 hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg  
 xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue  
role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote  
language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance  
rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence  
roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
surfaceGrp surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*core:* gloss ptr

*linking:* join

*tagdocs:* altIdent equiv

*Declaration*

```
element joinGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.group.attributes,
  attribute result { data.name }?,
  ( model.glossLike*, ( join | ptr )+ )
}
```

*Example*

```
<joinGrp domains="#zuitxt1 #zuitxt2 #zuitxt3"
  result="q">
  <join target="#zuiq1 #zuiq2 #zuiq6"/>
  <join target="#zuiq3 #zuiq4 #zuiq5"/>
</joinGrp>
```

*Note* Any number of <join> or <ptr/> elements.

---

<keywords> contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))

**@scheme** identifies the controlled vocabulary within which the set of keywords  
concerned is defined identifies the classification scheme within which the set  
of categories concerned is defined, for example by a <taxonomy> element,  
or by some other resource.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

*Content model:* textClass

*May contain*

*core:* list term

*Declaration*

```
element keywords
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute scheme { data.pointer }?,
  ( term+ | list )
}
```

*Example*

```
<keywords scheme="http://classificationweb.net">
  <term>Babbage, Charles</term>
  <term>Mathematicians - Great Britain - Biography</term>
</keywords>
```

*Example*

```
<keywords>
  <term>Fermented beverages</term>
  <term>Central Andes</term>
  <term>Schinus molle</term>
  <term>Molle beer</term>
  <term>Indigenous peoples</term>
  <term>Ethnography</term>
  <term>Archaeology</term>
</keywords>
```

*Note* Each individual keyword (including compound subject headings) should be supplied  
as a <term> element directly within the <keywords> element. An alternative  
usage, in which each <term> appears within a <item> inside a <list> is permitted  
for backwards compatibility, but is deprecated. If no control list exists for the  
keywords used, then no value should be supplied for the *scheme* attribute.

---

**<kinesic>** marks any communicative phenomenon, not necessarily vocalized, for example  
a gesture, frown, etc. [8.3.3. Vocal, Kinesic, Incident]

*Module* spoken

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic



(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.timed (@start, @end) (att.duration  
 (att.duration.w3c (@dur)) (att.duration.iso (@dur-iso)) ) att.typed (@type,  
 @subtype) att.ascribed (@who)

@iterated indicates whether or not the phenomenon is repeated.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.xTruthValue

*Default* false

*Note* The value true indicates that the kinesic is repeated several times  
 rather than occurring only once.

*Member of* model.global.spoken

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del  
 distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint  
 item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q  
 quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang  
 time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
 preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom  
 hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg  
 xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue  
 role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote  
 language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance  
 rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence  
 roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
 front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
 surfaceGrp surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*core:* desc

*Declaration*

```
element kinesic
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.timed.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  attribute iterated { data.xTruthValue }?,
  model.descLike*
}
```

*Example*

```
<kinesic dur="PT1.5S" iterated="true"
  type="reinforcing">
  <desc>nodding head vigorously</desc>
</kinesic>
```

---

**<l>** (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse. [3.12.1. Core Tags for Verse 3.12. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.metrical (@met, @real, @rhyme)  
 att.enjamb (@enjamb) att.fragmentable (@part)

*Member of* macro.paraContent model.lLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del emph head hi item l lg note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title  
 unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def gen gram hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos  
 pron stress subc syll tns usg

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

*figures:* cell figure

*header:* change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
 filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
 support surrogates

*spoken:* writing

*tagdocs:* specGrp

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
 imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* biblFull idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element l
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.metrical.attributes,
  att.enjamb.attributes,
  att.fragmentable.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

#### Example

```
<l met="x/x/x/x/x/" real="/xx/x/x/x/">Shall I compare thee to a summer's day?</l>
```

<label> contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary. [3.7. Lists]

#### Module core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.placement  
(@place)

*Member of* model.labelLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l lg list meeting note orig p q quote ref reg  
said sic stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure notatedMusic

*header:* application change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
support surrogates

*namesdates:* climate event location org place population state terrain trait

*nets:* arc eLeaf eTree graph iNode leaf node root tree triangle

*spoken:* writing

*textcrit:* lem rdg witness

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surface surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element label
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example* Labels are commonly used for the headwords in glossary lists; note the use of the global *xml:lang* attribute to set the default language of the glossary list to Middle English, and identify the glosses and headings as modern English or Latin:

```
<list type="gloss" xml:lang="enm">
  <head xml:lang="en">Vocabulary</head>
  <headLabel xml:lang="en">Middle English</headLabel>
  <headItem xml:lang="en">New English</headItem>
  <label>nu</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">now</item>
  <label>lhude</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">loudly</item>
  <label>bloweth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">blooms</item>
  <label>med</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">meadow</item>
  <label>wude</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">wood</item>
  <label>awe</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">ewe</item>
  <label>lhouth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">lows</item>
  <label>sterteth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">bounds, frisks (cf. <cit>
    <ref>Chaucer, K.T.644</ref>
    <quote>a courser, <term>sterting</term>as the fyr</quote>
  </cit>
</item>
  <label>verteth</label>
  <item xml:lang="la">pedit</item>
  <label>murie</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">merrily</item>
  <label>swik</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">cease</item>
  <label>naver</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">never</item>
</list>
```

*Example* Labels may also be used to record explicitly the numbers or letters which mark list items in ordered lists, as in this extract from Gibbon's *Autobiography*. In this usage the <label> element is synonymous with the *n* attribute on the <item> element:

```
I will add two facts, which have seldom occurred
in the composition of six, or at least of five quartos.
<list rend="runon" type="ordered">
  <label>(1)</label>
  <item>My first rough manuscript, without any intermediate copy, has been sent to
the press.</item>
  <label>(2) </label>
  <item>Not a sheet has been seen by any human eyes, excepting those of the author
and the
```

```
printer: the faults and the merits are exclusively my own.</item>
</list>
```

*Example* Labels may also be used for other structured list items, as in this extract from the journal of Edward Gibbon:

```
<list type="gloss">
  <label>March 1757.</label>
  <item>I wrote some critical observations upon Plautus.</item>
  <label>March 8th.</label>
  <item>I wrote a long dissertation upon some lines of Virgil.</item>
  <label>June.</label>
  <item>I saw Mademoiselle Curchod – <quote xml:lang="la">Omnia vincit amor, et nos cedamus amori.</quote>
</item>
  <label>August.</label>
  <item>I went to Crassy, and staid two days.</item>
</list>
```

Note that the <label> might also appear within the <item> rather than as its sibling. Though syntactically valid, this usage is not recommended TEI practice.

*Example* Labels may also be used to represent a label or heading attached to a paragraph or sequence of paragraphs not treated as a structural division, or to a group of verse lines. Note that, in this case, the <label> element appears *within* the <p> or <lg> element, rather than as a preceding sibling of it.

```
<p>[...]
<lb/>& n'entrer en mauuais & mal-heu-
<lb/>r   mefnage. Or des que le confente-
<lb/>ment des parties y eft le mariage eft
<lb/> arre  t  , quoy que de faict il ne foit
<label place="margin">Puiffance maritale
entre les Romains.</label>
<lb/> conform  . Depuis la conformma-
<lb/>tion du mariage la femme eft foubs
<lb/> la puiffance du mary, s'il n'eft efcla-
<lb/>ue ou enfant de famille : car en ce
<lb/> cas, la femme, qui a efpouf   vn en-
<lb/>fant de famille, eft fous la puiffance
[...]</p>
```

In this example the text of the label appears in the right hand margin of the original source, next to the paragraph it describes, but approximately in the middle of it. If so desired the *type* attribute may be used to distinguish different categories of label.

---

<lacunaEnd/> indicates the end of a lacuna in a mostly complete textual witness.  
[12.1.5. Fragmentary Witnesses]

*Module* textcrit

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.rdgPart (@wit)

*Member of* model.rdgPart

*Contained by*

*textcrit:* lem rdg

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element lacunaEnd { att.global.attributes, att.rdgPart.attributes, empty }
```

*Example*

```
<rdg wit="#X">
  <lacunaEnd/>auctorite
</rdg>
```

**<lacunaStart/>** indicates the beginning of a lacuna in the text of a mostly complete textual witness. [12.1.5. Fragmentary Witnesses]

*Module* textcrit

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.rdgPart (@wit)

*Member of* model.rdgPart*Contained by*

*textcrit:* lem rdg

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element lacunaStart { att.global.attributes, att.rdgPart.attributes, empty }
```

*Example*

```
<app>
  <lem wit="#El #Hg">Experience</lem>
  <rdg wit="#Ha4">Ex<g ref="#per"/>
    <lacunaStart/>
  </rdg>
</app>
```

**<lang>** (language name) contains the name of a language mentioned in etymological or other linguistic discussion. [9.3.4. Etymological Information]

*Module* dictionaries

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

*Member of* model.nameLike*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
 preparedness purpose  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr  
*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view  
*figures:* cell figDesc  
*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition  
 extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote  
 sponsor tagUsage typeNote  
*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
 settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
 distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
 listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
 q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* biblFull idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink



offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```

element lang
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Example*

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>publish</orth> ... </form>
  <etym>
    <lang>ME.</lang>
    <mentioned>publisshen</mentioned>,
    <lang>F.</lang>
    <mentioned>publier</mentioned>, <lang>L.</lang>
    <mentioned>publicare,
      publicatum</mentioned>. <xr>See <ref>public</ref>; cf. <ref>2d
    -ish</ref>.</xr>
  </etym>
</entry>

```

*Note* May contain character data mixed with phrase-level elements.

<langKnowledge> (language knowledge) summarizes the state of a person's linguistic knowledge, either as prose or by a list of <langKnown> elements.  
[13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.datable (@calendar, @period)  
(att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso  
(@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom  
(@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom,  
@datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions  
(@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost,  
@min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source))

**@tags** supplies one or more valid language tags for the languages specified

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.language` separated by whitespace

*Note* This attribute should be supplied only if the element contains no `<langKnown>` children. Its values are language ‘tags’ as defined in RFC 4646 or its successor

*Member of* model.persStateLike

*Contained by*

*namesdates:* person personGrp

*May contain*

*core:* p

*linking:* ab

*namesdates:* langKnown

*Declaration*

```
element langKnowledge
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  attribute tags { list { data.language+ } }?,
  ( model.pLike | langKnown+ )
}
```

*Example*

```
<langKnowledge tags="en-GB fr">
  <p>British English and French</p>
</langKnowledge>
```

*Example*

```
<langKnowledge>
  <langKnown level="H" tag="en-GB">British English</langKnown>
  <langKnown level="M" tag="fr">French</langKnown>
</langKnowledge>
```

---

**<langKnown>** (language known) summarizes the state of a person's linguistic competence, i.e., knowledge of a single language. [15.2.2. The Participant Description]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.rendition` (`@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`)) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`)) (`att.global.responsibility` (`@cert`, `@resp`)) `att.dataable` (`@calendar`, `@period`) (`att.dataable.w3c` (`@when`, `@notBefore`, `@notAfter`, `@from`, `@to`)) (`att.dataable.iso` (`@when-iso`, `@notBefore-iso`, `@notAfter-iso`, `@from-iso`, `@to-iso`)) (`att.dataable.custom` (`@when-custom`, `@notBefore-custom`, `@notAfter-custom`, `@from-custom`, `@to-custom`, `@datingPoint`, `@datingMethod`)) `att.editLike` (`@evidence`, `@instant`) (`att.dimensions` (`@unit`, `@quantity`, `@extent`, `@precision`, `@scope`) (`att.ranging` (`@atLeast`, `@atMost`, `@min`, `@max`, `@confidence`)) ) (`att.source` (`@source`))

**@tag** supplies a valid language tag for the language concerned.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* **data.language**

*Note* The value for this attribute should be a language ‘tag’ as defined in BCP 47.

**@level** a code indicating the person's level of knowledge for this language

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.word**

*Contained by:* langKnown

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index  
lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled  
term time title

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident tag val

*textcrit:* witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst  
substJoin

*Declaration*

```

element langKnown
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  attribute tag { data.language },
  attribute level { data.word }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

*Example*

```

<langKnown level="H" tag="en-GB">British English</langKnown>
<langKnown level="M" tag="fr">French</langKnown>

```

<langUsage> (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text. [2.4.2. Language Usage 2.4. The Profile Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*)  
(att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic  
(*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))  
(att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.declarable (*@default*)

*Member of* model.profileDescPart

*Contained by*

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp*: readingExp textread

*header*: profileDesc

*May contain*

*header*: language

*Declaration*

```
element langUsage
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  language+
}
```

*Example*

```
<langUsage>
  <language ident="fr-CA" usage="60">Québécois</language>
  <language ident="en-CA" usage="20">Canadian business English</language>
  <language ident="en-GB" usage="20">British English</language>
</langUsage>
```

---

**<language>** characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text. [2.4.2.  
Language Usage]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*)  
(att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic  
(*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))  
(att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

**@ident** (identifier) Supplies a language code constructed as defined in BCP 47  
which is used to identify the language documented by this element, and  
which is referenced by the global *xml:lang* attribute.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* data.language

**@usage** specifies the approximate percentage (by volume) of the text which uses  
this language.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype*

```
xsd:nonNegativeInteger { maxInclusive = "100" }
```

*Contained by* *derived-module-tei\_readingExp*: origLanguage

*header*: langUsage

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index  
lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled  
term time title

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident tag val

*textcrit:* witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst  
substJoin

*Declaration*

```

element language
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute ident { data.language },
  attribute usage { xsd:nonNegativeInteger { maxInclusive = "100" } }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

*Example*

```

<langUsage>
  <language ident="en-US" usage="75">modern American English</language>
  <language ident="i-az-Arab" usage="20">Azerbaijani in Arabic script</language>
  <language ident="x-lap" usage="05">Pig Latin</language>
</langUsage>

```

*Note* Particularly for sublanguages, an informal prose characterization should be supplied as content for the element.

**<layout>** describes how text is laid out on the page, including information about any ruling, pricking, or other evidence of page-preparation techniques. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

**@columns** specifies the number of columns per page

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–2 occurrences of `data.count` separated by whitespace

*Note* If a single number is given, all pages have this number of columns.

If two numbers are given, the number of columns per page varies between the values supplied.

**@ruledLines** specifies the number of ruled lines per column

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–2 occurrences of `data.count` separated by whitespace

*Note* If a single number is given, all columns have this number of ruled lines. If two numbers are given, the number of ruled lines per column varies between the values supplied.

**@writtenLines** specifies the number of written lines per column

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–2 occurrences of `data.count` separated by whitespace

*Note* If a single number is given, all columns have this number of written lines. If two numbers are given, the number of written lines per column varies between the values supplied.

*Contained in:* `analysis` *description:* `layoutDesc`

*May contain*

*analysis:* `c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w`

*certainty:* `certainty precision respons`

*core:* `abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear`

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* `correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread`

*dictionaries:* `lang oRef oVar pRef pVar`

*drama:* `camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view`

*figures:* `figure formula notatedMusic table`

*gaiji:* `g`

*header:* `biblFull idno`

*iso-fs:* `fLib fs fvLib`

*linking:* `ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline`

*msdescription:* `catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width`

*namesdates:* `addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait`

*nets:* `eTree forest graph listForest tree`

*spoken:* `incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing`

*tagdocs:* `att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val`

*textcrit:* `app listApp listWit witDetail`

*textstructure:* `floatingText`

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element layout
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute columns { list { data.count, data.count? } }?,
  attribute ruledLines { list { data.count, data.count? } }?,
  attribute writtenLines { list { data.count, data.count? } }?,
  macro.specialPara}

```

*Example*

```
<layout columns="1" ruledLines="25 32">Most pages have between 25 and 32 long lines
ruled in lead.</layout>
```

*Example*

```
<layout columns="2" ruledLines="42">
<p>2 columns of 42 lines ruled in ink, with central rule
between the columns.</p>
</layout>
```

*Example*

```
<layout columns="1 2" writtenLines="40 50">
<p>Some pages have 2 columns, with central rule
between the columns; each column with between 40 and 50 lines of writing.</p>
</layout>
```

**<layoutDesc>** (layout description) collects the set of layout descriptions applicable to a manuscript. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* objectDesc

*May contain*

*core:* p

*linking:* ab

*msdescription:* layout summary

*Declaration*

```
element layoutDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( summary?, layout+ ) )
}

```

*Example*

```
<layoutDesc>
  <p>Most pages have between 25 and 32 long lines ruled in lead.</p>
</layoutDesc>
```

*Example*

```
<layoutDesc>
  <layout columns="2" ruledLines="42">
    <p>
      <locus from="f12r" to="f15v"/>
      2 columns of 42 lines pricked and ruled in ink, with
      central rule between the columns.</p>
    </layout>
  <layout columns="3">
    <p xml:lang="zh-TW">
      <locus from="f16"/></p>
    </layout>
  </layoutDesc>
```

---

**<lb/>** (line break) marks the start of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text. [3.10.3. Milestone Elements 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

*Module core*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break)

*Member of* model.milestoneLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout



material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance  
 rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset org orgName persName person personGrp placeName region  
 residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*nets:* graph  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail  
*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
 front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc subst supplied surface  
 surfaceGrp surplus zone  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain* Empty element  
*Declaration*

```

element lb
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.edition.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.breaking.attributes,
  empty
}

```

*Example* This example shows typographical line breaks within metrical lines, where they occur at different places in different editions:

```

<l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the Fruit</l>
<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>
<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our woe,</l>

```

*Example* This example encodes typographical line breaks as a means of preserving the visual appearance of a title page. The *break* attribute is used to show that the line break does not (as elsewhere) mark the start of a new word.

```

<titlePart>
  <lb/>With Additions, ne-<lb break="no"/>ver before Printed.
</titlePart>

```

*Note* By convention, <lb/> elements should appear at the point in the text where a new line starts. The *n* attribute, if used, indicates the number or other value associated with the text between this point and the next <lb/> element, typically the sequence number of the line within the page, or other appropriate unit. This element is intended to be used for marking actual line breaks on a manuscript or printed page, at the point where they occur; it should not be used to tag structural units such as lines of verse (for which the <l> element is available) except in circumstances where structural units cannot otherwise be marked. The *type* attribute may be used to characterize the line break in any respect. The more specialized attributes *break*, *ed*, or *edRef* should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the line break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.

**<lbl>** (label) contains a label for a form, example, translation, or other piece of information, e.g. abbreviation for, contraction of, literally, approximately, synonyms:, etc. [9.3.1. Information on Written and Spoken Forms 9.3.3.2. Translation Equivalents 9.3.5.3. Cross-References to Other Entries]

*Module* dictionaries

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.lexicographic (*@expand*, *@norm*, *@split*, *@value*, *@orig*, *@location*, *@mergedIn*, *@opt*) (att.datcat (*@datcat*, *@valueDatcat*))

*@type* classifies the label using any convenient typology.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Member of* model.entryPart model.gramPart

*Contained by*

*core:* cit

*dictionaries:* dictScrap entryFree etym form gramGrp xr

*namesdates:* nym

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element lbl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.paraContent}
```

*Example*

```
<entry>
  <form type="abbrev">
    <orth>MTBF</orth>
  </form>
  <form type="full">
    <lbl>abbrev. for</lbl>
    <orth>mean time between failures</orth>
  </form>
</entry>
```

*Note* Labels specifically relating to usage should be tagged with the special-purpose <usg> element rather than with the generic<lbl> element.

<leaf> encodes the leaves (terminal nodes) of a tree. [19.2. Trees]

*Module* nets

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))

**@value** provides a pointer to a feature structure or other analytic element.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

**@parent** provides the identifier of parent of a leaf.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

**@follow** provides an identifier of an element which this leaf follows.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

*Note* If the tree is unordered or partially ordered, this attribute has the property of fixing the relative order of the leaf and the element which is the value of the attribute.

*Contained by* tree

*May contain*

*core:* label

*Declaration*

```
element leaf
{
  att.global.attributes,
```

```

    attribute value { data.pointer }?,
    attribute parent { data.pointer }?,
    attribute follow { data.pointer }?,
    label?
}

```

*Example*

```

<leaf parent="#n1" xml:id="peril">
  <label>periscope</label>
</leaf>

```

*Note* The in degree of a leaf is always 1, its out degree always 0.

---

**<lem>** (lemma) contains the lemma, or base text, of a textual variation. [12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses]

*Module* textcrit

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) att.textCritical ( @type, @cause, @varSeq,  
 @hand ) (att.source ( @source )) att.witnessed ( @wit )

*Contained by*

*textcrit:* app rdgGrp

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
 distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl  
 measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote  
 ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
 offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
 surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
 macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app lacunaEnd lacunaStart listApp listWit wit witDetail witEnd witStart

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```

element lem
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.textCritical.attributes,
  att.witnessed.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter      | model.global      | model.rdgPart
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<app>
  <lem wit="#El #Hg">Experience</lem>
  <rdg type="substantive" wit="#La">Experiment</rdg>
  <rdg type="substantive" wit="#Ra2">Eryment</rdg>
</app>

```

*Note* The term *lemma* is used in text criticism to describe the reading in the text itself (as opposed to those in the apparatus); this usage is distinct from that of mathematics (where a lemma is a major step in a proof) and natural-language processing (where a lemma is the dictionary form associated with an inflected form in the running text).

<lg> (line group) contains one or more verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc. [3.12.1. Core Tags for Verse 3.12. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.divLike (@org, @sample) (att.metrical  
(@met, @real, @rhyme)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)  
att.declaring (@decls)

*Member of* macro.paraContent model.divPart

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del emph head hi item l lg note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title  
unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def gen gram hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos  
pron stress subc syll tns usg

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

*figures:* cell figure

*header:* change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
support surrogates

*spoken:* writing

*tagdocs:* specGrp

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* cb desc gap gb head index l label lb lg meeting milestone note pb stage

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc

*drama:* camera caption move sound tech view

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*textcrit:* witDetail

*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener  
postscript salute signed trailer

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```
element lg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    ( model.lLike | model.stageLike | model.labelLike | lg ),
    ( model.lLike | model.stageLike | model.labelLike | model.global | lg )*,
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}
```

*Schematron* <sch:assert test="count(descendant::tei:lg|descendant::tei:l|  
descendant::tei:gap) > 0">An lg element must contain at least one child l, lg or gap  
element.</sch:assert>

*Example*

```
<lg type="free">
  <l>Let me be my own fool</l>
  <l>of my own making, the sum of it</l>
</lg>
<lg type="free">
  <l>is equivocal.</l>
  <l>One says of the drunken farmer:</l>
</lg>
<lg type="free">
  <l>leave him lay off it. And this is</l>
```

```
<l>the explanation.</l>
</lg>
```

*Note* contains verse lines or nested line groups only, possibly prefixed by a heading.

**<licence>** contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.dateable (@calendar, @period) (att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.dateable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))

*Member of* model.availabilityPart

*Contained by*

*header:* availability

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element licence
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

*Example*

```
<licence target="http://www.nzetc.org/tm/scholarly/tei-NZETC-Help.html#licensing">
Licence: Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 New Zealand Licence
</licence>

```

*Example*

```
<availability>
<licence notBefore="2013-01-01"
target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/">
<p>The Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Unported (CC BY 3.0) Licence
applies to this document.</p>
<p>The licence was added on January 1, 2013.</p>
</licence>
</availability>

```

*Note* A <licence> element should be supplied for each licence agreement applicable to the text in question. The *target* attribute may be used to reference a full version of the licence. The *when*, *notBefore*, *notAfter*, *from* or *to* attributes may be used in combination to indicate the date or dates of applicability of the licence.

---

**<line>** contains the transcription of a topographic line in the source document [11.2.2. Embedded Transcription]

*Module* transcr

*Attributes* Attributes att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.coordinated (@start, @ulx, @uly, @lrx, @lry, @points)

*Member of* model.linePart

*Contained by*

*transcr:* line surface zone

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* add cb choice corr del gap gb hi index lb milestone note orig pb reg sic unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib



*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan damage damageSpan delSpan fw handShift line listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space substJoin supplied surplus undo zone

*Declaration*

```
element line
{
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.coordinated.attributes,
  ( text | model.global | model.gLike | model.linePart ) *
}
```

*Example*

```
<surface>
  <zone>
    <line>Poem</line>
    <line>As in Visions of – at</line>
    <line>night –</line>
    <line>All sorts of fancies running through</line>
    <line>the head</line>
  </zone>
</surface>
```

*Example*

```
<surface>
  <zone>
    <line>Hope you enjoyed</line>
    <line>Wales, as they
      said</line>
    <line>to Mrs FitzHerbert</line>
    <line>Mama</line>
  </zone>
  <zone>
    <line>Printed in England</line>
  </zone>
</surface>
```

*Note* This element should be used only to mark up writing which is topographically organized as a series of lines, horizontal or vertical. It should not be used to mark lines of verse (for which use `<l>`) nor to mark linebreaks within text which has been encoded using structural elements such as `<p>` (for which use `<lb/>`).

---

**<link/>** defines an association or hypertextual link among elements or passages, of some type not more precisely specifiable by other elements. [16.1. Links]

*Module* linking

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*)  
(att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic  
(*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))  
(att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.pointing (*@targetLang*, *@target*,  
*@evaluate*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

*Member of* model.global.meta

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del  
distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint  
item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q  
quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang  
time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom  
hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg  
xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue  
role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote  
language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab linkGrp seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance  
rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education event  
faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink  
nationality occupation offset org orgName persName person personGrp place  
placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
surfaceGrp surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element link
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  empty
}
```

*Schematron* <sch:assert test="contains(normalize-space(@target),' ')">You must supply  
at least two values for @target or on <sch:name/> </sch:assert>

*Example*

```

<s n="1">The state Supreme Court has refused to release <rs xml:id="R1">
  <rs xml:id="R2">Rahway State Prison</rs> inmate</rs>
  <rs xml:id="R3">James Scott</rs> on bail.</s>
<s n="2">
  <rs xml:id="R4">The fighter</rs> is serving 30-40 years
  for a 1975 armed robbery conviction in <rs xml:id="R5">the penitentiary</rs>.
</s>
<!-- ... -->
<linkGrp type="periphrasis">
  <link target="#R1 #R3 #R4"/>
  <link target="#R2 #R5"/>
</linkGrp>

```

*Note* This element should only be used to encode associations not otherwise provided for by more specific elements. The location of this element within a document has no significance, unless it is included within a <linkGrp>, in which case it may inherit the value of the *type* attribute from the value given on the <linkGrp>.

**<linkGrp>** (link group) defines a collection of associations or hypertextual links. [16.1. Links]

*Module* linking

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.pointing.group (@domains, @targFunc) (att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)) (att.typed (@type, @subtype))

*Member of* model.global.meta

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout

material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance  
rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education event  
faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink  
nationality occupation offset org orgName persName person personGrp place  
placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*nets:* graph  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail  
*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
surfaceGrp surplus zone  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*core:* ptr  
*linking:* link  
*Declaration*

```
element linkGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.group.attributes,
  ( link | ptr )+
}
```

#### Example

```
<linkGrp type="translation">
  <link target="#CCS1 #SW1"/>
  <link target="#CCS2 #SW2"/>
  <link target="#CCS #SW"/>
</linkGrp>
<div type="volume" xml:id="CCS"
  xml:lang="fr">
  <p>
    <s xml:id="CCS1">Longtemps, je me suis couché de bonne heure.</s>
    <s xml:id="CCS2">Parfois, à peine ma bougie éteinte, mes yeux se fermaient si
vite que je n'avais pas le temps de me dire : "Je m'endors."</s>
  </p>
<!-- ... -->
</div>
<div type="volume" xml:id="SW" xml:lang="en">
  <p>
    <s xml:id="SW1">For a long time I used to go to bed early.</s>
    <s xml:id="SW2">Sometimes, when I had put out my candle, my eyes would close so
quickly that I had not even time to say "I'm going to sleep."</s>
  </p>
<!-- ... -->
</div>
```

*Note* May contain one or more `<link/>` elements only, optionally with interspersed pointer elements. A web or link group is an administrative convenience, which should be used to collect a set of links together for any purpose, not simply to supply a default value for the *type* attribute.

<list> contains any sequence of items organized as a list. [3.7. Lists]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.typed (~~type~~, @subtype)

@type describes the nature of the items in the list.

*Derived from* att.typed

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Suggested values include:* **gloss** each list item glosses some term or concept, which is given by a label element preceding the list item.

**index** each list item is an entry in an index such as the alphabetical topical index at the back of a print volume.

**instructions** each list item is a step in a sequence of instructions, as in a recipe.

**litany** each list item is one of a sequence of petitions, supplications or invocations, typically in a religious ritual.

**syllogism** each list item is part of an argument consisting of two or more propositions and a final conclusion derived from them.

*Note* Previous versions of these Guidelines recommended the use of *type* on <list> to encode the rendering or appearance of a list (whether it was bulleted, numbered, etc.). The current recommendation is to use the *rend* or *style* attributes for these aspects of a list, while using *type* for the more appropriate task of characterizing the nature of the content of a list.

*Note* The formal syntax of the element declarations allows <label> tags to be omitted from lists tagged <list type="gloss">; this is however a semantic error.

*Member of* model.listLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* abstract change handNote keywords licence rendition revisionDesc scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote

filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
support surrogates

*spoken:* writing

*textcrit:* lem rdg witness

*textstructure:* argument back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition  
epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* cb gap gb head headItem headLabel index item label lb meeting milestone note pb

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*textcrit:* witDetail

*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener  
postscript salute signed trailer

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```

element list
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type
  {
    "gloss" | "index" | "instructions" | "litany" | "syllogism" | xsd:Name
  }?,
  (
    ( ( model.divTop ) | ( model.global ) )*,
    (
      ( item, model.global* )+
      | (
          headLabel?,
          headItem?,
          ( label, model.global*, item, model.global* )+
        )
    ),
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}

```

*Schematron* <sch:rule context="tei:list[@type='gloss']">  
 <sch:assert test="tei:label">The content of a "gloss" list should include a sequence  
 of one or more pairs of a label element followed by an item element</sch:assert></  
 sch:rule>

*Example*

```

<list rend="numbered">
  <item>a butcher</item>

```

```

<item>a baker</item>
<item>a candlestick maker, with <list rend="bulleted">
  <item>rings on his fingers</item>
  <item>bells on his toes</item>
</list>
</item>
</list>

```

*Example*

```

<list rend="bulleted" type="syllogism">
  <item>All Cretans are liars.</item>
  <item>Epimenides is a Cretan.</item>
  <item>ERGO Epimenides is a liar.</item>
</list>

```

*Example*

```

<list rend="simple" type="litany">
  <item>God save us from drought.</item>
  <item>God save us from pestilence.</item>
  <item>God save us from wickedness in high places.</item>
  <item>Praise be to God.</item>
</list>

```

*Example* The following example treats the short numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal codes as lists of items. The text is from an ordinance of King Athelstan (924–939):

```

<div1 type="section">
  <head>Athelstan's Ordinance</head>
  <list rend="numbered">
    <item n="1">Concerning thieves. First, that no thief is to be spared who is
      caught with
        the stolen goods, [if he is] over twelve years and [if the value of the goods
is] over
        eightpence. <list rend="numbered">
          <item n="1.1">And if anyone does spare one, he is to pay for the thief with his
            wergild – and the thief is to be no nearer a settlement on that account –
or to
            clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
          <item n="1.2">If, however, he [the thief] wishes to defend himself or to
            escape, he is
              not to be spared [whether younger or older than twelve].</item>
          <item n="1.3">If a thief is put into prison, he is to be in prison 40 days, and
            he may
              then be redeemed with 120 shillings; and the kindred are to stand surety
for him
              that he will desist for ever.</item>
          <item n="1.4">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his
            wergild,
              or to bring him back there.</item>
          <item n="1.5">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his
            wergild,
              whether to the king or to him to whom it rightly belongs; and everyone of
those who
              supported him is to pay 120 shillings to the king as a fine.</item>
        </list>
      </item>
    <item n="2">Concerning lordless men. And we pronounced about these lordless men,
      from whom
        no justice can be obtained, that one should order their kindred to fetch back
such a
        person to justice and to find him a lord in public meeting.
  <list rend="numbered">
    <item n="2.1">And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on that
      appointed day,

```

```
    he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and he who encounters him is to
    strike him
    down as a thief.</item>
    <item n="2.2">And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him with his
    wergild
    or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
  </list>
</item>
<item n="3">Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who refuses justice and
upholds
  his guilty man, so that the king is appealed to, is to repay the value of the
  goods and
  120 shillings to the king; and he who appeals to the king before he demands
  justice as
  often as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the other would have done, if he
  had
  refused him justice. <list rend="numbered">
    <item n="3.1">And the lord who is an accessory to a theft by his slave, and it
    becomes
    known about him, is to forfeit the slave and be liable to his wergild on
    the first
    occasionp if he does it more often, he is to be liable to pay all that he
    owns.</item>
    <item n="3.2">And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our reeves, who
    has been
    an accessory of thieves who have committed theft, is to liable to the
    same.</item>
  </list>
</item>
<item n="4">Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced concerning
treachery to
  a lord, that he [who is accused] is to forfeit his life if he cannot deny it or
  is
  afterwards convicted at the three-fold ordeal.</item>
</list>
</div>
```

Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired.

#### *Example*

```
<p>These decrees, most blessed Pope Hadrian, we propounded in the public council ...
and they
confirmed them in our hand in your stead with the sign of the Holy Cross, and
afterwards
inscribed with a careful pen on the paper of this page, affixing thus the sign of
the Holy
Cross. <list rend="simple">
  <item>I, Eanbald, by the grace of God archbishop of the holy church of York, have
  subscribed to the pious and catholic validity of this document with the sign
  of the Holy
  Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Ælfwold, king of the people across the Humber, consenting have
  subscribed with
  the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Tilberht, prelate of the church of Hexham, rejoicing have subscribed
  with the
  sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Higbald, bishop of the church of Lindisfarne, obeying have subscribed
  with the
  sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida Casa, suppliant, have subscribed with thef
```



```

sign of
  the Holy Cross.</item>
<item>I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed with devout
will.</item>
<item>I, Æthelwine, bishop, have subscribed through delegates.</item>
<item>I, Sicga, patrician, have subscribed with serene mind with the sign of the
Holy
  Cross.</item>
</list>
</p>

```

*Note* May contain an optional heading followed by a series of items, or a series of label and item pairs, the latter being optionally preceded by one or two specialized headings.

**<listApp>** (list of apparatus entries) contains a list of apparatus entries. [12.2. Linking the Apparatus to the Text]

*Module* textcrit

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.sortable (*@sortKey*) att.declarable (*@default*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

*Member of* model.listLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* abstract change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

*spoken:* writing

*textcrit:* lem listApp rdg witness

*textstructure:* argument back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*core:* head

*textcrit:* app listApp

*Declaration*

```

element listApp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( model.headLike*, ( app | listApp )+ )
}

```

*Example* In the following example from the exegetical Yasna, the base text is encoded in the <body> of the document, and two separate <listApp> elements are used in the <back>, containing variant readings written in different scripts.

```

<body>
<div>
  <lg rend="italic" type="stanza"
    xml:id="Y-36.01" xml:lang="pal-Avst">
    <l xml:id="Y-36.01_L-1">
      <w xml:id="Y-36.01_L1_W-01">ahiiā</w>
      <w xml:id="Y-36.01_L1_W-02">θβā</w>
      <w xml:id="Y-36.01_L1_W-03">āθrō</w>
      <w xml:id="Y-36.01_L1_W-04">vərəzēā</w>
      <w xml:id="Y-36.01_L1_W-05">paouruiiē</w>
      <w xml:id="Y-36.01_L1_W-06">pairijasāmaiδē</w>
      <w xml:id="Y-36.01_L1_W-07">mazdā</w>
      <w xml:id="Y-36.01_L1_W-08">ahurā</w>
    </l>
  </lg>
</div>
</body>
<!-- ... -->
<back>
<div>
  <listApp xml:id="CA_Y-36"
    xml:lang="pal-Avst">
    <head>Variants from witnesses in Avestan script</head>
    <app from="#Y-36.01_L1_W-01">
      <rdg wit="#Pt4 #F2 #J2 #M1">ahiiā</rdg>
    </app>
    <app from="#Y-36.01_L1_W-02">
      <rdg wit="#Pt4 #F2 #J2 #M1">θβā</rdg>
    </app>
    <app from="#Y-36.01_L1_W-03">
      <rdg wit="#Pt4 #J2 #M1">āθrō</rdg>
      <rdg wit="#F2">āθrōi</rdg>
    </app>
  </listApp>
  <listApp xml:id="CA_PY-36"
    xml:lang="pal-Phlv">
    <head>Variants from witnesses written in Pahlavi script</head>
    <app from="#PY-36.01_L1_W-01">
      <rdg wit="#Pt4 #F2 #J2 #M1">'ytnw'</rdg>
    </app>
    <app from="#PY-36.01_L1_W-02">
      <rdg wit="#Pt4 #F2 #J2 #M1">'w'</rdg>
    </app>
    <app from="#PY-36.01_L1_W-03">
      <rdg wit="#Pt4 #F2 #J2 #M1">ḥN'</rdg>
    </app>
  </listApp>
</div>
<!-- ... -->

```

```

</listApp>
</div>
</back>

```

*Note* <listApp> elements would normally be located in the <back> part of a document, but they may appear elsewhere.

**<listBibl>** (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind. [3.11.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2.7. The Source Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.declarable (@default) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.biblLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l listBibl meeting note orig p q quote ref reg relatedItem said sic stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additional additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout msItem msItemStruct musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

*namesdates:* climate event location org person personGrp place population state terrain trait

*spoken:* broadcast scriptStmnt writing

*textcrit:* lem rdg witness

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*core:* bibl biblStruct cb gb head lb listBibl milestone pb

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* textread

*header:* biblFull

*linking:* anchor

*msdescription:* msDesc

*namesdates:* listRelation relation

*transcr:* fw

*Declaration*

```

element listBibl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    ( model.biblLike | model.milestoneLike )+,
    ( relation | listRelation )*
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<listBibl>
  <head>Works consulted</head>
  <bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to
    Literature in English (Yale, 1990)
  </bibl>
  <biblStruct>
    <analytic>
      <title>The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>
    </analytic>
    <monogr>
      <title>The Penny Histories</title>
      <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>
      <imprint>
        <publisher>OUP</publisher>
        <date>1968</date>
      </imprint>
    </monogr>
  </biblStruct>
</listBibl>

```

---

**<listChange>** groups a number of change descriptions associated with either the creation of a source text or the revision of an encoded text. [2.5. The Revision Description 11.7. Changes]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) att.sortable ( @sortKey )

**Ordered** indicates whether the ordering of its child <change> elements is to be considered significant or not

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.truthValue

*Default* true

*Contained by:* creation listChange revisionDesc

May contain

header: change listChange

Declaration

```

element listChange
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  attribute ordered { data.truthValue }?,
  ( listChange | change )+
}

```

Example

```

<revisionDesc>
  <listChange>
    <change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change>
    <change when="1991-11-02" who="#MSM"> completed first draft </change>
  </listChange>
</revisionDesc>

```

Example

```

<profileDesc>
  <creation>
    <listChange ordered="true">
      <change xml:id="CHG-1">First stage, written in ink by a writer</change>
      <change xml:id="CHG-2">Second stage, written in Goethe's hand using
pencil</change>
      <change xml:id="CHG-3">Fixation of the revised passages and further revisions by
      Goethe using ink</change>
      <change xml:id="CHG-4">Addition of another stanza in a different hand,
      probably at a later stage</change>
    </listChange>
  </creation>
</profileDesc>

```

*Note* When this element appears within the <creation> element it documents the set of revision campaigns or stages identified during the evolution of the original text. When it appears within the <revisionDesc> element, it documents only changes made during the evolution of the encoded representation of that text.

---

**<listEvent>** (list of events) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable event. [13.3.1. Basic Principles]

Module namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declarable (@default) att.sortable (@sortKey)

*Member of* model.listLike model.persEventLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr  
*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view  
*figures:* cell figDesc figure  
*header:* abstract change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage  
typeNote  
*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
support surrogates  
*namesdates:* listEvent person personGrp  
*spoken:* writing  
*textcrit:* lem rdg witness  
*textstructure:* argument back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition  
epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* rhyme  
*May contain*  
*core:* head  
*namesdates:* event listEvent listRelation relation  
*Declaration*

```
element listEvent
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  ( model.headLike*, ( event | listEvent )+, ( relation | listRelation )* )
}
```

### Example

```
<listEvent>
<head>Battles of the American Civil War: Kentucky</head>
<event when="1861-09-19" xml:id="event01">
  <label>Barbourville</label>
  <desc>The Battle of Barbourville was one of the early engagements of
    the American Civil War. It occurred September 19, 1861, in Knox
    County, Kentucky during the campaign known as the Kentucky Confederate
    Offensive. The battle is considered the first Confederate victory in
    the commonwealth, and threw a scare into Federal commanders, who
    rushed troops to central Kentucky in an effort to repel the invasion,
    which was finally thwarted at the <ref target="#event02">Battle of
    Camp Wildcat</ref> in October.</desc>
</event>
<event when="1861-10-21" xml:id="event02">
  <label>Camp Wild Cat</label>
  <desc>The Battle of Camp Wildcat (also known as Wildcat Mountain and Camp
    Wild Cat) was one of the early engagements of the American Civil
    War. It occurred October 21, 1861, in northern Laurel County, Kentucky
    during the campaign known as the Kentucky Confederate Offensive. The
    battle is considered one of the very first Union victories, and marked
    the first engagement of troops in the commonwealth of Kentucky.</desc>
</event>
```

```

<event from="1864-06-11" to="1864-06-12"
  xml:id="event03">
  <label>Cynthiana</label>
  <desc>The Battle of Cynthiana (or Kellar's Bridge) was an engagement
    during the American Civil War that was fought on June 11 and 12, 1864,
    in Harrison County, Kentucky, near the town of Cynthiana. A part of
    Confederate Brigadier General John Hunt Morgan's 1864 Raid into
    Kentucky, the battle resulted in a victory by Union forces over the
    raiders and saved the town from capture.</desc>
</event>
</listEvent>

```

**<listForest>** provides for lists of forests. [19.3. Another Tree Notation]

*Module* nets

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

**@type** identifies the type of the forest group.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Member of* model.divPart

*Contained by*

*core:* item note q quote said stage

*drama:* castList epilogue performance prologue set view

*figures:* cell figure

*header:* change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
 filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
 support surrogates

*tagdocs:* specGrp

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph postscript

*transcr:* metamark

*May contain*

*nets:* forest

*Declaration*

```

element listForest
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  forest+
}

```

*Example*

```

<listForest>
  <forest type="derivation-syntactic">
    <tree ord="true">
      <root children="#fgex1 #fgex2"/>
    <!-- ... -->
  </forest>
</listForest>

```

```

</tree>
<!-- ... -->
</forest>
<forest type="derivation-prosodic">
  <tree ord="true">
    <root children="#fgex3 #fgex4"/>
  <!-- ... -->
  </tree>
<!-- ... -->
</forest>
</listForest>

```

*Note* One or more forests representing the same object.

---

**<listNym>** (list of canonical names) contains a list of nyms, that is, standardized names for any thing. [13.3.5. Names and Nyms]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declarable (@default) att.sortable (@sortKey)

*Member of* model.listLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* abstract change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

*namesdates:* listNym

*spoken:* writing

*textcrit:* lem rdg witness

*textstructure:* argument back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*core:* head

*namesdates:* listNym listRelation nym relation



*Declaration*

```

element listNym
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  ( model.headLike*, ( nym | listNym )+, ( relation | listRelation )* )
}

```

*Example*

```

<listNym type="floral">
  <nym xml:id="ROSE">
    <form>Rose</form>
  </nym>
  <nym xml:id="DAISY">
    <form>Daisy</form>
    <etym>Contraction of <mentioned>day's eye</mentioned>
  </etym>
  </nym>
  <nym xml:id="HTHR">
    <form>Heather</form>
  </nym>
</listNym>

```

*Note* The type attribute may be used to distinguish lists of names of a particular type if convenient.

**<listOrg>** (list of organizations) contains a list of elements, each of which provides information about an identifiable organization. [13.2.2. Organizational Names]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 ( att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition ) ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select ) ) ( att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) ( att.global.change ( @change ) )  
 ( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) ) att.typed ( @type, @subtype ) att.declarable  
 ( @default ) att.sortable ( @sortKey )

*Member of* model.listLike model.orgPart

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic  
 sp stage title unclear

*corpus:* particDesc

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* abstract change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage  
 typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
 filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
 support surrogates  
*namesdates:* listOrg org  
*spoken:* writing  
*textcrit:* lem rdg witness  
*textstructure:* argument back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition  
 epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* rhyme  
*May contain*  
*core:* head  
*namesdates:* listOrg listRelation org relation  
*Declaration*

```

element listOrg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  ( model.headLike*, ( org | listOrg )+, ( relation | listRelation )* )
}

```

*Example*

```

<listOrg>
  <head>Libyans</head>
  <org>
    <orgName>Adyrmachidae</orgName>
    <desc>These people have, in most points, the same customs as the Egyptians, but
      use the costume of the Libyans. Their women wear on each leg a ring made of
      bronze [...]</desc>
  </org>
  <org>
    <orgName>Nasamonians</orgName>
    <desc>In summer they leave their flocks and herds upon the sea-shore, and go up
      the country to a place called Augila, where they gather the dates from the
      palms [...]</desc>
  </org>
  <org>
    <orgName>Garamantians</orgName>
    <desc>[...] avoid all society or intercourse with their fellow-men, have no
      weapon of war, and do not know how to defend themselves. [...]</desc>
  <!-- ... -->
</org>
</listOrg>

```

*Note* The type attribute may be used to distinguish lists of organizations of a particular type if convenient.

---

**<listPerson>** (list of persons) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable person or a group of people, for example the participants in a language interaction, or the people referred to in a historical source. [13.3.2. The Person Element 15.2. Contextual Information 2.4. The Profile Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declarable  
 (@default) att.sortable (@sortKey)

*Member of* model.listLike model.orgPart

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic  
 sp stage title unclear

*corpus:* particDesc

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* abstract change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage  
 typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
 filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
 support surrogates

*namesdates:* listPerson org

*spoken:* writing

*textcrit:* lem rdg witness

*textstructure:* argument back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition  
 epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*core:* head

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* addressee listener reader sender textread

*namesdates:* listPerson listRelation org person personGrp relation

*Declaration*

```

element listPerson
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    ( model.personLike | listPerson )+,
    ( relation | listRelation )*
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<listPerson type="respondents">
  <personGrp xml:id="PXXX"/>
  <person age="mid" sex="2" xml:id="P1234"/>
  <person age="mid" sex="1" xml:id="P4332"/>
  <listRelation>
    <relation mutual="#P1234 #P4332"
      name="spouse" type="personal"/>
  </listRelation>
</listPerson>

```

*Note* The type attribute may be used to distinguish lists of people of a particular type if convenient.

---

**<listPlace>** (list of places) contains a list of places, optionally followed by a list of relationships (other than containment) defined amongst them. [2.2.7. The Source Description 13.3.4. Places]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*)  
 (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic  
 (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))  
 (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.declarable  
 (*@default*) att.sortable (*@sortKey*)

*Member of* model.listLike model.orgPart

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic  
 sp stage title unclear

*corpus:* settingDesc

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* abstract change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage  
 typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
 filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
 support surrogates

*namesdates:* listPlace org place

*spoken:* writing

*textcrit:* lem rdg witness

*textstructure:* argument back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition  
 epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*core:* head

*namesdates:* listPlace listRelation place relation

*Declaration*

```

element listPlace
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    ( model.placeLike | listPlace )+,
    ( relation | listRelation )*
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<listPlace type="offshoreIslands">
  <place>
    <placeName>La roche qui pleure</placeName>
  </place>
  <place>
    <placeName>Ile aux cerfs</placeName>
  </place>
</listPlace>

```

**<listPrefixDef>** (list of prefix definitions) contains a list of definitions of prefixing schemes used in `data.pointer` values, showing how abbreviated URIs using each scheme may be expanded into full URIs. [16.2.3. Using Abbreviated Pointers]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))

*Member of* model.encodingDescPart

*Contained by*

*header:* encodingDesc listPrefixDef

*May contain*

*header:* listPrefixDef prefixDef

*Declaration*

```

element listPrefixDef
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( prefixDef | listPrefixDef )+ )
}

```

*Example* In this example, two private URI scheme prefixes are defined and patterns are provided for dereferencing them. Each prefix is also supplied with a human-readable explanation in a <p> element.

```

<listPrefixDef>
  <prefixDef ident="psn"
    matchPattern="([A-Z]+)"
    replacementPattern="personography.xml#$1">

```

```
<p> Private URIs using the <code>psn</code>
  prefix are pointers to <gi>person</gi>
  elements in the personography.xml file.
  For example, <code>psn:MDH</code>
  dereferences to <code>personography.xml#MDH</code>.
</p>
</prefixDef>
<prefixDef ident="bibl"
  matchPattern="([a-z]+[a-z0-9]*)"
  replacementPattern="http://www.example.com/getBibl.xql?id=$1">
  <p> Private URIs using the <code>bibl</code> prefix can be
    expanded to form URIs which retrieve the relevant
    bibliographical reference from www.example.com.
  </p>
</prefixDef>
</listPrefixDef>
```

---

**<listRef>** (list of references) supplies a list of significant references to places where this element is discussed, in the current document or elsewhere.

*Module tagdocs*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.oddDecl

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic  
stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
support surrogates

*spoken:* writing

*tagdocs:* classSpec elementSpec macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specGrp

*textcrit:* lem rdg witness

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*core:* ptr

*Declaration*

```
element listRef { att.global.attributes, ptr+ }
```

*Example*

```
<listRef>
  <ptr target="#ddc12"/>
</listRef>
```

**<listRelation>** provides information about relationships identified amongst people, places, and organizations, either informally as prose or as formally expressed relation links. [13.3.2.3. Personal Relationships]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space ) (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change )) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) att.typed ( @type, @subtype ) att.sortable ( @sortKey )

*Member of* model.biblPart

*Contained by*

*core:* bibl listBibl

*namesdates:* listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation

*May contain*

*core:* head p

*linking:* ab

*namesdates:* listRelation relation

*Declaration*

```
element listRelation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  ( model.headLike*, ( model.pLike | ( relation | listRelation )+ ) )
}
```

*Example*

```
<listPerson>
  <person xml:id="pp1">
<!-- data about person pp1 -->
  </person>
  <person xml:id="pp2">
<!-- data about person pp1 -->
  </person>
<!-- more person (pp3, pp4) elements here -->
</listPerson>
<listRelation type="personal">
  <relation active="#pp1 #pp2" name="parent"
    passive="#pp3 #pp4"/>
  <relation mutual="#pp1 #pp2" name="spouse"/>
</listRelation>
<listRelation type="social">
```

```
<relation active="#pp1" name="employer"
passive="#pp3 #pp5 #pp6 #pp7"/>
</listRelation>
```

The persons with identifiers pp1 and p2 are the parents of pp3 and pp4; they are also married to each other; pp1 is the employer of pp3, pp5, pp6, and pp7.

*Example*

```
<listRelation>
<p>All speakers are members of the Ceruli family, born in Naples.</p>
</listRelation>
```

*Note* May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of <relation> elements.

---

**<listTranspose>** supplies a list of transpositions, each of which is indicated at some point in a document typically by means of metamarks. [11.3.4.5. Transpositions]

*Module* transcr

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.global.meta model.profileDescPart

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal profileDesc scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality



occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence  
roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
surfaceGrp surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*transcr:* transpose

*Declaration*

```
element listTranspose { att.global.attributes, transpose+ }
```

*Example*

```
<listTranspose>
  <transpose>
    <ptr target="#ib02"/>
    <ptr target="#ib01"/>
  </transpose>
</listTranspose>
```

This example might be used for a source document which indicates in some way that the elements identified by **ib02** and code **ib01** should be read in that order (ib02 followed by ib01), rather than in the reading order in which they are presented in the source.

---

<listWit> (witness list) lists definitions for all the witnesses referred to by a critical apparatus, optionally grouped hierarchically. [12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses]

*Module* textcrit

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.sortable (@sortKey)

*Member of* model.listLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic  
sp stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* abstract change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage  
 typeNote  
*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
 filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
 support surrogates  
*spoken:* writing  
*textcrit:* lem listWit rdg witness  
*textstructure:* argument back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition  
 epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* rhyme  
*May contain*  
*core:* head  
*textcrit:* listWit witness  
*Declaration*

```

element listWit
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  ( model.headLike?, ( witness | listWit )+ )
}

```

## Example

```

<listWit>
  <witness xml:id="HL26">Ellesmere, Huntingdon Library 26.C.9</witness>
  <witness xml:id="PN392">Hengwrt, National Library of Wales,
    Aberystwyth, Peniarth 392D</witness>
  <witness xml:id="RP149">Bodleian Library Rawlinson Poetic 149
    (see further <ptr target="#MSRP149"/>)</witness>
</listWit>

```

*Note* May contain a series of <witness> or <listWit> elements. The provision of a <listWit> element simplifies the automatic processing of the apparatus, e.g. the reconstruction of the readings for all witnesses from an exhaustive apparatus. Situations commonly arise where there are many more or less fragmentary witnesses, such that there may be quite distinct groups of witnesses for different parts of a text or collection of texts. Such groups may be given separately, or nested within a single <listWit> element at the beginning of the file listing all the witnesses, partial and complete, for the text, with the attestation of fragmentary witnesses indicated within the apparatus by use of the <witStart/> and <witEnd/> elements described in section 12.1.5. Fragmentary Witnesses. Note however that a given witness can only be defined once, and can therefore only appear within a single <listWit> element.

---

**<listener>** Contains all the information on the listener.

*Namespace* <http://readingexp.univ-lemans.fr/tei>

*Module* derived-module-tei\_readingExp

*Attributes* *Attributes* att.dateable (@calendar, @period) (att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.dateable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.dateable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod) att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.source (@source)) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) att.source (@source) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.canonical (~~@ref~~, @key, @key) att.personal (@full, @sort) att.naming (@role, @nymRef)

**@ref** (reference) Reference

*Derived from* att.canonical

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 0–1 occurrences of **data.text** separated by whitespace

**@ref** (reference) Reference

*Derived from* att.canonical

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 0–1 occurrences of **data.text** separated by whitespace

**@ref** Reference

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 0–1 occurrences of **data.text** separated by whitespace

*Member of* model.nameLike model.personLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr span

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale particDesc preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExp readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition

extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote  
sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown listPerson nameLink  
nationality occupation offset org orgName persName placeName region residence  
roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* listenerStatus

*namesdates:* birth country education faith nationality occupation persName sex

*Declaration*

```
element listener
{
  att.canonical.attribute.key,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.dataable.custom.attributes,
  att.dataable.iso.attributes,
  att.dataable.w3c.attributes,
  att.dimensions.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.analytic.attributes,
  att.global.change.attributes,
  att.global.facs.attributes,
  att.global.linking.attributes,
  att.global.rendition.attributes,
  att.global.responsibility.attributes,
  att.personal.attribute.full,
  att.personal.attribute.sort,
  att.naming.attribute.role,
  att.naming.attribute.nymRef,
  att.canonical.attribute.key,
  att.ranging.attributes,
  att.source.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute ref { data.text }?,
  attribute ref { data.text }?,
  attribute ref { data.text }?,
  (
    persName*,
    sex*,
    birth*,
    occupation*,
```

```

        country*,
        education*,
        faith*,
        nationality*,
        listenerStatus*
    )
}
```

**<listenerStatus>** Contains information on the degree of professionalism of the listener in his reading activities.

*Namespace* `http://readingexp.univ-lemans.fr/tei`

*Module* `derived-module-tei_readingExp`

*Attributes* `Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))`

*Contained by*

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* `listener`

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration* `element listenerStatus { att.global.attributes, empty }`

**<localName>** (locally-defined property name) contains a locally defined name for some property. [5.2.1. Character Properties]

*Module* `gaiji`

*Attributes* `Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))`

*Contained by*

*gaiji:* `charProp`

*May contain* Character data only

*Declaration* `element localName { att.global.attributes, text }`

*Example*

```

<localName>daikanwa</localName>
<localName>entity</localName>
```

*Note* No definitive list of local names is proposed. However, the name entity is recommended as a means of naming the property identifying the recommended character entity name for this character or glyph.

**<locale>** contains a brief informal description of the kind of place concerned, for example: a room, a restaurant, a park bench, etc. [15.2.3. The Setting Description]

*Module* `corpus`

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.settingPart

*Contained by*

*corpus:* setting

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index  
 lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled  
 term time title

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident tag val

*textcrit:* witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst  
 substJoin

*Declaration*

<pre>element locale { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }</pre>
--

*Example*

```
<locale>a fashionable restaurant</locale>
```

---

**<location>** defines the location of a place as a set of geographical coordinates, in terms of other named geo-political entities, or as an address. [13.3.4. Places]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) att.typed ( @type, @subtype) att.dataable  
 ( @calendar, @period) (att.dataable.w3c ( @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from,  
 @to)) (att.dataable.iso ( @when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso,

*@to-iso*) (att.datable.custom (*@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*,  
*@notAfter-custom*, *@from-custom*, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*, *@datingMethod*))  
att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*,  
*@precision*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*)) )  
(att.source (*@source*))

*Member of* model.placeStateLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc  
distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l  
label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote  
ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition  
extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote  
sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
occupation offset org orgName persName placeName placeName region residence  
roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*core:* address bibl biblStruct desc email label listBibl measure measureGrp note num

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* textread

*header:* biblFull

*msdescription:* depth dim height msDesc width

*namesdates:* affiliation bloc country district geo geogFeat geogName offset placeName  
region settlement

*textcrit:* witDetail

*Declaration*

```

element location
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  (
    model.labelLike      | model.placeNamePart      | model.offsetLike      | model.measureLi
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<place>
  <placeName>Abbey Dore</placeName>
  <location>
    <geo>51.969604 -2.893146</geo>
  </location>
</place>

```

*Example*

```

<place type="building">
  <placeName>Brasserie Georges</placeName>
  <location>
    <country key="FR"/>
    <settlement type="city">Lyon</settlement>
    <district type="arrondissement">Perrache</district>
    <placeName type="street">Rue de la Charité</placeName>
  </location>
</place>

```

*Example*

```

<place type="imaginary">
  <placeName>Atlantis</placeName>
  <location>
    <offset>beyond</offset>
    <placeName>The Pillars of <persName>Hercules</persName>
  </placeName>
  </location>
</place>

```

---

**<locus>** defines a location within a manuscript or manuscript part, usually as a (possibly discontinuous) sequence of folio references. [10.3.5. References to Locations within a Manuscript]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)

**@scheme** identifies the foliation scheme in terms of which the location is being specified by pointing to some <foliation> element defining it, or to some other equivalent resource.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer



**@from** specifies the starting point of the location in a normalized form, typically a page number.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.word

**@to** specifies the end-point of the location in a normalized form, typically as a page number.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.word

*Member of* model.pPart.msdesc

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout locusGrp material msItem msItemStruct musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*gaiji:* g

*Declaration*

element locus
---------------

```
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  attribute scheme { data.pointer }?,
  attribute from { data.word }?,
  attribute to { data.word }?,
  macro.xtext}
```

*Example*

```
<!-- within ms description --><msItem n="1">
  <locus from="1r" target="#F1r #F1v #F2r"
    to="2r">ff. 1r-2r</locus>
  <author>Ben Jonson</author>
  <title>Ode to himself</title>
  <rubric rend="italics">An Ode<lb/> to him selfe.</rubric>
  <incipit>Com leaue the loathed stage</incipit>
  <explicit>And see his chariot triumph ore his wayne.</explicit>
  <bibl>
    <name>Beal</name>, <title>Index 1450-1625</title>, JnB 380</bibl>
</msItem>
<!-- within transcription ... -->
<pb xml:id="F1r"/>
<!-- ... -->
<pb xml:id="F1v"/>
<!-- ... -->
<pb xml:id="F2r"/>
<!-- ... -->
```

*Example* The *facs* attribute is available globally when the *transcr* module is included in a schema. It may be used to point directly to an image file, as in the following example:

```
<msItem>
  <locus facs="images/08v.jpg images/09r.jpg images/09v.jpg images/10r.jpg images/
10v.jpg">fols. 8v-10v</locus>
  <title>Birds Praise of Love</title>
  <bibl>
    <title>IMEV</title>
    <biblScope>1506</biblScope>
  </bibl>
</msItem>
```

*Note* The *target* attribute should only be used to point to elements that contain or indicate a transcription of the locus being described, as in the first example above. To associate a *<locus>* element with a page image or other comparable representation, the global *facs* attribute should be used instead, as shown in the second example. Use of the *target* attribute to indicate an image is strongly deprecated. The *facs* attribute may be used to indicate one or more image files, as above, or alternatively it may point to one or more appropriate XML elements, such as the *<surface>*, *<zone>* element, *<graphic>*, or *<binaryObject>* elements.

*Note* When the location being defined consists of a single page, use the *from* and *to* attributes with an identical value. When no clear endpoint is given the *from* attribute should be used without *to*. For example, if the manuscript description being transcribed has ‘p. 3ff’ as the locus.

---

**<locusGrp>** groups a number of locations which together form a distinct but discontinuous item within a manuscript or manuscript part, according to a specific foliation. [10.3.5. References to Locations within a Manuscript]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

**@scheme** identifies the foliation scheme in terms of which all the locations  
 contained by the group are specified by pointing to some <foliation>  
 element defining it, or to some other equivalent resource.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

*Member of* model.pPart.msdesc

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor  
 email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure  
 meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs  
 said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
 preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder  
 geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage  
 typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material msItem msItemStruct musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin  
 provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates  
 watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
 settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*msdescription:* locus

*Declaration*

```
element locusGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute scheme { data.pointer }?,
  locus+
}
```

*Example*

```
<msItem>
  <locusGrp>
    <locus from="13" to="26">Bl. 13--26</locus>
    <locus from="37" to="58">37--58</locus>
    <locus from="82" to="96">82--96</locus>
  </locusGrp>
  <note>Stücke von Daniel Ecklin's Reise ins h. Land</note>
</msItem>
```

---

**<m>** (morpheme) represents a grammatical morpheme. [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]

*Module analysis*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.segLike (@function) (att.metrical (@met, @real, @rhyme)) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

**@baseForm** supplies the morpheme's base form.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.word

*Member of* model.segLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit  
forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset  
orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex  
socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c interp interpGrp m span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* cb gap gb index lb milestone note pb

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*textcrit:* witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```
element m
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute baseForm { data.word }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | seg | m | c | model.global )*
}
```

*Example*

```
<w type="adjective">
  <w type="noun">
    <m baseForm="con" type="prefix">com</m>
    <m type="root">fort</m>
  </w>
  <m type="suffix">able</m>
</w>
```

*Note* The *type* attribute may be used to indicate the type of morpheme, taking values such as clitic, prefix, stem, etc. as appropriate.

<macroRef/> points to the specification for some pattern which is to be included in a schema [22.4.7. Pattern Documentation]

*Module tagdocs*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,

*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*)) (*att.global.change* (*@change*)) (*att.global.responsibility* (*@cert*, *@resp*)) *att.readFrom* (*@source*)

**@key** the identifier used for the required pattern within the source indicated.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* data.xmlName

*Member of* model.contentPart model.oddRef

*Contained by*

*tagdocs*: alternate content datatype schemaSpec sequence specGrp

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element macroRef
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.readFrom.attributes,
  attribute key { data.xmlName },
  empty
}
```

*Example*

```
<schemaSpec ident="myTEI"
  source="http://www.tei-c.org/Vault/P5/current/xml/tei/odd/p5subset.xml">
<!-- ... -->
<macroRef key="data.text"
  source="tei:1.5.0"/>
<!-- ... -->
</schemaSpec>
```

*Note* Patterns or macros are identified by the name supplied as value for the *ident* attribute on the `<macroSpec>` element in which they are declared. All TEI macro names are unique.

---

**<macroSpec>** (macro specification) documents the function and implementation of a pattern. [22.3. Specification Elements 22.4.7. Pattern Documentation]

*Module* tagdocs

*Attributes* *Attributes* *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (*att.global.rendition* (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (*att.global.linking* (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*)) (*att.global.change* (*@change*)) (*att.global.responsibility* (*@cert*, *@resp*)) *att.identified* (*@ident*, *@predeclare*, *@module*, *@status*) (*att.combinable* (*@mode*) (*att.deprecated* (*@validUntil*)) )

**@type** indicates which type of entity should be generated, when an ODD processor is generating a module using XML DTD syntax.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Legal values are*: **pe** (parameter entity)

**dt** (datatype entity)

*Member of* model.oddDecl

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic  
stage title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr  
*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view  
*figures:* cell figDesc figure  
*header:* change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote  
*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
support surrogates  
*spoken:* writing  
*tagdocs:* schemaSpec specGrp  
*textcrit:* lem rdg witness  
*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* rhyme  
*May contain*  
*core:* desc gloss  
*tagdocs:* altIdent constraintSpec content equiv exemplum listRef remarks vallList  
*Declaration*

```

element macroSpec
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.identified.attributes,
  attribute type { "pe" | "dt" }?,
  (
    ( model.glossLike | model.descLike )*,
    ( content | vallist )*,
    constraintSpec*,
    exemplum*,
    remarks*,
    listRef*
  )
}

```

#### Example

```

<macroSpec ident="macro.phraseSeq"
  module="tei" type="pe">
  <content>
    <rng:zeroOrMore>
      <rng:choice>
        <rng:text/>
        <rng:ref name="model.gLike"/>
        <rng:ref name="model.phrase"/>
        <rng:ref name="model.global"/>
      </rng:choice>
    </rng:zeroOrMore>
  </content>
</macroSpec>

```

**<mapping>** (character mapping) contains one or more characters which are related to the parent character or glyph in some respect, as specified by the *type* attribute. [5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs]

*Module* gaiji

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

*Contained by*

*gaiji*: char glyph

*May contain*

*gaiji*: g

*Declaration*

```
element mapping { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, macro.xtext }
```

*Example*

```
<mapping type="modern">r</mapping>
<mapping type="standard">□</mapping>
```

*Note* Suggested values for the *type* attribute include **exact** for exact equivalences, **uppercase** for uppercase equivalences, **lowercase** for lowercase equivalences, and **simplified** for simplified characters. The <g> elements contained by this element can point to either another <char> or <glyph> element or contain a character that is intended to be the target of this mapping.

---

**<material>** contains a word or phrase describing the material of which the object being described is composed. [10.3.2. Material and Object Type]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*)

*Member of* model.pPart.msdesc

*Contained by*

*analysis*: cl phr s span

*core*: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus*: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp*: readingExpRef

*dictionaries*: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr



*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view  
*figures:* cell figDesc  
*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder  
 geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage  
 typeNote  
*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
 settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element material
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

*Example*

```

<physDesc>
  <p>
    <material>Parchment</material> leaves with a
    <material>sharkskin</material> binding.</p>
</physDesc>

```

*Note* The *ref* attribute may be used to point to one or more items within a taxonomy of types of material, defined either internally or externally.

---

**<measure>** contains a word or phrase referring to some quantity of an object or commodity, usually comprising a number, a unit, and a commodity name. [3.5.3. Numbers and Measures]

*Module core*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.measurement (@unit, @quantity, @commodity)

**@type** specifies the type of measurement in any convenient typology.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Member of* model.measureLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure measureGrp meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink  
 nationality occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence  
 roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element measure
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.measurement.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.phraseSeq
}

```

*Example*

```
<measure type="weight">
  <num>2</num> pounds of flesh
</measure>
<measure type="currency">£10-11-6d</measure>
<measure type="area">2 merks of old extent</measure>
```

*Example*

```
<measure commodity="rum" quantity="40"
  unit="hogshead">2 score hh rum</measure>
<measure commodity="roses" quantity="12"
  unit="count">1 doz. roses</measure>
<measure commodity="tulips" quantity="1"
  unit="count">a yellow tulip</measure>
```

---

**<measureGrp>** (measure group) contains a group of dimensional specifications which relate to the same object, for example the height and width of a manuscript page. [10.3.4. Dimensions]

*Module core*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.measurement (@unit, @quantity, @commodity) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.measureLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure measureGrp meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith

floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink  
 nationality occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence  
 roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*core:* measure measureGrp num

*gaiji:* g

*msdescription:* depth dim height width

*namesdates:* geo

*Declaration*

```

element measureGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.measurement.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.measureLike ) *
}

```

*Example*

```

<measureGrp type="leaves" unit="mm">
  <height scope="range">157-160</height>
  <width quantity="105"/>
</measureGrp>
<measureGrp type="ruledArea" unit="mm">
  <height quantity="90" scope="most"/>
  <width quantity="48" scope="most"/>
</measureGrp>
<measureGrp type="box" unit="in">
  <height quantity="12"/>
  <width quantity="10"/>
  <depth quantity="6"/>
</measureGrp>

```

<media> indicates the location of any form of external media such as an audio or video clip etc. [3.9. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components]

*Module core*

*Attributes* Attributes att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.resourced (@url) att.declaring (@decls) att.timed (@start, @end) (att.duration (att.duration.w3c (@dur)) (att.duration.iso (@dur-iso)) ) att.media (@width, @height, @scale) @mimeType (MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet mail extension (MIME) media type

*Derived from* att.internetMedia

*Status* Required

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

*Member of* model.graphicLike model.recordingPart

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email  
emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure  
mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic  
soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figure formula table

*gaiji:* char glyph

*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit  
forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset  
orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex  
socecStatus surname

*spoken:* recording u writing

*tagdocs:* eg

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage facsimile fw metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
surplus zone

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*core:* desc

*Declaration*

```
element media
{
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.media.attribute.width,
  att.media.attribute.height,
  att.media.attribute.scale,
  att.resourced.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.timed.attributes,
  attribute mimeType { list { data.word+ } },
}
```

```

    model.descLike*
}

```

*Example*

```

<figure>
  <media mimeType="image/png" url="fig1.png"/>
  <head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head>
  <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the foreground,
  and a
    series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
</figure>

```

*Example*

```

<media dur="PT10S" mimeType="audio/wav"
  url="dingDong.wav">
  <desc>Ten seconds of bellringing sound</desc>
</media>

```

*Example*

```

<media dur="PT45M" mimeType="video/mp4"
  url="clip45.mp4" width="500px">
  <desc>A 45 minute video clip to be displayed in a window 500
  px wide</desc>
</media>

```

*Note* The attributes available for this element are not appropriate in all cases. For example, it makes no sense to specify the temporal duration of a graphic. Such errors are not currently detected. The *mimeType* attribute must be used to specify the MIME media type of the resource specified by the *url* attribute.

---

**<meeting>** contains the formalized descriptive title for a meeting or conference, for use in a bibliographic description for an item derived from such a meeting, or as a heading or preamble to publications emanating from it. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors]

*Module core*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)

*Member of* model.divWrapper model.respLike

*Contained by*

*core:* bibl lg list monogr

*drama:* castList epilogue performance prologue

*figures:* figure table

*header:* editionStmt titleStmt

*msdescription:* msItem

*textstructure:* body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group

*May contain*

*core:* abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref rs said soCalled stage term time title

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp*: listener reader readingExpRef textread  
*dictionaries*: lang  
*drama*: camera caption castList move sound tech view  
*figures*: table  
*header*: biblFull idno  
*msdescription*: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates*: addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait  
*tagdocs*: att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specGrp specGrpRef tag val  
*textcrit*: listApp listWit  
*textstructure*: floatingText  
*transcr*: am ex subst  
*Declaration*

```

element meeting
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  macro.limitedContent}

```

*Example*

```

<div>
  <meeting>Ninth International Conference on Middle High German Textual Criticism,
  Aachen,
    June 1998.</meeting>
  <list type="attendance">
    <head>List of Participants</head>
    <item>
      <persName>...</persName>
    </item>
    <item>
      <persName>...</persName>
    </item>
  <!--.....>
</list>
<p>...</p>
</div>

```

---

**<memberOf>** specifies class membership of the documented element or class. [22.4.3. Classification of Components]

*Module* tagdocs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))  
**@key** specifies the identifier for a class of which the documented element or class  
is a member or subclass



*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.name`

**@mode** specifies the effect of this declaration on its parent module.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.enumerated`

*Legal values are:* **add** this declaration is added to the current definitions[Default]

**delete** this declaration and all of its children are removed from the current setup

**@max** supplies the maximum number of times the element can occur in elements which use this model class in their content model

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.numeric`

**@min** supplies the minumum number of times the element must occur in elements which use this model class in their content model

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.numeric`

*Contained by:* classes

*May contain*

*gaiji:* g

*Declaration*

```
element memberOf
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute key { data.name }?,
  attribute mode { "add" | "delete" }?,
  attribute max { data.numeric }?,
  attribute min { data.numeric }?,
  macro.xtext}
```

*Example*

```
<memberOf key="model.divLike"/>
<memberOf key="att.identified"/>
```

This element will appear in any content model which references `model.divLike`, and will have attributes defined in `att.identified` (in addition to any defined explicitly for this element).

*Note* Elements or classes which are members of multiple (unrelated) classes will have more than one `<memberOf>` element, grouped by a `<classes>` element. If an element is a member of a class C1, which is itself a subclass of a class C2, there is no need to state this, other than in the documentation for class C1. Any additional comment or explanation of the class membership may be provided as content for this element.

---

<mentioned> marks words or phrases mentioned, not used. [3.3.3. Quotation]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.rendition` (`@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`)) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic`

(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))  
*Member of* model.emphLike  
*Contained by*  
*analysis:* cl phr s span  
*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct  
 editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label  
 measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref  
 reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  
*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
 preparedness purpose  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr  
*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view  
*figures:* cell figDesc  
*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder  
 geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage  
 typeNote  
*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
 settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno

*iso-fs*: fLib fs fvLib

*linking*: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription*: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates*: addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken*: incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs*: att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit*: app witDetail

*transcr*: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse*: caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element mentioned { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

*Example*

There is thus a striking accentual difference between a verbal form like  
 <mentioned xml:id="X234" xml:lang="el">eluthemen</mentioned>  
 <gloss target="#X234">we were released,</gloss> accented on the second syllable of  
 the  
 word, and its participial derivative  
 <mentioned xml:id="X235" xml:lang="el">lutheis</mentioned>  
 <gloss target="#X235">released,</gloss> accented on the last.

<metDecl> (metrical notation declaration) documents the notation employed to represent a metrical pattern when this is specified as the value of a *met*, *real*, or *rhyme* attribute on any structural element of a metrical text (e.g. <lg>, <l>, or <seg>). [6.6. Metrical Notation Declaration 6.4. Rhyme and Metrical Analysis]

*Module* verse

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.declarable (@default)

**@type** indicates whether the notation conveys the abstract metrical form, its actual prosodic realization, or the rhyme scheme, or some combination thereof.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–3 occurrences of **data.enumerated** separated by whitespace

*Legal values are:* **met** (met attribute) declaration applies to the abstract metrical form recorded on the *met* attribute

**real** (real attribute) declaration applies to the actual realization of the conventional metrical structure recorded on the *real* attribute

**rhyme** declaration applies to the rhyme scheme recorded on the *rhyme* attribute

*Note* By default, the <metDecl> element documents the notation used for metrical pattern and realization. It may also be used to document the notation used for rhyme scheme information; if not otherwise documented, the rhyme scheme notation defaults to the traditional ‘abab’ notation.

**@pattern** (regular expression pattern) specifies a regular expression defining any value that is legal for this notation.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pattern

*Note* The value must be a valid regular expression per the World Wide Web Consortium's *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*, Appendix F

*Member of* model.encodingDescPart

*Contained by*

*header:* encodingDesc

*May contain*

*core:* note p

*linking:* ab

*textcrit:* witDetail

*verse:* metSym

*Declaration*

```
element metDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  attribute type
  {
    list
    {
      ( "met" | "real" | "rhyme" ),
      ( "met" | "real" | "rhyme" )?,
      ( "met" | "real" | "rhyme" )?
    }
  }?,
  attribute pattern { data.pattern }?,
  ( ( model.pLike | model.noteLike )+ | metSym+ )
}
```

*Example*

```
<metDecl pattern="((SU|US)USUSUSUS/)"
  type="met" xml:id="ip">
  <metSym value="S">stressed syllable</metSym>
  <metSym value="U">unstressed syllable</metSym>
  <metSym value="/">metrical line boundary</metSym>
</metDecl>
```

This example is intended for the far more restricted case typified by the Shakespearean iambic pentameter. Only metrical patterns containing exactly ten syllables, alternately stressed and unstressed, (except for the first two which may be in either order) to each metrical line can be expressed using this notation.

*Note* The encoder may choose whether to define the notation formally or informally. However, the two methods may not be mixed. That is, <metDecl> may contain either a sequence of <metSym> elements or, alternately, a series of paragraphs or

other components. If the *pattern* attribute is specified and <metSym> elements are used, then all the codes appearing within the *pattern* attribute should be documented. Only usable within the header if the verse module is used.

**<metSym>** (metrical notation symbol) documents the intended significance of a particular character or character sequence within a metrical notation, either explicitly or in terms of other symbol elements in the same metDecl. [6.6. Metrical Notation Declaration]

*Module* verse

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

**@value** specifies the character or character sequence being documented.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of **data.word** separated by whitespace

**@terminal** specifies whether the symbol is defined in terms of other symbols (*terminal* is set to false) or in prose (*terminal* is set to true).

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.truthValue**

*Default* true

*Note* The value true indicates that the element contains a prose definition of its meaning; the value false indicates that the element contains a definition of its meaning given using symbols defined elsewhere in the same <metDecl> element.

*Contained by:* metDecl

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident tag val

*textcrit:* witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst  
substJoin

*Declaration*

```

element metSym
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute value { list { data.word+ } },
  attribute terminal { data.truthValue }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

*Example*

```

<metSym value="x">a stressed syllable</metSym>
<metSym value="o">an unstressed syllable</metSym>
<metSym terminal="false" value="A">xoo</metSym>

```

---

**<metamark>** contains or describes any kind of graphic or written signal within a document the function of which is to determine how it should be read rather than forming part of the actual content of the document. [11.3.4.2. Metamarks]

*Module* transcr

*Attributes* Attributes att.spanning (@spanTo) att.placement (@place) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

**@function** describes the function (for example status, insertion, deletion, transposition) of the mark.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.word

**@target** identifies one or more elements to which the function indicated by the metamark applies.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

*Member of* model.global

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg  
xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue  
 role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view  
*figures:* cell figure table  
*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote  
 language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance  
 rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence  
 roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*nets:* graph  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail  
*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
 front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
 surfaceGrp surplus zone  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
 distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
 listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb  
 ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* biblFull idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
 offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
 surname terrain trait  
*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```
element metamark
{
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute function { data.word }?,
  attribute target { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  macro.specialPara}

```

---

**<milestone/>** marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element. [3.10.3. Milestone Elements]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.milestoneUnit (@unit) att.typed (@type,  
@subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break)

*Member of* model.milestoneLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del  
distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint  
item l label lg list listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace  
publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term  
textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom  
hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg  
xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue  
role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote  
language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote



*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance  
rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
occupation offset org orgName persName person personGrp placeName region  
residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc subst supplied surface  
surfaceGrp surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element milestone
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.milestoneUnit.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.edition.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.breaking.attributes,
  empty
}
```

*Example*

```
<milestone ed="La" n="23" unit="Dreissiger"/>
... <milestone ed="AV" n="24" unit="verse"/> ...
```

*Note* For this element, the global *n* attribute indicates the new number or other value for the unit which changes at this milestone. The special value *unnumbered* should be used in passages which fall outside the normal numbering scheme, such as chapter or other headings, poem numbers or titles, etc. The order in which milestone elements are given at a given point is not normally significant.

---

<mod> represents any kind of modification identified within a single document. [11.3.4.1. Generic Modification]

*Module* transcr

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.transcriptional (@hand, @status,

*@cause, @seq*) (att.editLike (*@evidence, @instant*) (att.dimensions (*@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence*)) ) (att.source (*@source*)) ) att.typed (*@type, @subtype*) att.spanning (*@spanTo*)

*Member of* model.pPart.transcriptional

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl pc phr s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
 offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
 surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
 macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```
element mod
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Example*

```
<mod type="subst">
  <add>pleasing</add>
  <del>agreable</del>
</mod>
```

**<moduleRef>** (module reference) references a module which is to be incorporated into a schema. [22.2. Modules and Schemas]

*Module* tagdocs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) att.readFrom ( @source )

**@prefix** specifies a default prefix which will be prepended to all patterns from the imported module

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 0–1 occurrences of `data.xmlName` separated by whitespace

*Schematron* <s:rule context="tei:moduleRef"> <s:report test="//\*[  
 not( generate-id(.) eq generate-id( current() ) ) ]/@prefix =  
 @prefix">The prefix attribute of <s:name/> should not match that  
 of any other element (it would defeat the purpose)</s:report></  
 s:rule>

*Note* Use of this attribute avoids name collisions (and thus invalid schemas) when the external schema being mixed in with TEI uses a

name the TEI or some other included external schema already uses for a pattern.

**@include** supplies a list of the elements which are to be copied from the specified module into the schema being defined.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 0– occurrences of `data.xmlName` separated by whitespace

**@except** supplies a list of the elements which are not to be copied from the specified module into the schema being defined.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 0– occurrences of `data.xmlName` separated by whitespace

**@key** the name of a TEI module

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.xmlName`

**@url** (uniform resource locator) refers to a non-TEI module of RELAX NG code by external location

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.pointer`

*Member of* model.oddRef

*Contained by*

*tagdocs:* schemaSpec specGrp

*May contain*

*tagdocs:* content

*Declaration*

```
element moduleRef
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.readFrom.attributes,
  attribute prefix { data.xmlName }?
  >>
  tei:constraintSpec
  [
    ident = "not-same-prefix"
    scheme = "isoschematron"
    " "
    "The prefix attribute of "
    " should not match that of any other element (it would defeat the purpose)"
  ],
  (
    attribute include { list { data.xmlName* } }?
    | attribute except { list { data.xmlName* } }?
  ),
  ( attribute key { data.xmlName }? | attribute url { data.pointer }? ),
  content?
}
```

*Schematron* `<s:rule context="tei:moduleRef"> <s:report test="* and @key">Child elements of <s:name/> are only allowed when an external module is being loaded </s:report></s:rule>`

*Example*

```
<moduleRef key="linking"/>
```

This includes all objects available from the linking module.

*Example*

```
<moduleRef except="linkGrp link"
  key="linking"/>
```

This includes all elements available from the linking module except for the <link/> and <linkGrp> elements.

*Example*

```
<moduleRef include="linkGrp link"
  key="linking"/>
```

This includes only the <link/> and <linkGrp> elements from the linking module.

*Note* If neither *include* nor *exclude* is supplied, the effect of this element is to make all the declarations contained by the referenced module available to the schema being compiled. If both attributes are supplied, an ODD processor should signal an error. A TEI module is identified by the name supplied as value for the *ident* attribute on a <moduleSpec> element. The *source* attribute may be used to specify an online source from which the specification of that module may be read. A URI may alternatively be supplied in the case of a non-TEI module, and this is expected to be written as a RELAX NG schema.

---

<moduleSpec> (module specification) documents the structure, content, and purpose of a single module, i.e. a named and externally visible group of declarations. [22.2. Modules and Schemas]

*Module tagdocs*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space ) (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change )) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) att.identified ( @ident, @predeclare, @module, @status ) (att.combinable ( @mode ) (att.deprecated ( @validUntil ) ) ) att.typed ( @type, @subtype )

*Member of* model.oddDecl

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

*spoken:* writing

*tagdocs:* schemaSpec specGrp

*textcrit:* lem rdg witness

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*core:* desc gloss

*tagdocs:* altIdent equiv exemplum listRef remarks

*Declaration*

```
element moduleSpec
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.identified.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( ( model.glossLike | model.descLike )*, exemplum*, remarks?, listRef* )
}
```

*Example*

```
<moduleSpec ident="namesdates">
  <altIdent type="FPI">Names and Dates</altIdent>
  <desc>Additional elements for names and dates</desc>
</moduleSpec>
```

---

**<monogr>** (monographic level) contains bibliographic elements describing an item (e.g. a book or journal) published as an independent item (i.e. as a separate physical object). [3.11.2.1. Analytic, Monographic, and Series Levels]

*Module core*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))

*Contained by*

*core:* biblStruct

*May contain*

*core:* author biblScope editor imprint meeting note ptr ref respStmt textLang title

*header:* authority availability edition extent funder idno sponsor

*textcrit:* witDetail

*Declaration*

```
element monogr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    (
      (
        ( author | editor | meeting | respStmt ),
        ( author | editor | meeting | respStmt )*,
        title+,
        ( model.ptrLike | idno | textLang | editor | respStmt )*
      )
    | (
      ( title | model.ptrLike | idno )+,

```

```

        ( textLang | author | editor | meeting | respStmt )*
      )
    | ( authority, idno )
  )?,
  availability*,
  model.noteLike*,
  (
    edition,
    ( idno | model.ptrLike | editor | sponsor | funder | respStmt )*
  ),
  imprint,
  ( imprint | extent | biblScope )*
)
}

```

*Example*

```

<biblStruct>
  <analytic>
    <author>Chesnutt, David</author>
    <title>Historical Editions in the States</title>
  </analytic>
  <monogr>
    <title level="j">Computers and the Humanities</title>
    <imprint>
      <date when="1991-12">(December, 1991):</date>
    </imprint>
    <biblScope>25.6</biblScope>
    <biblScope from="377" to="380" unit="page">377–380</biblScope>
  </monogr>
</biblStruct>

```

*Example*

```

<biblStruct type="book">
  <monogr>
    <author>
      <persName>
        <forename>Leo Joachim</forename>
        <surname>Frachtenberg</surname>
      </persName>
    </author>
    <title level="m" type="main">Lower Umpqua Texts</title>
    <imprint>
      <pubPlace>New York</pubPlace>
      <publisher>Columbia University Press</publisher>
      <date>1914</date>
    </imprint>
  </monogr>
  <series>
    <title level="s" type="main">Columbia University Contributions to
      Anthropology</title>
    <biblScope unit="volume">4</biblScope>
  </series>
</biblStruct>

```

*Note* May contain specialized bibliographic elements, in a prescribed order. The <monogr> element may only occur only within a <biblStruct>, where its use is mandatory for the description of a monographic-level bibliographic item.

<mood> contains information about the grammatical mood of verbs (e.g. indicative, subjunctive, imperative). [9.3.1. Information on Written and Spoken Forms]

*Module dictionaries*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split,  
@value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

*Member of* model.morphLike

*Contained by*

*dictionaries:* dictScrap entryFree etym form gramGrp

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element mood
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Example* Taken from *Wörterbuch der Deutschen Sprache. Veranstalet und herausgegeben*



von Joachim Heinrich Campe. *Vierter Theil. S - bis - T.* (Braunschweig 1810. In der Schulbuchhandlung):

Treffen, v. unregelm. ... du triffst, ...

```
<entry>
  <form type="inflected">
    <gramGrp>
      <per value="2"/>
      <number value="singular"/>
      <tns value="present"/>
      <mood value="indicative"/>
    </gramGrp>
    <form type="personalpronoun">
      <orth>du</orth>
    </form>
    <form type="headword">
      <orth>
        <oVar>triffst</oVar>
      </orth>
    </form>
  </form>
</entry>
```

*Note* This element is synonymous with <gram type="mood">.

<move/> (movement) marks the actual entrance or exit of one or more characters on stage. [7.2.4. Stage Directions]

*Module* drama

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.ascribed (@who)

@type characterizes the movement, for example as an entrance or exit.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Suggested values include:* **entrance** character is entering the stage.

**exit** character is exiting the stage.

**onStage** character moves on stage

@where specifies the direction of a stage movement.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of data.enumerated separated by whitespace

*Sample values include:* **L** (left) stage left

**R** (right) stage right

**C** (center) centre stage

*Note* Full blocking information will normally require combinations of values, (for example ‘UL’ for ‘upper stage left’) and may also require more detailed encoding of speed, direction etc. Full documentation of any coding system used should be provided in the header.

**@perf** (performance) identifies the performance or performances in which this movement occurred as specified by pointing to one or more <performance> elements.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

*Member of* model.stageLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l lg meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

*spoken:* writing

*textcrit:* lem rdg witness

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element move
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  attribute type { "entrance" | "exit" | "onStage" | xsd:Name }?,
  attribute where { list { data.enumerated+ } }?,
  attribute perf { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  empty
}
```

*Example*

```
<performance xml:id="perf1">
  <p>First performance</p>
  <castList>
    <castItem>
      <role xml:id="bellaf">Bellafront</role>
    </castItem>
  <!-- ... -->
</castList>
</performance>
<!-- ... -->
<stage type="entrance">
  <move perf="#perf1" type="enter" where="L"
    who="#bellaf"/> Enter
```

```
Bellafront mad.
</stage>
```

**<msContents>** (manuscript contents) describes the intellectual content of a manuscript or manuscript part, either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of structured manuscript items. [10.6. Intellectual Content]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.msExcerpt (@defective)

**@class** identifies the text types or classifications applicable to this object by pointing to other elements or resources defining the classification concerned.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of **data.pointer** separated by whitespace

*Contained by description:* msDesc msPart

*May contain*

*core:* p textLang

*linking:* ab

*msdescription:* msItem msItemStruct summary

*textstructure:* titlePage

*Declaration*

```
element msContents
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.msExcerpt.attributes,
  attribute class { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  (
    model.pLike+
    | ( summary?, textLang?, titlePage?, ( msItem | msItemStruct )* )
  )
}
```

*Example*

```
<msContents class="#sermons">
  <p>A collection of Lollard sermons</p>
</msContents>
```

*Example*

```
<msContents>
  <msItem n="1">
    <locus>fols. 5r-7v</locus>
    <title>An ABC</title>
    <bibl>
      <title>IMEV</title>
      <biblScope>239</biblScope>
    </bibl>
  </msItem>
  <msItem n="2">
    <locus>fols. 7v-8v</locus>
```

```
<title xml:lang="frm">Lenvoy de Chaucer a Scogan</title>
<bibl>
  <title>IMEV</title>
  <biblScope>3747</biblScope>
</bibl>
</msItem>
<msItem n="3">
  <locus>fol. 8v</locus>
  <title>Truth</title>
  <bibl>
    <title>IMEV</title>
    <biblScope>809</biblScope>
  </bibl>
</msItem>
<msItem n="4">
  <locus>fols. 8v-10v</locus>
  <title>Birds Praise of Love</title>
  <bibl>
    <title>IMEV</title>
    <biblScope>1506</biblScope>
  </bibl>
</msItem>
<msItem n="5">
  <locus>fols. 10v-11v</locus>
  <title xml:lang="la">De amico ad amicum</title>
  <title xml:lang="la">Responcio</title>
  <bibl>
    <title>IMEV</title>
    <biblScope>16 & 19</biblScope>
  </bibl>
</msItem>
<msItem n="6">
  <locus>fols. 14r-126v</locus>
  <title>Troilus and Criseyde</title>
  <note>Bk. 1:71-Bk. 5:1701, with additional losses due to mutilation
throughout</note>
</msItem>
</msContents>
```

*Note* Unless it contains a simple prose description, this element should contain at least one of the elements <summary>, <msItem>, or <msItemStruct>. This constraint is not currently enforced by the schema.

---

**<msDesc>** (manuscript description) contains a description of a single identifiable manuscript or other text-bearing object. [10.1. Overview]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls)

*Member of* model.biblLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l listBibl meeting note orig p q quote ref reg relatedItem said sic stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp*: readingExpRef  
*dictionaries*: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
           iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr  
*drama*: camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view  
*figures*: cell figDesc figure  
*header*: change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy  
           typeNote  
*iso-fs*: fDescr fsDescr  
*linking*: ab seg  
*msdescription*: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
           filiation foliation layout msItem musicNotation origin provenance signatures source  
           summary support surrogates  
*namesdates*: climate event location org person personGrp place population state terrain  
           trait  
*spoken*: broadcast scriptStmnt writing  
*textcrit*: lem rdg witness  
*textstructure*: argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
           imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr*: damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse*: rhyme  
*May contain*  
*core*: head p  
*linking*: ab  
*msdescription*: additional history msContents msIdentifier msPart physDesc  
*Declaration*

```

element msDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    msIdentifier,
    model.headLike*,
    (
      model.pLike+
      | ( msContents?, physDesc?, history?, additional?, msPart* )
    )
  )
}

```

#### Example

```

<msDesc>
  <msIdentifier>
    <settlement>Oxford</settlement>
    <repository>Bodleian Library</repository>
    <idno type="Bod">MS Poet. Rawl. D. 169.</idno>
  </msIdentifier>
  <msContents>
    <msItem>
      <author>Geoffrey Chaucer</author>
      <title>The Canterbury Tales</title>
    </msItem>
  </msContents>
</msDesc>

```

```
</msContents>
<physDesc>
  <objectDesc>
    <p>A parchment codex of 136 folios, measuring approx
      28 by 19 inches, and containing 24 quires.</p>
    <p>The pages are margined and ruled throughout.</p>
    <p>Four hands have been identified in the manuscript: the first 44
      folios being written in two cursive anglicana scripts, while the
      remainder is for the most part in a mixed secretary hand.</p>
  </objectDesc>
</physDesc>
</msDesc>
```

---

**<msIdentifier>** (manuscript identifier) contains the information required to identify the manuscript being described. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.biblPart

*Contained by*

*core:* bibl

*msdescription:* msDesc msPart

*May contain*

*header:* idno

*msdescription:* altIdentifier collection institution msName repository

*namesdates:* bloc country district geogName placeName region settlement

*Declaration*

```
element msIdentifier
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    (
      model.placeNamePart_sequenceOptional,
      institution?,
      repository?,
      collection*,
      idno?
    ),
    ( msName | altIdentifier )*
  )
}
```

*Schematron* <s:report test="not(parent::tei:msPart) and (local-name(\*[1])='idno' or local-name(\*[1])='altIdentifier' or normalize-space(.)='')">An msIdentifier must contain either a repository or location of some type, or a manuscript name</s:report>

*Example*

```
<msIdentifier>
  <settlement>San Marino</settlement>
```

```
<repository>Huntington Library</repository>
<idno>MS.El.26.C.9</idno>
</msIdentifier>
```

**<msItem>** (manuscript item) describes an individual work or item within the intellectual content of a manuscript or manuscript part. [10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change)) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) att.msExcerpt ( @defective)

**@class** identifies the text types or classifications applicable to this item by pointing to other elements or resources defining the classification concerned.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of **data.pointer** separated by whitespace

*Member of* model.msItemPart

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* msContents msItem

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* author bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb cit editor gap gb graphic index lb listBibl meeting milestone note p pb quote respStmt textLang title

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc textread

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*header:* biblFull funder idno principal sponsor

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription:* colophon decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric incipit locus locusGrp msDesc msItem msItemStruct rubric

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*textcrit:* witDetail

*textstructure:* argument byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph imprimatur titlePart

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```
element msItem
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.msExcerpt.attributes,
  attribute class { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  (
    ( locus | locusGrp )*,
    (
      model.pLike+
      | ( model.titlepagePart | model.msItemPart | model.global )+
    )
  )
}
```

```

    )
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<msItem class="#saga">
  <locus>ff. 1r-24v</locus>
  <title>Agrip af Noregs konunga sögum</title>
  <incipit>regi oc h<ex>ann</ex> setiho
  <gap extent="7" reason="illegible"/>sc
    heim se<ex>m</ex> bio</incipit>
  <explicit>h<ex>on</ex> hev<ex>er</ex>
    <ex>oc</ex>pa buit hesta .ij. aNan vip
    fé enh<ex>on</ex>o<ex>m</ex> aNan til
    reip<ex>ar</ex>
  </explicit>
  <textLang mainLang="non">Old Norse/Icelandic</textLang>
</msItem>

```

---

**<msItemStruct>** (structured manuscript item) contains a structured description for an individual work or item within the intellectual content of a manuscript or manuscript part. [10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change)) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) att.msExcerpt ( @defective)

**@class** identifies the text types or classifications applicable to this item by pointing to other elements or resources defining the classification concerned.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of **data.pointer** separated by whitespace

*Member of* model.msItemPart*Contained by**msdescription:* msContents msItem msItemStruct*May contain**core:* author bibl biblStruct listBibl note p respStmt textLang title*linking:* ab

*msdescription:* colophon decoNote explicit finalRubric incipit locus locusGrp msItemStruct rubric

*textcrit:* witDetail*Declaration*

```

element msItemStruct
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.msExcerpt.attributes,
  attribute class { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  (
    ( locus | locusGrp )?,
    (
      model.pLike+
      | (

```



```

        author*,
        respStmt*,
        title*,
        rubric?,
        incipit?,
        msItemStruct*,
        explicit?,
        finalRubric?,
        colophon*,
        decoNote*,
        listBibl*,
        ( bibl | biblStruct )*,
        model.noteLike*,
        textLang?
    )
}

```

*Example*

```

<msItemStruct class="#biblComm"
  defective="false" n="2">
  <locus from="24v" to="97v">24v-97v</locus>
  <author>Apringius de Beja</author>
  <title type="uniform" xml:lang="la">Tractatus in Apocalypsin</title>
  <rubric>Incipit Trac<supplied reason="omitted">ta</supplied>tus
    in apoka<lb/>lipsin eruditissimi uiri <lb/> Apringi ep<expan>iscop</expan>i
    Pacensis eccl<expan>esi</expan>e</rubric>
  <finalRubric>EXPLIC<ex>IT</ex> EXPO<lb/>SITIO APOCALIPSIS
    QVA<ex>M</ex> EXPOSUIT DOM<lb/>NVS APRINGIUS EP<ex>ISCOPU</ex>S.
    DEO GR<ex>ACI</ex>AS AGO. FI<lb/>NITO LABORE ISTO.</finalRubric>
  <bibl>
    <ref target="http://amiBibl.xml#Apringius1900">Apringius</ref>, ed.
    Férotin</bibl>
  <textLang mainLang="la">Latin</textLang>
</msItemStruct>

```

**<msName>** (alternative name) contains any form of unstructured alternative name used for a manuscript, such as an ‘ocellus nominum’, or nickname. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* msIdentifier

*May contain*

*gaiji:* g

*Declaration*

```

element msName { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, macro.xtext }

```

*Example*

```
<msName>The Vercelli Book</msName>
```

**<msPart>** (manuscript part) contains information about an originally distinct manuscript or part of a manuscript, now forming part of a composite manuscript. [10.10. Manuscript Parts]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* msDesc msPart

*May contain*

*core:* head p

*linking:* ab

*msdescription:* additional altIdentifier history msContents msIdentifier msPart physDesc

*Declaration*

```
element msPart
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( altIdentifier | msIdentifier ),
    model.headLike*,
    (
      model.pLike+
      | ( msContents?, physDesc?, history?, additional?, msPart* )
    )
  )
}
```

*Schematron* The <msIdentifier> element is now allowed as a child of <msPart>, and it (with its <altIdentifier> children if needed) should be used instead of an <altIdentifier> directly within <msPart>. <sch:report role="nonfatal" test="child::tei:altIdentifier">WARNING: use of deprecated method — the use of the altIdentifier element as a direct child of the msPart element will be removed from the TEI on 2016-09-09</sch:report>

*Example*

```
<msPart>
  <msIdentifier>
    <idno>A</idno>
    <altIdentifier type="catalog">
      <collection>Becker</collection>
      <idno>48, Nr. 145</idno>
    </altIdentifier>
    <altIdentifier type="catalog">
      <collection>Wiener Liste</collection>
      <idno>4°5</idno>
    </altIdentifier>
  </msIdentifier>
  <head>
    <title xml:lang="la">Gregorius: Homiliae in Ezechielem</title>
```

```

<origPlace key="tgn_7008085">Weissenburg (?)</origPlace>
<origDate notAfter="0815"
  notBefore="0801">IX. Jh., Anfang</origDate>
</head>
</msPart>

```

*Example*

```

<msDesc>
  <msIdentifier>
    <settlement>Amiens</settlement>
    <repository>Bibliothèque Municipale</repository>
    <idno>MS 3</idno>
    <msName>Maurdramnus Bible</msName>
  </msIdentifier>
  <!-- other elements here -->
  <msPart>
    <altIdentifier>
      <idno>MS 6</idno>
    </altIdentifier>
    <!-- other information specific to this part here -->
  </msPart>
  <!-- more parts here -->
</msDesc>

```

*Note* As this last example shows, for compatibility reasons the identifier of a manuscript part may be supplied as a simple <altIdentifier> rather than using the more structured <msIdentifier> element. This usage is however deprecated.

---

<musicNotation> contains description of type of musical notation. [10.7.2.

Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.physDescPart

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* physDesc

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
 distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
 listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb  
 ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element musicNotation { att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara }
```

*Example*

```
<musicNotation>
  <p>Square notation of 4-line red staves.</p>
</musicNotation>
```

*Example*

```
<musicNotation>Neumes in <term>campo aperto</term> of the St. Gall type.
</musicNotation>
```

---

**<name>** (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase. [3.5.1. Referring Strings]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
( att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition ) ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select ) ) ( att.global.analytic  
( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) ( att.global.change ( @change ) )  
( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) ) att.personal ( @full, @sort ) ( att.naming  
( @role, @nymRef ) ( att.canonical ( @key, @ref ) ) ) att.datable ( @calendar, @period )  
( att.datable.w3c ( @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to ) ) ( att.datable.iso  
( @when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso ) ) ( att.datable.custom  
( @when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom,  
@datingPoint, @datingMethod ) ) att.editLike ( @evidence, @instant ) ( att.dimensions  
( @unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope ) ( att.ranging ( @atLeast, @atMost,  
@min, @max, @confidence ) ) ) ( att.source ( @source ) ) att.typed ( @type, @subtype )

*Member of* model.nameLike.agent

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp respStmt rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose setting

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation offset org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```

element name
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

*Example*

```

<name type="person">Thomas Hoccleve</name>
<name type="place">Villingaholt</name>
<name type="org">Vetus Latina Institut</name>
<name ref="#H0C001" type="person">Occleve</name>

```

*Note* Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with <persName>, <placeName>, or <orgName>, when the TEI module for names and dates is included.

---

**<nameLink>** (name link) contains a connecting phrase or link used within a name but not regarded as part of it, such as *van der* or *of*. [13.2.1. Personal Names]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.persNamePart

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc  
distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l  
label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote  
ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc  
*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition  
 extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote  
 sponsor tagUsage typeNote  
*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
 settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

element nameLink
------------------

```
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example*

```
<persName>
  <forename>Frederick</forename>
  <nameLink>van der</nameLink>
  <surname>Tronck</surname>
</persName>
```

*Example*

```
<persName>
  <forename>Alfred</forename>
  <nameLink>de</nameLink>
  <surname>Musset</surname>
</persName>
```

---

**<namespace>** supplies the formal name of the namespace to which the elements documented by its children belong. [2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))  
**@name** specifies the full formal name of the namespace concerned.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* data.namespace

*Contained by header:* tagsDecl

*May contain*

*header:* tagUsage

*Declaration*

```
element namespace
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute name { data.namespace },
  tagUsage+
}
```

*Example*

```
<namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <tagUsage gi="hi" occurs="28" render="#it"
    withId="2"> Used only to mark English words
    italicized in the copy text </tagUsage>
</namespace>
```

---

**<nationality>** contains an informal description of a person's present or past nationality or citizenship. [15.2.2. The Participant Description]



*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.datable (@calendar, @period)  
 (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso  
 (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom  
 (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom,  
 @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions  
 (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost,  
 @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef)  
 (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

*Member of* model.persStateLike

*Contained by*

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* addressee listener reader sender

*namesdates:* person personGrp

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```

element nationality
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,

```

att.naming.attributes, macro.phraseSeq}
--

*Example*

```
<nationality key="US" notBefore="1966"> Obtained US Citizenship in
1966</nationality>
```

---

**<node>** encodes a node, a possibly labeled point in a graph. [19.1. Graphs and Digraphs]*Module* nets

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

**@value** provides the value of a node, which is a feature structure or other  
 analytic element.

*Status* Optional*Datatype* data.pointer

**@type** provides a type for a node.

*Status* Optional*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Suggested values include:* **initial** initial node in a transition network

**final** final node in a transition network

```
<graph>
  <node adj="#gnex13"
    adjTo="#gnex12"
    type="initial"
    xml:id="gnex11">
    <label>1</label>
  </node>
  <node adjFrom="#gnex11"
    adjTo="#gnex13"
    xml:id="gnex12">
    <label>2</label>
  </node>
  <node adj="#gnex11"
    adjFrom="#gnex12"
    type="final"
    xml:id="gnex13">
    <label>3</label>
  </node>
</graph>
```

**@adjTo** (adjacent to) gives the identifiers of the nodes which are adjacent to the  
 current node.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

```
<graph>
  <node adj="#gnex23"
    adjTo="#gnex22"
    type="initial"
    xml:id="gnex21">
    <label>1</label>
  </node>
```

```

<node adjTo="#gnex23"
  xml:id="gnex22">
  <label>2</label>
</node>
<node type="final"
  xml:id="gnex23">
  <label>3</label>
</node>
</graph>

```

@adjFrom (adjacent from) gives the identifiers of the nodes which are adjacent from the current node.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

```

<graph>
  <node type="initial"
    xml:id="gnex31">
    <label>1</label>
  </node>
  <node adjFrom="#gnex31"
    xml:id="gnex32">
    <label>2</label>
  </node>
  <node adj="#gnex31"
    adjFrom="#gnex32"
    type="final"
    xml:id="gnex33">
    <label>3</label>
  </node>
</graph>

```

@adj (adjacent) gives the identifiers of the nodes which are both adjacent to and adjacent from the current node.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

```

<graph>
  <node adj="#gnex42 #gnex43"
    type="initial"
    xml:id="gnex41">
    <label>1</label>
  </node>
  <node adj="#gnex41 #gnex43"
    xml:id="gnex42">
    <label>2</label>
  </node>
  <node adj="#gnex42 #gnex41"
    type="final"
    xml:id="gnex43">
    <label>3</label>
  </node>
</graph>

```

*Note* Use this attribute instead of the *adjTo* and *adjFrom* attributes when the graph is undirected and vice versa if the graph is directed.

@inDegree gives the in degree of the node, the number of nodes which are adjacent from the given node.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.count`

```

<graph>
  <node adj="#gnex53"

```

```
    adjTo="#gnex52"
    inDegree="1"
    type="initial"
    xml:id="gnex51">
    <label>1</label>
  </node>
  <node adjFrom="#gnex51"
    adjTo="#gnex53"
    inDegree="2"
    xml:id="gnex52">
    <label>2</label>
  </node>
  <node adj="#gnex51"
    adjFrom="#gnex52"
    inDegree="2"
    type="final"
    xml:id="gnex53">
    <label>3</label>
  </node>
</graph>
```

@outDegree gives the out degree of the node, the number of nodes which are adjacent to the given node.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.count

```
<graph>
  <node adj="#gnex63"
    adjTo="#gnex62"
    outDegree="2"
    type="initial"
    xml:id="gnex61">
    <label>1</label>
  </node>
  <node adjFrom="#gnex61"
    adjTo="#gnex63"
    outDegree="1"
    xml:id="gnex62">
    <label>2</label>
  </node>
  <node adj="#gnex61"
    adjFrom="#gnex62"
    outDegree="2"
    type="final"
    xml:id="gnex63">
    <label>3</label>
  </node>
</graph>
```

@degree gives the degree of the node, the number of arcs with which the node is incident.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.count

```
<graph>
  <node adj="#gnex73"
    adjTo="#gnex72"
    degree="1"
    inDegree="0"
    outDegree="1"
    type="initial"
    xml:id="gnex71">
    <label>1</label>
  </node>
```

```
<node adjFrom="#gnex71"
  adjTo="#gnex73"
  degree="0"
  inDegree="1"
  outDegree="1"
  xml:id="gnex72">
  <label>2</label>
</node>
<node adj="#gnex71"
  adjFrom="#gnex72"
  degree="1"
  inDegree="1"
  outDegree="0"
  type="final"
  xml:id="gnex73">
  <label>3</label>
</node>
</graph>
```

*Note* Use this attribute instead of the *inDegree* and *outDegree* attributes when the graph is undirected and vice versa if the graph is directed.

*Contained by* graph

*May contain*

*core:* label

*Declaration*

```
element node
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute value { data.pointer }?,
  attribute type { "initial" | "final" | xsd:Name }?,
  attribute adjTo { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  attribute adjFrom { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  attribute adj { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  attribute inDegree { data.count }?,
  attribute outDegree { data.count }?,
  attribute degree { data.count }?,
  ( label, label? )?
}
```

*Example*

```
<node inDegree="2" outDegree="0"
  type="final" xml:id="t6">
  <label>6</label>
</node>
```

*Note* Zero, one, or two children `<label>` elements may be present. The first occurrence of `<label>` provides a label for the arc; the second provides a second label for the arc, and should be used if a transducer is being encoded whose actions are associated with nodes rather than with arcs.

---

**<normalization>** indicates the extent of normalization or regularization of the original source carried out in converting it to electronic form. [2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.declarable (@default)

**@source** indicates a bibliographic description or other resource documenting the  
principles underlying the normalization carried out.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

**@method** indicates the method adopted to indicate normalizations within the  
text.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Legal values are:* **silent** normalization made silently[Default]

**markup** normalization represented using markup

*Member of* model.editorialDeclPart

*Contained by*

*header:* editorialDecl

*May contain*

*core:* p

*linking:* ab

*Declaration*

```
element normalization
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  attribute source { data.pointer }?,
  attribute method { "silent" | "markup" }?,
  model.pLike+
}
```

*Example*

```
<editorialDecl>
  <normalization method="markup">
    <p>Where both upper- and lower-case i, j, u, v, and vv have been normalized, to
modern
    20th century typographical practice, the <gi>choice</gi> element has been used
to
    enclose <gi>orig</gi> and <gi>reg</gi> elements giving the original and new
values
    respectively. ... </p>
  </normalization>
  <normalization method="silent">
    <p>Spacing between words and following punctuation has been regularized to zero
spaces;
    spacing between words has been regularized to one space.</p>
  </normalization>
  <normalization source="http://www.dict.sztaki.hu/webster">
    <p>Spelling converted throughout to Modern American usage, based on Websters 9th
Collegiate dictionary.</p>
  </normalization>
</editorialDecl>
```

<notatedMusic> encodes the presence of music notation in a text [14.3. Notated Music in Written Text]

*Module figures*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.placement (@place) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.global

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*core:* binaryObject desc graphic label ptr ref

*Declaration*

```
element notatedMusic
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( model.labelLike | model.ptrLike | graphic | binaryObject )*
}
```

*Example*

```
<notatedMusic>
  <ptr target="bar1.xml"/>
  <graphic url="bar1.jpg"/>
  <desc>First bar of Chopin's Scherzo No.3 Op.39</desc>
</notatedMusic>
```

*Note* It is possible to describe the content of the notation using elements from the `model.labelLike` class and it is possible to point to an external representation using elements from `model.ptrLike`. It is possible to specify the location of digital objects representing the notated music in other media such as images or audio-visual files. The encoder's interpretation of the correspondence between the notated music and these digital objects is not encoded explicitly. We recommend the use of `graphic` and `binaryObject` mainly as a fallback mechanism when the notated music format is not displayable by the application using the encoding. The alignment of encoded notated music, images carrying the notation, and audio files is a complex matter for which we refer the encoder to other formats and specifications such as MPEG-SMR.

---

**<note>** contains a note or annotation. [3.8.1. Notes and Simple Annotation 2.2.6. The Notes Statement 3.11.2.8. Notes and Statement of Language 9.3.5.4. Notes within Entries]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.rendition` (`@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`)) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`)) (`att.global.responsibility` (`@cert`, `@resp`)) `att.placement` (`@place`) `att.pointing` (`@targetLang`, `@target`, `@evaluate`) `att.source` (`@source`) `att.typed` (`@type`, `@subtype`)

**@anchored** indicates whether the copy text shows the exact place of reference for the note.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.truthValue**

*Default* true

*Note* In modern texts, notes are usually anchored by means of explicit footnote or endnote symbols. An explicit indication of the phrase or line annotated may however be used instead (e.g. 'page 218, lines 3–4'). The *anchored* attribute indicates whether any explicit location is given, whether by symbol or by prose cross-reference. The value true indicates that such an explicit location is indicated in the copy text; the value false indicates that the copy text does not indicate a specific place of attachment for the note. If the



specific symbols used in the copy text at the location the note is anchored are to be recorded, use the *n* attribute.

**@targetEnd** points to the end of the span to which the note is attached, if the note is not embedded in the text at that point.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

*Note* This attribute is retained for backwards compatibility; it may be removed at a subsequent release of the Guidelines. The recommended way of pointing to a span of elements is by means of the **range** function of XPointer, as further described in 16.2.4.6. `range()`.

*Member of* model.correspActionPart model.correspContextPart model.correspDescPart model.noteLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope biblStruct cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned monogr name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExp readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*gaiji:* char glyph

*header:* authority change classCode correspAction correspContext correspDesc distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence notesStmt principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions adminInfo altIdentifier catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem msItemStruct musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc climate country death district education event faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink nationality occupation offset org orgName persName person personGrp place placeName population region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus state surname terrain trait

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
surfaceGrp surplus zone

*verse:* metDecl metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb  
ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element note
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.source.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute anchored { data.truthValue }?,
  attribute targetEnd { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  macro.specialPara}
```

*Example* In the following example, the translator has supplied a footnote containing an explanation of the term translated as "painterly":

```
And yet it is not only
in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the
painterly <note place="bottom" resp="#MDMH"
type="gloss">
  <term xml:lang="de">Malerisch</term>. This word has, in the German, two
distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object,
the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid
confusion, they have been distinguished in English as
<mentioned>picturesque</mentioned> and
<mentioned>painterly</mentioned> respectively.
</note> style of the
Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this
psychological significance.
```

For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI header:

```
<respStmt xml:id="MDMH">
  <resp>translation from German to English</resp>
  <name>Hottinger, Marie Donald Mackie</name>
</respStmt>
```

*Example* The global *n* attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:

```
Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the
family during the second half of the eleventh century,
<note anchored="true" n="126"> The
alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact, a
reference to
Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. </note> is well known from Geniza
documents
published by Jacob Mann.
```

However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers.

---

**<notesStmt>** (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description. [2.2.6. The Notes Statement 2.2. The File Description]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Contained by*

*header:* biblFull fileDesc

*May contain*

*core:* note relatedItem

*textcrit:* witDetail

*Declaration*

```
element notesStmt { att.global.attributes, ( model.noteLike | relatedItem )+ }
```

*Example*

```

<notesStmt>
  <note>Historical commentary provided by Mark Cohen</note>
  <note>OCR scanning done at University of Toronto</note>
</notesStmt>

```

*Note* Information of different kinds should not be grouped together into the same note.

---

**<num>** (number) contains a number, written in any form. [3.5.3. Numbers and Measures]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min,  
@max, @confidence)

**@type** indicates the type of numeric value.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Suggested values include:* **cardinal** absolute number, e.g. 21, 21.5

**ordinal** ordinal number, e.g. 21st

**fraction** fraction, e.g. one half or three-quarters

**percentage** a percentage

*Note* If a different typology is desired, other values can be used for this attribute.

**@value** supplies the value of the number in standard form.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.numeric

*Values* a numeric value.

*Note* The standard form used is defined by the TEI datatype data.numeric.

*Member of* model.measureLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct  
editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label  
measure measureGrp meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q  
quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title  
unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder

geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage  
 typeNote  
*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink  
 nationality occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence  
 roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element num
{
  att.global.attributes,

```

```

att.ranging.attributes,
attribute type
{
    "cardinal" | "ordinal" | "fraction" | "percentage" | xsd:Name
}?,
attribute value { data.numeric }?,
macro.phraseSeq}

```

*Example*

```

<p>I reached <num type="cardinal" value="21">twenty-one</num> on
my <num type="ordinal" value="21">twenty-first</num> birthday</p>
<p>Light travels at <num value="3E10">3×10<hi rend="sup">10</hi>
</num> cm per second.</p>

```

*Note* Detailed analyses of quantities and units of measure in historical documents may also use the feature structure mechanism described in chapter 18. Feature Structures. The <num> element is intended for use in simple applications.

---

**<number>** indicates grammatical number associated with a form, as given in a dictionary. [9.3.1. Information on Written and Spoken Forms 9.3.2. Grammatical Information]

*Module* dictionaries

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

*Member of* model.morphLike

*Contained by*

*dictionaries:* dictScrap entryFree etym form gramGrp

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo

geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```

element number
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Example*

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>wits</orth>
    <pron>wIts</pron>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <number>pl</number>
    <pos>n</pos>
  </gramGrp>
</entry>

```

*Note* This element is synonymous with <gram type="num">.

**<numeric/>** (numeric value) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which contains a numeric value or range. [18.3. Other Atomic Feature Values]

*Module* iso-fs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)

**@value** supplies a lower bound for the numeric value represented, and also (if  
max is not supplied) its upper bound.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* **data.numeric**

**@max** supplies an upper bound for the numeric value represented.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.numeric**

**@trunc** specifies whether the value represented should be truncated to give an  
integer value.

*Status* Optional

Datatype `data.truthValue`

Member of `model.featureVal.single`

Contained by

*iso-fs*: `f fvLib if vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel vMerge vNot vRange`

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```

element numeric
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datcat.attributes,
  attribute value { data.numeric },
  attribute max { data.numeric }?,
  attribute trunc { data.truthValue }?,
  empty
}

```

Example

```
<numeric value="42"/>
```

This represents the numeric value 42.

Example

```
<numeric max="50" trunc="true" value="42.45"/>
```

This represents any of the nine possible integer values between 42 and 50 inclusive.

If the *trunc* attribute had the value FALSE, this example would represent any of the infinite number of numeric values between 42.45 and 50.0

*Note* It is an error to supply the *max* attribute in the absence of a value for the *value* attribute.

---

**<nym>** (canonical name) contains the definition for a canonical name or name component of any kind. [13.3.5. Names and Nyms]

Module `namesdates`

Attributes `Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)`  
`(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,`  
`@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic`  
`(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))`  
`(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.sortable`  
`(@sortKey)`

**@parts** points to constituent nyms

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Contained by *namesdates*: `listNym nym`

May contain

*core*: `p`

*dictionaries*: `colloc def etym form gramGrp hom hyph lbl orth pos pron re sense subc`  
`superEntry syll usg xr`

*linking*: `ab`

*namesdates*: `nym`

Declaration



```

element nym
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  attribute parts { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  ( ( model.entryPart* ), ( model.pLike* ), ( nym* ) )
}

```

*Example*

```

<nym xml:id="J452">
  <form>
    <orth xml:lang="en-US">Ian</orth>
    <orth xml:lang="en-x-Scots">Iain</orth>
  </form>
</nym>

```

**<oRef/>** (orthographic-form reference) in a dictionary example, indicates a reference to the orthographic form(s) of the headword. [9.4. Headword and Pronunciation References]

*Module dictionaries*

*Attributes* *Attributes* att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) att.lexicographic ( @expand, @norm, @split,  
 @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt ) (att.datcat ( @datcat, @valueDatcat ))  
 att.pointing ( @targetLang, @target, @evaluate )

**@type** indicates the kind of typographic modification made to the headword in the reference.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Sample values include:* **cap** (capital) indicates first letter is given as capital

**noHyph** (no hyphen) indicates that the headword, though a prefix or suffix, loses its hyphen

*Member of* model.ptrLike.form

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email  
 emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure  
 mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic  
 soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number oVar orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg  
 xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit  
forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset  
orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex  
socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```

element oRef
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  empty
}

```

*Example*

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>academy</orth>
  </form>
  <cit type="example">
    <quote>The Royal <oRef type="cap"/> of Arts</quote>
  </cit>
</entry>

```

---

**<oVar>** (orthographic-variant reference) in a dictionary example, indicates a reference to variant orthographic form(s) of the headword. [9. Dictionaries]

*Module* dictionaries

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split,  
@value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))  
att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)

**@type** indicates the kind of variant involved.

*Status* Optional

Datatype **data.enumerated**

Sample values include: **pt** (past tense)

**pp** (past participle)

**prp** (present participle)

**f** (feminine)

**pl** (plural)

Member of `model.ptrLike.form`

Contained by

*analysis:* `cl phr s`

*core:* `abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email  
emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure  
mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic  
soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear`

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* `readingExpRef`

*dictionaries:* `case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr`

*drama:* `actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view`

*figures:* `cell`

*header:* `change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote`

*linking:* `ab seg`

*msdescription:* `accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark`

*namesdates:* `addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit  
forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset  
orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex  
socecStatus surname`

*spoken:* `u writing`

*tagdocs:* `eg`

*textcrit:* `lem rdg wit witDetail`

*textstructure:* `byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer`

*transcr:* `damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus`

*verse:* `rhyme`

May contain

*dictionaries:* `oRef`

*gaiji:* `g`

Declaration

```
element oVar
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | oRef )*
}
```

*Example*

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>take</orth>
  </form>
  <cit type="example">
    <quote>Mr Burton <oVar type="pt">took</oVar> us for French</quote>
  </cit>
</entry>
```

*Note* Character data or <oRef/>.

---

**<objectDesc>** contains a description of the physical components making up the object which is being described. [10.7.1. Object Description]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space ) ( att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition ) ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select ) ) ( att.global.analytic ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) ( att.global.change ( @change ) ) ( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) )

**@form** a short project-specific name identifying the physical form of the carrier, for example as a codex, roll, fragment, partial leaf, cutting etc.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Note* Definitions for the terms used may typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema specification.

*Member of* model.physDescPart

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* physDesc

*May contain*

*core:* p

*linking:* ab

*msdescription:* layoutDesc supportDesc

*Declaration*

```
element objectDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute form { data.enumerated }?,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( supportDesc?, layoutDesc? ) )
}
```

*Example*

```
<objectDesc form="codex">
  <supportDesc material="mixed">
    <p>Early modern
    <material>parchment</material> and
    <material>paper</material>.</p>
  </supportDesc>
  <layoutDesc>
    <layout ruledLines="25 32"/>
  </layoutDesc>
</objectDesc>
```

**<objectType>** contains a word or phrase describing the type of object being referred to. [10.3.2. Material and Object Type]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)

*Member of* model.pPart.msdesc

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor  
 email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure  
 meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs  
 said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
 preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder  
 geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage  
 typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
 settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan

foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp*: correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries*: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures*: figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji*: g  
*header*: idno  
*iso-fs*: fLib fs fvLib  
*linking*: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription*: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates*: addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken*: incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs*: att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit*: app witDetail  
*transcr*: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse*: caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```
element objectType
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

#### Example

```
<physDesc>
  <p> Paper and vellum <objectType>codex</objectType> in modern cloth binding.</p>
</physDesc>
```

#### Example

```
<physDesc>
  <p>Fragment of a re-used marble <objectType>funerary stele</objectType>.
</p>
</physDesc>
```

*Note* The *ref* attribute may be used to point to one or more items within a taxonomy of types of object, defined either internally or externally.

---

**<occupation>** contains an informal description of a person's trade, profession or occupation. [15.2.2. The Participant Description]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.dateable (@calendar, @period)  
(att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso

(*@when-iso*, *@notBefore-iso*, *@notAfter-iso*, *@from-iso*, *@to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (*@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*, *@notAfter-custom*, *@from-custom*, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*, *@datingMethod*)) att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*)) ) (att.source (*@source*)) att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*))

**@scheme** indicates the classification system or taxonomy in use, for example by supplying the identifier of a <taxonomy> element, or pointing to some other resource.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

**@code** identifies an occupation code defined within the classification system or taxonomy defined by the *scheme* attribute.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

*Member of* model.persStateLike

*Contained by*

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp*: addressee listener reader sender

*namesdates*: person personGrp

*May contain*

*analysis*: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty*: certainty precision respons

*core*: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp*: correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries*: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures*: figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji*: g

*header*: idno

*iso-fs*: fLib fs fvLib

*linking*: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription*: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates*: addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken*: incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs*: att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit*: app witDetail

*transcr*: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse*: caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```

element occupation
{
  att.global.attributes,
```

```

att.dataable.attributes,
att.editLike.attributes,
att.naming.attributes,
attribute scheme { data.pointer }?,
attribute code { data.pointer }?,
macro.phraseSeq}

```

*Example*

```
<occupation>accountant</occupation>
```

*Example*

```
<occupation code="#acc"
  scheme="#occupationtaxonomy">accountant</occupation>
```

*Note* The content of this element may be used as an alternative to the more formal specification made possible by its attributes; it may also be used to supplement the formal specification with commentary or clarification.

---

**<offset>** marks that part of a relative temporal or spatial expression which indicates the direction of the offset between the two place names, dates, or times involved in the expression. [13.2.3. Place Names]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.dataable (@calendar, @period) (att.dataable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dataable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.dataable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source)) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.offsetLike*Contained by**analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view*figures:* cell figDesc*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition



extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote  
 sponsor tagUsage typeNote  
*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink  
 nationality occupation offset org orgName persName placeName region residence  
 roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

element offset { att.dataable.attributes, }
--

```

att.editLike.attributes,
att.global.attributes,
att.naming.attributes,
att.typed.attributes,
macro.phraseSeq}

```

*Example*

```

<placeName key="NRPA1">
  <offset>50 metres below the summit of</offset>
  <geogName>
    <geogFeat>Mount</geogFeat>
    <name>Sinai</name>
  </geogName>
</placeName>

```

---

**<opener>** groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.divTopPart

*Contained by*

*core:* lg list

*drama:* castList epilogue performance prologue

*textstructure:* body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 group postscript

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*textstructure:* argument byline dateline epigraph salute signed

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element opener
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | argument      | byline      | dateline      | epigraph
  )
}
```

*Example*

```
<opener>
  <dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>
</opener>
```

*Example*

```
<opener>
  <dateline>
    <name type="place">Great Marlborough Street</name>
    <date>November 11, 1848</date>
  </dateline>
  <salute>My dear Sir,</salute>
</opener>
<p>I am sorry to say that absence from town and other circumstances have prevented
me from
earlier enquiring...</p>
```

---

**<org>** (organization) provides information about an identifiable organization such as a business, a tribe, or any other grouping of people. [13.2.2. Organizational Names]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.editLike  
(@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision,  
@scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source  
(@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey)

**@role** specifies a primary role or classification for the organization.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of **data.word** separated by whitespace

*Note* Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as artist, employer, family group, or political party, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema specification.

*Member of* model.personLike

*Contained by*

*corpus:* particDesc

*namesdates:* listOrg listPerson org

*May contain*

*core:* bibl biblStruct cb desc gb head label lb listBibl milestone name note p pb rs

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* addressee listener reader sender textread

*dictionaries:* lang

*header:* biblFull idno

*linking:* ab anchor link linkGrp

*msdescription:* msDesc

*namesdates:* addName bloc climate country district forename genName geogFeat  
geogName listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink offset org orgName  
persName person personGrp place placeName population region roleName  
settlement state surname terrain trait

*textcrit:* witDetail

*transcr:* fw

*Declaration*

```

element org
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  attribute role { list { data.word+ } }?,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    (
      ( model.pLike* )
      | (
          model.labelLike          | model.nameLike          | model.placeLike
        ),
    ( model.noteLike | model.biblLike | linkGrp | link )*,
    model.personLike*
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<org xml:id="JAMs">
  <orgName>Justified Ancients of Mummu</orgName>
  <desc>An underground anarchist collective spearheaded by <persName>Hagbard
    Celine</persName>, who fight the Illuminati from a golden submarine, the
  <name>Leif Ericson</name>
</desc>
<bibl>
  <author>Robert Shea</author>
  <author>Robert Anton Wilson</author>
  <title>The Illuminatus! Trilogy</title>
</bibl>
</org>

```

---

**<orgName>** (organization name) contains an organizational name. [13.2.2. Organizational Names]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) att.datable ( @calendar, @period)  
 (att.datable.w3c ( @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso  
 ( @when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom  
 ( @when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom,  
 @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike ( @evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions  
 ( @unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging ( @atLeast, @atMost,  
 @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source ( @source)) att.personal ( @full, @sort)  
 (att.naming ( @role, @nymRef) (att.canonical ( @key, @ref)) ) att.typed ( @type,  
 @subtype)

*Member of* model.nameLike.agent

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc  
 distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l  
 label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote  
 ref reg resp respStmt rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time  
 title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
 preparedness purpose setting

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition  
 extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote  
 sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
 settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element orgName
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

*Example*

```
About a year back, a question of considerable interest was agitated in the
<orgName key="PAS1" type="voluntary">
  <placeName key="PEN">Pennsyla.</placeName> Abolition Society
</orgName>....
```

---

**<orig>** (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected. [3.4.2. Regularization and Normalization 12. Critical Apparatus]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic

(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.source (@source)

*Member of* model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl pc phr s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del distinct  
 editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label  
 measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said  
 sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit  
 forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset  
 orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex  
 socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
 distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
 listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
 q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```

element orig
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.source.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Example* If all that is desired is to call attention to the original version in the copy text, <orig> may be used alone:

```

<l>But this will be a <orig>meere</orig> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <orig>vnderstoode</orig>
</l>

```

*Example* More usually, an <orig> will be combined with a regularized form within a <choice> element:

```

<l>But this will be a <choice>
  <orig>meere</orig>
  <reg>mere</reg>
</choice> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <choice>
  <orig>vnderstoode</orig>
  <reg>understood</reg>
</choice>
</l>

```

---

**<origDate>** (origin date) contains any form of date, used to identify the date of origin for a manuscript or manuscript part. [10.3.1. Origination]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.dateable (@calendar, @period) (att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.dateable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions



(@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.pPart.msdesc

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element origDate
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global ) *
}
```

*Example*

```
<origDate notAfter="-0200"
notBefore="-0300">3rd century BCE</origDate>
```

---

**<origLanguage>** Contains information on the original language of the text read during the reading experience.

*Namespace* <http://readingexp.univ-lemans.fr/tei>

*Module* derived-module-tei\_readingExp

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*)  
(att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic  
(*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))  
(att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

*@ref* Reference

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 0–1 occurrences of **data.text** separated by whitespace

*Member of* model.profileDescPart

*Contained by*

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* textread

*header:* profileDesc

*May contain*

*header:* language

*Declaration*

```
element origLanguage
{
```

```

    att.global.attributes,
    attribute ref { data.text }?,
    ( language* )
}

```

**<origPlace>** (origin place) contains any form of place name, used to identify the place of origin for a manuscript or manuscript part. [10.3.1. Origination]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) att.naming ( @role, @nymRef )  
 (att.canonical ( @key, @ref )) att.dateable ( @calendar, @period ) (att.dateable.w3c  
 ( @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to )) (att.dateable.iso ( @when-iso,  
 @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso )) (att.dateable.custom  
 ( @when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom,  
 @datingPoint, @datingMethod )) att.editLike ( @evidence, @instant ) (att.dimensions  
 ( @unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope ) (att.ranging ( @atLeast, @atMost,  
 @min, @max, @confidence )) ) (att.source ( @source )) att.typed ( @type, @subtype )

*Member of* model.pPart.msdesc

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor  
 email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure  
 meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs  
 said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
 preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder  
 geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage  
 typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
 settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken*: u writing  
*tagdocs*: eg valDesc  
*textcrit*: lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure*: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
                imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr*: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse*: metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis*: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty*: certainty precision respons  
*core*: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
        foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
        milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp*: correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries*: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures*: figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji*: g  
*header*: idno  
*iso-fs*: fLib fs fvLib  
*linking*: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription*: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
                objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates*: addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
                geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
                population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken*: incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs*: att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit*: app witDetail  
*transcr*: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
                metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse*: caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```
element origPlace
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

### Example

```
<origPlace>Birmingham</origPlace>
```

*Note* The *type* attribute may be used to distinguish different kinds of ‘origin’, for example original place of publication, as opposed to original place of printing.

---

<origin> contains any descriptive or other information concerning the origin of a manuscript or manuscript part. [10.8. History]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* history

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```

element origin
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

*Example*

```

<origin evidence="internal" notAfter="1845"
  notBefore="1802" resp="#AMH">Copied in <name type="origPlace">Derby</name>,
probably from an
old Flemish original, between 1802 and 1845, according to
<persName xml:id="AMH">Anne-Mette Hansen</persName>.
</origin>

```

---

**<orth>** (orthographic form) gives the orthographic form of a dictionary headword. [9.3.1. Information on Written and Spoken Forms]

*Module* dictionaries

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

**@type** gives the type of spelling.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

**@extent** gives the extent of the orthographic information provided.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Sample values include:* **full** (full form) [Default]

**pref** (prefix)

**suff** (suffix)

**part** (partial)

*Member of* model.entryPart model.formPart

*Contained by*

*core:* cit

*dictionaries:* dictScrap entryFree form

*namesdates:* nym

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* biblFull idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element orth
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute extent { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

#### Example

```

<form type="infl">
  <orth>brags</orth>
  <orth>bragging</orth>
  <orth>bragged</orth>
</form>

```

#### Example

```

<form>
  <orth type="standard" xml:lang="ko-Hang">ㅁㅁ</orth>
  <orth type="transliterated"
    xml:lang="ko-Latn">chida</orth>
</form>

```

<p> (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose. [3.1. Paragraphs 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

#### Module core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.declaring (@decls) att.fragmentable  
(@part)

*Member of* model.pLike

*Contained by*

*core:* item note q quote said sp stage

*corpus:* particDesc setting settingDesc

*drama:* castList epilogue performance prologue set view

*figures:* cell figure

*header:* abstract application availability cRefPattern calendar change correction  
correspAction correspContext correspDesc editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc  
handNote hyphenation interpretation licence normalization prefixDef projectDesc  
publicationStmt punctuation quotation refsDecl samplingDecl scriptNote  
segmentation seriesStmt sourceDesc stdVals styleDefDecl typeNote

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions binding bindingDesc collation condition  
custEvent custodialHist decoDesc decoNote filiation foliation handDesc history  
layout layoutDesc msContents msDesc msItem msItemStruct msPart musicNotation  
objectDesc origin physDesc provenance recordHist scriptDesc seal sealDesc  
signatures source summary support supportDesc surrogates typeDesc

*namesdates:* climate event langKnowledge listRelation nym org person personGrp place  
population state terrain trait

*spoken:* broadcast equipment recording recordingStmt scriptStmt

*tagdocs:* exemplum remarks specGrp

*textstructure:* argument back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph front  
postscript

*transcr:* metamark

*verse:* metDecl

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing



*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```
element p
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.fragmentable.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

*Example*

```
<p>Hallgerd was outside. <q>There is blood on your axe,</q> she said. <q>What have
you
  done?</q>
</p>
<p>
  <q>I have now arranged that you can be married a second time,</q> replied Thjostolf.
</p>
<p>
  <q>Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead,</q> she said.
</p>
<p>
  <q>Yes,</q> said Thjostolf. <q>And now you must think up some plan for me.</q>
</p>
```

<pRef/> (pronunciation reference) in a dictionary example, indicates a reference to the pronunciation(s) of the headword. [9.4. Headword and Pronunciation References]

*Module* dictionaries

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target,  
@evaluate) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location,  
@mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

*Member of* model.ptrLike.form

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email  
emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure  
mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic  
soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth pVar per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg  
xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view  
*figures:* cell  
*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit  
forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset  
orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex  
socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* rhyme  
*May contain* Empty element  
*Declaration*

```
element pRef
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  empty
}
```

---

**<pVar>** (pronunciation-variant reference) in a dictionary example, indicates a reference to variant pronunciation(s) of the headword. [9. Dictionaries]

*Module* dictionaries

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target,  
@evaluate) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location,  
@mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

**@notation** indicates what notation is used for the pronunciation, if more than one occurs in the machine-readable dictionary.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>transcription</orth>
    <pron notation="IPA">trænskripʃən</pron>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
```

```

    <pos>n</pos>
  </gramGrp>
</entry>

```

*Member of* model.ptrLike.form

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email  
emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure  
mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic  
soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit  
forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset  
orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex  
socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*dictionaries:* pRef

*gaiji:* g

*Declaration*

```

element pVar
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  attribute notation { data.enumerated }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | pRef )*
}

```

*Note* Character data or <pRef/>.

**<particDesc>** (participation description) describes the identifiable speakers, voices, or other participants in any kind of text or other persons named or otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata. [15.2. Contextual Information]

*Module* corpus

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.declarable (@default)

*Member of* model.profileDescPart

*Contained by*

*header:* profileDesc

*May contain*

*core:* p

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* addressee listener reader sender textread

*linking:* ab

*namesdates:* listOrg listPerson org person personGrp

*Declaration*

```
element particDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( model.personLike | listPerson | listOrg )+ )
}
```

*Example*

```
<particDesc>
  <listPerson>
    <person age="mid" sex="2" xml:id="P-1234">
      <p>Female informant, well-educated, born in
        Shropshire UK, 12 Jan 1950, of unknown occupation. Speaks French fluently.
        Socio-Economic status B2.</p>
    </person>
    <person sex="1" xml:id="P-4332">
      <persName>
        <surname>Hancock</surname>
        <forename>Antony</forename>
        <forename>Aloysius</forename>
        <forename>St John</forename>
      </persName>
      <residence notAfter="1959">
        <address>
          <street>Railway Cuttings</street>
          <settlement>East Cheam</settlement>
        </address>
      </residence>
      <occupation>comedian</occupation>
    </person>
    <listRelation>
      <relation mutual="#P-1234 #P-4332"
        name="spouse" type="personal"/>
    </listRelation>
  </listPerson>
</particDesc>
```

This example shows both a very simple person description, and a very detailed one, using some of the more specialized elements from the module for Names and Dates.

*Note* May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a structured list of persons and person groups, with an optional formal specification of any relationships amongst them.

---

**<pause/>** marks a pause either between or within utterances. [8.3.2. Pausing]

*Module* spoken

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.timed (@start, @end) (att.duration (att.duration.w3c (@dur)) (att.duration.iso (@dur-iso)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.ascribed (@who)

*Member of* model.global.spoken

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
surfaceGrp surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element pause
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.timed.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  empty
}
```

*Example*

```
<pause dur="PT42S" type="pregnant"/>
```

---

**<pb/>** (page break) marks the start of a new page in a paginated document. [3.10.3. Milestone Elements]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*)  
(att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic  
(*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))  
(att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.edition  
(*@ed*, *@edRef*) att.spanning (*@spanTo*) att.breaking (*@break*)

*Member of* model.milestoneLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del  
distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint  
item l label lg list listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace  
publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term  
textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom  
hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg  
xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue  
role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote  
language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance  
rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
occupation offset org orgName persName person personGrp placeName region  
residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc subst supplied surface  
surfaceGrp surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```

element pb
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.edition.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.breaking.attributes,
  empty
}

```

*Example* Page numbers may vary in different editions of a text.

```

<p> ... <pb ed="ed2" n="145"/>
<!-- Page 145 in edition "ed2" starts here --> ... <pb ed="ed1" n="283"/>
<!-- Page 283 in edition "ed1" starts here--> ... </p>

```

*Example* A page break may be associated with a facsimile image of the page it introduces by means of the *facs* attribute

```

<body>
  <pb facs="page1.png" n="1"/>
  <!-- page1.png contains an image of the page;
  the text it contains is encoded here -->
  <p>
  <!-- ... -->
  </p>
  <pb facs="page2.png" n="2"/>
  <!-- similarly, for page 2 -->
  <p>
  <!-- ... -->
  </p>
</body>

```

*Note* A <pb/> element should appear at the start of the page which it identifies. The global *n* attribute indicates the number or other value associated with this page. This will normally be the page number or signature printed on it, since the physical

sequence number is implicit in the presence of the <pb/> element itself. The *type* attribute may be used to characterize the page break in any respect, for example as word-breaking or not.

---

**<pc>** (punctuation character) contains a character or string of characters regarded as constituting a single punctuation mark. [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]

*Module analysis*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.segLike (@function) (att.metrical (@met, @real, @rhyme)) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

**@force** indicates the extent to which this punctuation mark conventionally separates words or phrases

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Legal values are:* **strong** the punctuation mark is a word separator

**weak** the punctuation mark is not a word separator

**inter** the punctuation mark may or may not be a word separator

**@unit** provides a name for the kind of unit delimited by this punctuation mark.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

**@pre** indicates whether this punctuation mark precedes or follows the unit it delimits.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.truthValue

*Member of* model.segLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark



*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit  
forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset  
orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex  
socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c

*core:* abbr add choice corr del expan orig reg sic unclear

*gaiji:* g

*textcrit:* app

*transcr:* am damage ex handShift mod redo restore retrace subst supplied surplus undo

*Declaration*

```

element pc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute force { "strong" | "weak" | "inter" }?,
  attribute unit { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute pre { data.truthValue }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | c | model.pPart.edit ) *
}

```

*Example*

```

<phr>
  <w>do</w>
  <w>you</w>
  <w>understand</w>
  <pc type="interrogative">?</pc>
</phr>

```

**<per>** (person) contains an indication of the grammatical person (1st, 2nd, 3rd, etc.) associated with a given inflected form in a dictionary. [9.3.1. Information on Written and Spoken Forms]

*Module* dictionaries

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) att.lexicographic ( @expand, @norm, @split,  
@value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt ) (att.datcat ( @datcat, @valueDatcat ))

*Member of* model.morphLike

*Contained by*

*dictionaries:* dictScrap entryFree etym form gramGrp

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element per
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
}
```

*Example* Taken from *Wörterbuch der Deutschen Sprache. Veranstaltet und herausgegeben von Joachim Heinrich Campe. Vierter Theil. S - bis - T. (Braunschweig 1810. In der Schulbuchhandlung):*

Treffen, v. unregelm. ... du triffst, ...

```
<entry>
<form type="inflected">
  <gramGrp>
    <per value="2"/>
    <number value="singular"/>
    <tns value="present"/>
    <mood value="indicative"/>
  </gramGrp>
</form>
</entry>
```

```

<form type="personalpronoun">
  <orth>du</orth>
</form>
<form type="headword">
  <orth>
    <oVar>triffst</oVar>
  </orth>
</form>
</form>
</entry>

```

*Note* This element is synonymous with <gram type="person">.

**<performance>** contains a section of front or back matter describing how a dramatic piece is to be performed in general or how it was performed on some specific occasion. [7.1.3. Records of Performances 7.1. Front and Back Matter ]

*Module* drama

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space ) (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change)) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.frontPart.drama

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* back front

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* bibl biblStruct cb cit desc gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl meeting milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc textread

*dictionaries:* entry entryFree superEntry

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure notatedMusic table

*header:* biblFull

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription:* msDesc

*namesdates:* listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs:* classSpec constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec listRef macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specGrp specGrpRef

*textcrit:* listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```

element performance
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<performance>
  <p>
    <rs type="place">Gateway Theatre, Edinburgh</rs>, <date>6 September 1948</date>
    <castList>
      <castItem>
        <role>Anath Bithiah</role>
        <actor>Athene Seyler</actor>
      </castItem>
      <castItem>
        <role>Shendi</role>
        <actor>Robert Rietty</actor>
      </castItem>
    </castList>
  </p>
  <p>Directed by <name>E. Martin Browne</name>
</p>
</performance>

```

*Example*

```

<performance>
  <p>Cast of the original production at the <rs type="place">Savoy Theatre,
  London,</rs> on
  <date>September 24, 1907</date>
  <castList>
    <castItem>Colonel Hope : Mr A.E.George</castItem>
  </castList>
</p>
</performance>

```

*Note* contains paragraphs and an optional cast list only.

---

**<persName>** (personal name) contains a proper noun or proper-noun phrase referring to a person, possibly including one or more of the person's forenames, surnames, honorifics, added names, etc. [13.2.1. Personal Names]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space ) ( att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition ) ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select ) ) ( att.global.analytic ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) ( att.global.change ( @change ) ) ( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) ) att.datable ( @calendar, @period ) ( att.datable.w3c ( @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to ) ) ( att.datable.iso ( @when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso ) ) ( att.datable.custom ( @when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod ) ) att.editLike ( @evidence, @instant ) ( att.dimensions ( @unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope ) ) ( att.ranging ( @atLeast, @atMost,

(@min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source)) att.personal (@full, @sort)  
 (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type,  
 @subtype)

*Member of* model.nameLike.agent model.persStateLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc  
 distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l  
 label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote  
 ref reg resp respStmt rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time  
 title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
 preparedness purpose setting

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* addressee listener reader readingExpRef sender

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hypth  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition  
 extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote  
 sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset org orgName persName person personGrp placeName region  
 residence roleName settlement sex socStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji*: g  
*header*: idno  
*iso-fs*: fLib fs fvLib  
*linking*: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription*: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates*: addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken*: incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs*: att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit*: app witDetail  
*transcr*: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse*: caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element persName
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

*Example*

```

<persName>
  <forename>Edward</forename>
  <forename>George</forename>
  <surname type="linked">Bulwer-Lytton</surname>, <roleName>Baron Lytton of
  <placeName>Knebworth</placeName>
</roleName>
</persName>

```

---

**<person>** provides information about an identifiable individual, for example a participant in a language interaction, or a person referred to in a historical source. [13.3.2. The Person Element 15.2.2. The Participant Description]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope)) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey)

**@role** specifies a primary role or classification for the person.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.enumerated` separated by whitespace

*Note* Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as artist, employer, author, relative, or servant, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema specification.

@sex specifies the sex of the person.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.sex` separated by whitespace

*Note* Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, or may refer to an external standard, such as vCard's sex property

<http://microformats.org/wiki/gender-formats> (in

which M indicates male, F female, O other, N none or not applicable, U unknown), or the often used ISO 5218:2004

*Representation of Human Sexes* [http://standards.iso.org/ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266\\_ISO\\_IEC\\_5218\\_2004\(E\\_F\).zip](http://standards.iso.org/ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266_ISO_IEC_5218_2004(E_F).zip) (in which 0 indicates unknown; 1 male; 2

female; and 9 not applicable, although the ISO standard is widely considered inadequate); cf. CETH's *Recommendations for Inclusive Data Collection of Trans People* <http://transhealth.ucsf.edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection>.

@age specifies an age group for the person.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.enumerated`

*Note* Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as infant, child, teen, adult, or senior, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema specification.

*Member of* model.personLike

*Contained by*

*corpus:* particDesc

*namesdates:* listPerson org

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* bibl biblStruct cb gap gb index lb listBibl milestone note p pb

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc textread

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription:* msDesc

*namesdates:* affiliation age birth death education event faith floruit langKnowledge listEvent nationality occupation persName residence sex socecStatus state trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*textcrit:* witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```

element person
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  attribute role { list { data.enumerated+ } }?,
  attribute sex { list { data.sex+ } }?,
  attribute age { data.enumerated }?,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( model.personPart | model.global )* )
}

```

*Example*

```

<person age="adult" sex="F">
  <p>Female respondent, well-educated, born in Shropshire UK, 12 Jan 1950, of unknown
  occupation. Speaks French fluently. Socio-Economic
  status B2.</p>
</person>

```

*Example*

```

<person age="immortal" role="god"
sex="intersex">
  <persName>Hermaphroditos</persName>
  <persName xml:lang="grc">Ἑρμαφρόδιτος</persName>
</person>

```

*Example*

```

<person role="poet" sex="1" xml:id="Ovi01">
  <persName xml:lang="en">Ovid</persName>
  <persName xml:lang="la">Publius Ovidius Naso</persName>
  <birth when="-0044-03-20"> 20 March 43 BC <placeName>
    <settlement type="city">Sulmona</settlement>
    <country key="IT">Italy</country>
  </placeName>
</birth>
  <death notAfter="0018" notBefore="0017">17 or 18 AD <placeName>
    <settlement type="city">Tomis (Constanta)</settlement>
    <country key="RO">Romania</country>
  </placeName>
</death>
</person>

```

*Note* May contain either a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of more specific demographic elements drawn from the `model.personPart` class.

---

**<personGrp>** (personal group) describes a group of individuals treated as a single person for analytic purposes. [15.2.2. The Participant Description]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.rendition` (`@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`)) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`)) (`att.global.responsibility` (`@cert`, `@resp`)) `att.sortable` (`@sortKey`)

*@role* specifies the role of this group of participants in the interaction.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.enumerated`



*Note* Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as movement, employers, relatives, or servants, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema specification.

@sex specifies the sex of the participant group.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.sex` separated by whitespace

*Note* Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, or may refer to an external standard, such as vCard's sex property

<http://microformats.org/wiki/gender-formats> (in

which M indicates male, F female, O other, N none or not

applicable, U unknown), or the often used ISO 5218:2004

*Representation of Human Sexes* [http://standards.iso.org/](http://standards.iso.org/ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266_ISO_IEC_5218_2004(E_F).zip)

[ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266\\_ISO\\_IEC\\_5218\\_2004\(E\\_F\).zip](http://standards.iso.org/ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266_ISO_IEC_5218_2004(E_F).zip) (in which 0 indicates unknown; 1 male; 2

female; and 9 not applicable, although the ISO standard is widely considered inadequate); cf. CETH's *Recommendations for Inclusive*

*Data Collection of Trans People* [http://transhealth.ucsf.](http://transhealth.ucsf.edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection)

[edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection](http://transhealth.ucsf.edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection). For a mixed group, a value such as "mixed" may also be supplied.

@age specifies the age group of the participants.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.enumerated`

*Note* Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as infant, child, teen, adult, or senior, each

of which should be associated with a definition. Such local

definitions will typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema specification.

@size describes informally the size or approximate size of the group for example by means of a number and an indication of accuracy e.g. approx 200.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

*Member of* model.personLike

*Contained by*

*corpus:* particDesc

*namesdates:* listPerson org

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* bibl biblStruct cb gap gb index lb listBibl milestone note p pb

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc textread

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription:* msDesc

*namesdates:* affiliation age birth death education event faith floruit langKnowledge  
listEvent nationality occupation persName residence sex socecStatus state trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*textcrit:* witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin  
*Declaration*

```

element personGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  attribute role { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute sex { list { data.sex+ } }?,
  attribute age { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute size { list { data.word+ } }?,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( model.personPart | model.global )* )
}

```

*Example*

```

<personGrp role="audience" sex="mixed"
  size="approx 50" xml:id="pg1"/>

```

*Note* May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or any sequence of demographic elements in any combination. The global *xml:id* attribute should be used to identify each speaking participant in a spoken text if the *who* attribute is specified on individual utterances.

---

**<phr>** (phrase) represents a grammatical phrase. [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]

*Module analysis*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) att.segLike ( @function ) (att.metrical  
( @met, @real, @rhyme )) (att.datcat ( @datcat, @valueDatcat )) (att.fragmentable  
( @part )) att.typed ( @type, @subtype )

*Member of* model.segLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor  
email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure  
mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic  
soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit  
 forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset  
 orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex  
 socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone  
*verse:* rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element phr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

*Example*

```

<phr function="extraposted_modifier"
  type="verb">To talk
<phr function="complement"
  type="preposition">of
  <phr function="object" type="noun">many things</phr>
</phr>
</phr>

```

*Note* The *type* attribute may be used to indicate the type of phrase, taking values such as noun, verb, preposition, etc. as appropriate.

---

**<physDesc>** (physical description) contains a full physical description of a manuscript or manuscript part, optionally subdivided using more specialized elements from the `model.physDescPart` class. [10.7. Physical Description]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.rendition` (`@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`)) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`)) (`att.global.responsibility` (`@cert`, `@resp`))

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* msDesc msPart

*May contain*

*core:* p

*linking:* ab

*msdescription:* accMat additions bindingDesc decoDesc handDesc musicNotation objectDesc scriptDesc sealDesc typeDesc

*Declaration*

```

element physDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike*, ( model.physDescPart_sequenceOptional ) )
}

```

*Example*

```

<physDesc>
  <objectDesc form="codex">
    <supportDesc material="perg">
      <support>Parchment.</support>
      <extent>i + 55 leaves
      <dimensions scope="all" type="leaf"
        unit="inch">
          <height>7¼</height>
          <width>5⅜</width>
        </dimensions>
      </extent>
    </supportDesc>
    <layoutDesc>
      <layout columns="2">In double columns.</layout>
    </layoutDesc>
  </objectDesc>
  <handDesc>
    <p>Written in more than one hand.</p>
  </handDesc>

```

```

<decoDesc>
<p>With a few coloured capitals.</p>
</decoDesc>
</physDesc>

```

**<place>** contains data about a geographic location [13.3.4. Places]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey)

*Member of* model.placeLike

*Contained by*

*corpus:* settingDesc

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExp

*namesdates:* listPlace org place

*May contain*

*core:* bibl biblStruct desc head label listBibl note p

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* textread

*header:* biblFull idno

*linking:* ab link linkGrp

*msdescription:* msDesc

*namesdates:* bloc climate country district event geogName listPlace location place  
placeName population region settlement state terrain trait

*textcrit:* witDetail

*Declaration*

```

element place
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    (
      ( model.pLike* )
      | ( model.labellike | model.placeStateLike | model.placeEventLike )*
    ),
    ( model.noteLike | model.biblLike | idno | linkGrp | link )*,
    ( model.placeLike | listPlace )*
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<place>
<country>Lithuania</country>

```

```
<country xml:lang="lt">Lietuva</country>
<place>
  <settlement>Vilnius</settlement>
</place>
<place>
  <settlement>Kaunas</settlement>
</place>
</place>
```

---

**<placeName>** contains an absolute or relative place name. [13.2.3. Place Names]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source)) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.placeNamePart

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msIdentifier musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink  
 nationality occupation offset org orgName persName place placeName region  
 residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element placeName
{
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

*Example*

```

<placeName>
  <settlement>Rochester</settlement>

```

```
<region>New York</region>
</placeName>
```

*Example*

```
<placeName>
  <geogName>Arrochar Alps</geogName>
  <region>Argylshire</region>
</placeName>
```

*Example*

```
<placeName>
  <measure>10 miles</measure>
  <offset>Northeast of</offset>
  <settlement>Attica</settlement>
</placeName>
```

---

**<population>** contains information about the population of a place. [13.3.4.3. States, Traits, and Events]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.placeStateLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg



*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset org orgName persName place placeName population region  
 residence roleName settlement sex soccecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*core:* bibl biblStruct desc head label listBibl note p

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* textread

*header:* biblFull

*linking:* ab

*msdescription:* msDesc

*namesdates:* population

*textcrit:* witDetail

*Declaration*

```

element population
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    (
      ( ( model.pLike+ ) | ( model.labellike+ ) ),
      ( model.noteLike | model.biblLike ) *
    )?,
    population*
  )
}

```

#### Example

```

<population resp="#UKCensus" when="2001-04">
  <population type="white">
    <desc>54153898</desc>
  </population>
  <population type="asian">
    <desc>11811423</desc>
  </population>
  <population type="black">
    <desc>1148738</desc>
  </population>
  <population type="mixed">

```

```
<desc>677117</desc>
</population>
<population type="chinese">
  <desc>247403</desc>
</population>
<population type="other">
  <desc>230615</desc>
</population>
</population>
```

---

**<pos>** (part of speech) indicates the part of speech assigned to a dictionary headword such as noun, verb, or adjective. [9.3.2. Grammatical Information]

*Module dictionaries*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

*Member of* model.entryPart model.gramPart

*Contained by*

*core:* cit

*dictionaries:* dictScrap entryFree form gramGrp

*namesdates:* nym

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element pos
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

*Example*

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>isotope</orth>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <pos>adj</pos>
  </gramGrp>
</entry>
```

**<postBox>** (postal box or post office box) contains a number or other identifier for some postal delivery point other than a street address. [3.5.2. Addresses]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.addrPart

*Contained by*

*core:* address

*May contain* Character data only

*Declaration* `element postBox { att.global.attributes, text }`

*Example*

```
<postBox>P.O. Box 280</postBox>
```

*Example*

```
<postBox>Postbus 532</postBox>
```

*Note* The position and nature of postal codes is highly country-specific; the conventions appropriate to the country concerned should be used.

**<postCode>** (postal code) contains a numerical or alphanumeric code used as part of a postal address to simplify sorting or delivery of mail. [3.5.2. Addresses]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,

*@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select*) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.addrPart

*Contained by*

*core:* address

*May contain* Character data only

*Declaration* `element postCode { att.global.attributes, text }`

*Example*

```
<postCode>HR1 3LR</postCode>
```

*Example*

```
<postCode>60142-7</postCode>
```

*Note* The position and nature of postal codes is highly country-specific; the conventions appropriate to the country concerned should be used.

---

**<postscript>** contains a postscript, e.g. to a letter. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend, @style, @rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select*)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.divBottomPart

*Contained by*

*core:* lg list

*drama:* epilogue performance prologue

*figures:* figure table

*textstructure:* back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group postscript

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* bibl biblStruct cb cit desc gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc textread

*dictionaries:* entry entryFree superEntry

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure notatedMusic table

*header:* biblFull

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription:* msDesc

*namesdates:* listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* classSpec constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec listRef macroSpec moduleSpec  
 schemaSpec specGrp specGrpRef  
*textcrit:* listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* closer floatingText opener postscript signed trailer  
*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin  
*Declaration*

```

element postscript
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( model.global | model.divTopPart )*,
    ( model.common ),
    ( model.global | model.common )*,
    ( ( model.divBottomPart ), model.global* )*
  )
}

```

#### Example

```

<div type="letter">
  <opener>
    <dateline>
      <placeName>Rimaone</placeName>
      <date when="2006-11-21">21 Nov 06</date>
    </dateline>
    <salute>Dear Susan,</salute>
  </opener>
  <p>Thank you very much for the assistance splitting those
    logs. I'm sorry about the misunderstanding as to the size of
    the task. I really was not asking for help, only to borrow the
    axe. Hope you had fun in any case.</p>
  <closer>
    <salute>Sincerely yours,</salute>
    <signed>Seymour</signed>
  </closer>
  <postscript>
    <label>P.S.</label>
    <p>The collision occured on <date when="2001-07-06">06 Jul 01</date>.</p>
  </postscript>
</div>

```

<precision> indicates the numerical accuracy or precision associated with some aspect of the text markup. [21.2. Indications of Precision]

#### Module certainty

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 ( att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition ) ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select ) ) ( att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) ( att.global.change ( @change ) )  
 ( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) ) att.scoping ( @target, @match ) att.ranging  
 ( @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence ) att.dateable ( @calendar, @period )  
 ( att.dateable.w3c ( @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to ) ) ( att.dateable.iso  
 ( @when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso ) ) ( att.dateable.custom  
 ( @when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom,  
 @datingPoint, @datingMethod ) )

- @degree** indicates the degree of precision to be assigned as a value between 0 (none) and 1 (optimally precise)  
*Deprecated* will be removed on 2015-11-12  
*Status* Optional  
*Datatype* `data.probability`
- @precision** characterizes the precision of the element or attribute pointed to by the <precision> element.  
*Status* Optional  
*Datatype* `data.certainty`
- @stdDeviation** supplies a standard deviation associated with the value in question  
*Status* Optional  
*Datatype* `data.numeric`

*Member of* model.certLike model.global.meta

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl interp m phr s span w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gap gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xi

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab join seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5

div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc space substJoin  
supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* desc  
*Declaration*

```

element precision
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.scoping.attributes,
  att.ranging.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  attribute degree { data.probability }?,
  attribute precision { data.certainty }?,
  attribute stdDeviation { data.numeric }?,
  ( model.descLike | model.certLike )*
}

```

*Example*

```

<date notAfter="0064" notBefore="0014"
  xml:id="date001">Within about 50
years of the death of Augustus</date>
<precision degree="0.9" match="@notBefore"
  target="#date001"/>
<precision degree="0.3" match="@notAfter"
  target="#date001"/>

```

*Example*

```

<date notAfter="1642" notBefore="1632">Not more than ten years before the start of
the Civil War
<precision match="@notBefore"
  precision="low"/>
<precision match="@notAfter"
  precision="high"/>
</date>

```

---

<prefixDef> (prefixing scheme used in data.pointer values) defines a prefixing scheme used in data.pointer values, showing how abbreviated URIs using the scheme may be expanded into full URIs. [16.2.3. Using Abbreviated Pointers]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
( att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition ) ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select ) ) ( att.global.analytic  
( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) ( att.global.change ( @change ) )  
( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) ) att.patternReplacement ( @matchPattern,  
@replacementPattern )

**@ident** supplies a name which functions as the prefix for an abbreviated pointing scheme such as a private URI scheme. The prefix constitutes the text preceding the first colon.

*Status* Required

Datatype data.name

Contained by: listPrefixDef

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Declaration

```
element prefixDef
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.patternReplacement.attributes,
  attribute ident { data.name },
  model.pLike*
}
```

Example

```
<prefixDef ident="ref"
matchPattern="([a-z]+)"
replacementPattern="../../references/references.xml#$1">
<p> In the context of this project, private URIs with
the prefix "ref" point to <gi>div</gi> elements in
the project's global references.xml file.
</p>
</prefixDef>
```

*Note* The abbreviated pointer may be dereferenced to produce either an absolute or a relative URI reference. In the latter case it is combined with the value of *xml:base* in force at the place where the pointing attribute occurs to form an absolute URI in the usual manner as prescribed by XML Base.

**<preparedness>** describes the extent to which a text may be regarded as prepared or spontaneous. [15.2.1. The Text Description]

Module corpus

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

@type a keyword characterizing the type of preparedness.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Sample values include: **none** spontaneous or unprepared

**scripted** follows a script

**formulaic** follows a predefined set of conventions

**revised** polished or revised before presentation

Member of model.textDescPart

Contained by

corpus: textDesc

May contain



*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index  
lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled  
term time title  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang  
*figures:* figure notatedMusic  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident tag val  
*textcrit:* witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst  
substJoin

#### Declaration

```

element preparedness
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

#### Example

```
<preparedness type="none"/>
```

**<principal>** (principal researcher) supplies the name of the principal researcher responsible for the creation of an electronic text. [2.2.1. The Title Statement]

#### Module header

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)

*Member of* model.respLike

#### Contained by

*core:* bibl  
*header:* editionStmnt titleStmnt

*msdescription:* msItem

#### May contain

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index  
lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled  
term time title

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident tag val

*textcrit:* witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst  
substJoin

*Declaration*

```
element principal
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

*Example*

```
<principal ref="http://viaf.org/viaf/105517912">Gary Taylor</principal>
```

---

**<profileDesc>** (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting. [2.4. The Profile Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.teiHeaderPart

*Contained by*

*header:* teiHeader

*May contain*

*corpus:* particDesc settingDesc textDesc

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* origLanguage

*header:* abstract calendarDesc correspDesc creation langUsage textClass

*transcr:* handNotes listTranspose

*Declaration*

```
element profileDesc { att.global.attributes, ( model.profileDescPart* ) }
```

*Example*

```
<profileDesc>
  <langUsage>
    <language ident="fr">French</language>
  </langUsage>
  <textDesc n="novel">
    <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
    <constitution type="single"/>
    <derivation type="original"/>
    <domain type="art"/>
    <factuality type="fiction"/>
    <interaction type="none"/>
    <preparedness type="prepared"/>
    <purpose degree="high" type="entertain"/>
    <purpose degree="medium" type="inform"/>
  </textDesc>
  <settingDesc>
    <setting>
      <name>Paris, France</name>
      <time>Late 19th century</time>
    </setting>
  </settingDesc>
</profileDesc>
```

*Note* Although the content model permits it, it is rarely meaningful to supply multiple occurrences for any of the child elements of <profileDesc> unless these are documenting multiple texts. In earlier versions of these Guidelines, it was required that the <creation> element appear first.

**<projectDesc>** (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected. [2.3.1. The Project Description 2.3. The Encoding Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.declarable (@default)

*Member of* model.encodingDescPart

*Contained by*

*header:* encodingDesc

*May contain*

*core:* p

*linking:* ab

*Declaration*

```
element projectDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
```

```

    model.pLike+
}

```

*Example*

```

<projectDesc>
  <p>Texts collected for use in the Claremont Shakespeare Clinic, June 1990</p>
</projectDesc>

```

---

**<prologue>** contains the prologue to a drama, typically spoken by an actor out of character, possibly in association with a particular performance or venue. [7.1.2. Prologues and Epilogues 7.1. Front and Back Matter ]

*Module drama*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.frontPart.drama*Contained by**textstructure:* back front*May contain**analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp*certainty:* certainty precision respons*core:* bibl biblStruct cb cit desc gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl meeting  
 milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc textread*dictionaries:* entry entryFree superEntry*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view*figures:* figure notatedMusic table*header:* biblFull*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline*msdescription:* msDesc*namesdates:* listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing*tagdocs:* classSpec constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec listRef macroSpec moduleSpec  
 schemaSpec specGrp specGrpRef*textcrit:* listApp listWit witDetail*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText  
 opener postscript salute signed trailer*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin*Declaration*

```

element prologue
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (

```

```

        ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
        ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
        ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
    )
}

```

*Example*

```

<prologue>
  <sp>
    <l>Wits, like physicians never can agree,</l>
    <l>When of a different society.</l>
    <l>New plays are stuffed with wits, and with deboches,</l>
    <l>That crowd and sweat like cits in May-Day coaches.</l>
  </sp>
  <trailer>Written by a person of quality</trailer>
</prologue>

```

**<pron>** (pronunciation) contains the pronunciation(s) of the word. [9.3.1. Information on Written and Spoken Forms]

*Module dictionaries*

*Attributes* Attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (*att.global.rendition* (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (*att.global.linking* (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*)) (*att.global.change* (*@change*)) (*att.global.responsibility* (*@cert*, *@resp*)) *att.lexicographic* (*@expand*, *@norm*, *@split*, *@value*, *@orig*, *@location*, *@mergedIn*, *@opt*) (*att.datcat* (*@datcat*, *@valueDatcat*))

**@extent** indicates whether the pronunciation is for whole word or part.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Sample values include:* **full** (full form) [Default]

**pref** (prefix)

**suff** (suffix)

**part** (partial)

*Note*

**@notation** indicates what notation is used for the pronunciation, if more than one occurs in the machine-readable dictionary.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>transcription</orth>
    <pron notation="IPA">trænskriˈpʃən</pron>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <pos>n</pos>
  </gramGrp>
</entry>

```

*Member of* model.entryPart model.formPart

*Contained by*

*core:* cit

*dictionaries:* dictScrap entryFree form

*namesdates:* nym

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element pron
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  attribute extent { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute notation { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.paraContent}
```

*Example*

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>obverse</orth>
    <pron>'äb-`ärs</pron>,
    <pron extent="prefix">äb-`</pron>, <pron extent="prefix">äb-`</pron>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <pos>n</pos>
  </gramGrp>
</entry>
```

*Note* The values used to specify the notation may be taken from any appropriate project-defined list of values. Typical values might be *IPA*, *Murray*, for example.

**<provenance>** contains any descriptive or other information concerning a single identifiable episode during the history of a manuscript or manuscript part, after its creation but before its acquisition. [10.8. History]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.dataable (@calendar, @period) (att.dataable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dataable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.dataable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.source (@source)

*Contained by*

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* textread

*msdescription:* history

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element provenance
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.source.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}
```

*Example*

```
<provenance>Listed as the property of Lawrence Sterne in 1788.</provenance>
<provenance>Sold at Sothebys in 1899.</provenance>
```

---

**<ptr/>** (pointer) defines a pointer to another location. [3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References 16.1. Links]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target,  
@evaluate) att.internetMedia (@mimeType) att.typed (@type, @subtype)  
att.declaring (@decls) att.cReferencing (@cRef)

*Member of* model.ptrLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine analytic author bibl biblScope biblStruct cit citedRange corr  
date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem  
headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned monogr name note num orig p  
pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg relatedItem resp rs said series sic soCalled  
speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp  
hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg  
xt

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc notatedMusic

*header:* application authority catDesc change classCode correspContext creation  
distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal  
rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab altGrp joinGrp linkGrp seg



*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
 settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* eLeaf eTree

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg listRef valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus transpose

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```

element ptr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.internetMedia.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.cReferencing.attributes,
  empty
}

```

*Schematron* <s:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target and @cRef may be supplied on <s:name/>.</s:report>

*Example*

```

<ptr target="#p143 #p144"/>
<ptr target="http://www.tei-c.org"/>
<ptr cRef="1.3.4"/>

```

**<pubPlace>** (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published. [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef)  
 (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

*Member of* model.imprintPart model.publicationStmntPart.detail

*Contained by*

*core:* bibl imprint

*header:* publicationStmnt

*textstructure:* docImprint

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element pubPlace
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example*

```
<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Oxford University Press</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <date>1989</date>
</publicationStmt>
```

---

**<publicationStmt>** (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2. The File Description]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*)  
(att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic  
(*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))  
(att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

*Contained by*

*header:* biblFull fileDesc

*May contain*

*core:* address date p pubPlace publisher

*header:* authority availability distributor idno

*linking:* ab

*Declaration*

```

element publicationStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    (
      ( model.publicationStmtPart.agency ),
      model.publicationStmtPart.detail*
    )+
    | model.pLike+
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>C. Muquardt </publisher>
  <pubPlace>Bruxelles & Leipzig</pubPlace>
  <date when="1846"/>
</publicationStmt>

```

*Example*

```

<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Chadwyck Healey</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Cambridge</pubPlace>
  <availability>
    <p>Available under licence only</p>
  </availability>
  <date when="1992">1992</date>
</publicationStmt>

```

*Note* Where a publication statement contains several members of the `model.publicationStmtPart` classes rather than one or more paragraphs or anonymous blocks, care should be taken to ensure that the repeated elements are presented in a meaningful order. It is a conformance requirement that elements supplying information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned, and preferably in that order.

---

**<publisher>** provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.rendition` (`@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`)) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`)) (`att.global.responsibility` (`@cert`, `@resp`))

*Member of* model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.agency

*Contained by*

*core:* bibl imprint

*header:* publicationStmt

*textstructure:* docImprint

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

`element publisher { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }`

*Example*

```
<imprint>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher>
  <date>1987</date>
</imprint>
```

*Note* Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page

---

**<punctuation>** specifies editorial practice adopted with respect to punctuation marks in the original. [2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration 3.2. Treatment of Punctuation]

*Module header*

*Attributes* *Attributes* att.declarable (@default) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

**@marks** indicates whether or not punctuation marks have been retained as content within the text.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Legal values are:* **none** no punctuation marks have been retained

**some** some punctuation marks have been retained

**all** all punctuation marks have been retained

**@placement** indicates whether punctuation marks have been captured inside or outside of an adjacent element.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Legal values are:* **internal** punctuation marks are captured inside adjacent elements

**external** punctuation marks are captured outside adjacent elements

*Member of* model.editorialDeclPart

*Contained by*

*header:* editorialDecl

*May contain*

*core:* p

*linking:* ab

*Declaration*

```
element punctuation
{
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute marks { "none" | "some" | "all" }?,
  attribute placement { "internal" | "external" }?,
  model.pLike*
}
```

*Example*

```
<punctuation marks="all"
  placement="internal">
  <p>All punctuation marks in the source text have been retained and represented
  using the
    appropriate Unicode code point. In cases where a punctuation mark and nearby
  markup convey
    the same information (for example, a sentence ends with a question mark and is
  also tagged
    as <gi>s</gi>) the punctuation mark is captured as content within the element.
  </p>
</punctuation>
```

**<purpose>** characterizes a single purpose or communicative function of the text.

[15.2.1. The Text Description]

*Module* corpus

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*)  
(att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic  
(*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))  
(att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

**@type** specifies a particular kind of purpose.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Suggested values include:* **persuade** didactic, advertising, propaganda,  
etc.

**express** self expression, confessional, etc.

**inform** convey information, educate, etc.

**entertain** amuse, entertain, etc.

**@degree** specifies the extent to which this purpose predominates.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.certainty**

*Note* Values should be interpreted as follows.

**high** this purpose is predominant

**medium** this purpose is intermediate

**low** this purpose is weak

**unknown** extent unknown

*Contained by:* textDesc

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index  
lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled  
term time title

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident tag val

*textcrit:* witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst  
substJoin

*Declaration*

```

element purpose
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type
  {
    "persuade" | "express" | "inform" | "entertain" | xsd:Name
  }?,
  attribute degree { data.certainty }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

*Example*

```

<purpose degree="high" type="persuade"/>
<purpose degree="low" type="entertain"/>

```

*Note* Usually empty, unless some further clarification of the type attribute is needed, in which case it may contain running prose

---

**<q>** (quoted) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used. [3.3.3. Quotation]

*Module core*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.ascribed (@who) att.source (@source)

**@type** may be used to indicate whether the offset passage is spoken or thought, or to characterize it more finely.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Suggested values include:* **spoken** representation of speech

**thought** representation of thought, e.g. internal monologue

**written** quotation from a written source

**soCalled** authorial distance

**foreign**

**distinct** linguistically distinct

**term** technical term

**emph** rhetorically emphasized

**mentioned** referring to itself, not its normal referent

*Member of* model.qLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said  
sic sp stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr  
*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view  
*figures:* cell figDesc figure  
*header:* change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote  
*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
support surrogates  
*spoken:* writing  
*textcrit:* lem rdg witness  
*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb  
ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* biblFull idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait  
*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme



*Declaration*

```

element q
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  att.source.attributes,
  attribute type
  {
    "spoken"
    | "thought"
    | "written"
    | "soCalled"
    | "foreign"
    | "distinct"
    | "term"
    | "emph"
    | "mentioned"
    | xsd:Name
  }?,
  macro.specialPara}

```

*Example*

It is spelled <q>Tübingen</q> – to enter the letter <q>u</q> with an umlaut hold down the <q>option</q> key and press <q>0 0 f c</q>

*Note* May be used to indicate that a passage is distinguished from the surrounding text for reasons concerning which no claim is made. When used in this manner, <q> may be thought of as syntactic sugar for <hi> with a value of *rend* that indicates the use of such mechanisms as quotation marks.

<quotation> specifies editorial practice adopted with respect to quotation marks in the original. [2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.declarable (@default)

*@marks* (quotation marks) indicates whether or not quotation marks have been retained as content within the text.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Legal values are:* **none** no quotation marks have been retained

**some** some quotation marks have been retained

**all** all quotation marks have been retained

*Member of* model.editorialDeclPart

*Contained by*

*header:* editorialDecl

*May contain*

*core:* p

*linking:* ab

*Declaration*

```

element quotation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  attribute marks { "none" | "some" | "all" }?,
  model.pLike*
}

```

*Schematron* <s:report test="not(@marks) and not (tei:p)">On <s:name/>, either the @marks attribute should be used, or a paragraph of description provided</s:report>

*Example*

```

<quotation marks="none">
  <p>No quotation marks have been retained. Instead, the <att>rend</att> attribute
on the
  <gi>q</gi> element is used to specify what kinds of quotation mark was used,
according
  to the following list: <list type="gloss">
    <label>dq</label>
    <item>double quotes, open and close</item>
    <label>sq</label>
    <item>single quotes, open and close</item>
    <label>dash</label>
    <item>long dash open, no close</item>
    <label>dg</label>
    <item>double guillemets, open and close</item>
  </list>
  </p>
</quotation>

```

*Example*

```

<quotation marks="all">
  <p>All quotation marks are retained in the text and are represented by appropriate
Unicode
  characters.</p>
</quotation>

```

---

**<quote>** (quotation) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to some agency external to the text. [3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.1. Grouped Texts]

*Module core*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change)) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) att.typed ( @type, @subtype) att.msExcerpt ( @defective) att.source ( @source)

*Member of model.quoteLike**Contained by*

*core:* add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure  
*header:* change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote  
*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
 filiation foliation layout msItem musicNotation origin provenance signatures source  
 summary support surrogates  
*spoken:* writing  
*textcrit:* lem rdg witness  
*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
 imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
 distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
 listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb  
 ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* biblFull idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
 offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
 surname terrain trait  
*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
 macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element quote
{
    att.global.attributes,

```

```
att.typed.attributes,  
att.msExcerpt.attributes,  
att.source.attributes,  
macro.specialPara}
```

*Example*

```
Lexicography has shown little sign of being affected by the  
work of followers of J.R. Firth, probably best summarized in his  
slogan, <quote>You shall know a word by the company it  
keeps</quote>  
<ref>(Firth, 1957)</ref>
```

*Note* If a bibliographic citation is supplied for the source of a quotation, the two may be grouped using the <cit> element.

---

**<rdg>** (reading) contains a single reading within a textual variation. [12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses]

*Module* textcrit

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.textCritical (@type, @cause, @varSeq,  
@hand) (att.source (@source)) att.witnessed (@wit)

*Member of* model.rdgLike

*Contained by*

*textcrit:* app rdgGrp

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl  
measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote  
ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app lacunaEnd lacunaStart listApp listWit wit witDetail witEnd witStart  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element rdg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.textCritical.attributes,
  att.witnessed.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter      | model.global      | model.rdgPart
  )
}

```

*Example*

```
<rdg wit="#Ra2">Eryment</rdg>
```

**<rdgGrp>** (reading group) within a textual variation, groups two or more readings perceived to have a genetic relationship or other affinity. [12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses]

*Module* textcrit

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) att.textCritical ( @type, @cause, @varSeq,  
@hand ) (att.source ( @source ))

*Contained by*

*textcrit:* app rdgGrp

*May contain*

*textcrit:* lem rdg rdgGrp wit

*Declaration*

```

element rdgGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.textCritical.attributes,
  ( ( ( rdgGrp, wit? ) | ( ( lem, wit? )? , ( model.rdgLike, wit? ) ) * ) + )
}

```

*Schematron* <sch:assert test="count(tei:lem) < 2">Only one <lem> element may appear within a <rdgGrp></sch:assert>

*Example*

```

<app>
  <lem wit="#E1 #Ra2">though</lem>
  <rdgGrp type="orthographic">
    <rdg wit="#Hg">thogh</rdg>
  </rdgGrp>
</app>

```

```
<rdg wit="#La">thouhe</rdg>
</rdgGrp>
</app>
```

*Note* May contain readings and nested reading groups. Note that only one <lem> element may appear within a single apparatus entry, whether it appears outside a <rdgGrp> element or within it.

---

**<re>** (related entry) contains a dictionary entry for a lexical item related to the headword, such as a compound phrase or derived form, embedded inside a larger entry. [9.3.6. Related Entries]

*Module dictionaries*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.entryPart model.entryPart.top

*Contained by*

*core:* cit

*dictionaries:* dictScrap entry entryFree hom re sense

*namesdates:* nym

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del distinct email emph  
expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* def dictScrap etym form gramGrp lang oRef oVar pRef pVar re sense usg xr

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element re
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | sense      | model.entryPart.top    | model.phrase      | model.global
  )
}

```

*Example* The following example from *Webster's New Collegiate Dictionary* (Springfield, Mass.: G. & C. Merriam Company, 1975) shows a single related entry for which no definition is given, since its meaning is held to be readily derivable from the root entry:

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>neu·ral</orth>
    <pron>'n(y)ūr-əl</pron>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <pos>adj</pos>
  </gramGrp>
  <sense n="1">
    <def>of, relating to, or affecting a nerve or the nervous system</def>
  </sense>
  <sense n="2"> ... </sense>
  <re>
    <form>
      <orth>neurally</orth>
      <pron extent="suffix">-ə-lē</pron>
    </form>
    <gramGrp>
      <pos>adv</pos>
    </gramGrp>
  </re>
</entry>

```

*Example* The following example from *Diccionario de la Universidad de Chicago Inglés-Español y Español-Inglés / The University of Chicago Spanish Dictionary, Fourth Edition, compiled by Carlos Castillo and Otto F. Bond* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1987) shows a number of related entries embedded in the main entry. The original entry resembles the following:

**abeja** [a · bé · xa]*f.* bee; **abejera** [a · be · xé · ra]*f.* beehive; **abejón** [a · be · xóon]*m.* drone; **abejorro** [a · be · xó · rro]*m.* bumble bee.

One encoding for this entry would be:

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>abeja</orth>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <gen>f. </gen>
  </gramGrp>
  <sense n="1.">
    <usg type="domain"> (ento.) </usg>
    <def> bee </def>. </sense>

```

```
<sense n="2.">
  <def> busy bee, hard worker </def>. </sense>
<sense n="3.">
  <usg orig="A." type="domain"> (astron.) </usg>, <def> Musca </def> – </sense>
<re>
  <form>
    <orth orig="a. albanila"> abeja albanila </orth>, </form>
  <sense>
    <def>mason bee</def>;</sense>
</re>
<re>
  <form>
    <orth orig="a. carpintera"> abeja carpintera </orth>, </form>
  <sense>
    <def>carpenter bee </def>;</sense>
</re>
<re>
  <form>
    <orth orig="a. reina or maestra"
      xml:id="re-o3"> abeja reina </orth>
    <orth mergedIn="#re-o4"> abeja maestra </orth>
  </form>
  <sense>
    <def> queen bee </def>;</sense>
</re>
<re>
  <form>
    <orth orig="a. neutra or obrera"
      xml:id="re-o4"> abeja neutra </orth>
    <orth mergedIn="#re-o3"> abeja obrera </orth>
  </form>
  <sense>
    <def>worker bee</def>.</sense>
</re>
</entry>
```

*Example* In the much larger Simon & Schuster Spanish-English dictionary (*Tana de Gámez, ed., Simon and Schuster's International Dictionary* (New York: Simon and Schuster, 1973).) these derived forms of *abeja* are treated as separate main entries, but there are other embedded phrases shown as <re>s in its main entry for *abeja*:

abeja, f. 1. (ento.) bee. 2. busy bee, hard worker. 3. (astron.) A., Musca.  
— a. albanila, mason bee; a. carpintera, carpenter bee; a. reina or maestra, queen bee; a. neutra or obrera, worker bee.

This entry may be encoded thus:

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>abeja</orth>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <gen>f.</gen>
  </gramGrp>
  <sense n="1.">
    <usg type="domain">(ento.)</usg>
    <def>bee</def>.</sense>
  <sense n="2.">
    <def>busy bee, hard worker</def>.</sense>
  <sense n="3.">
    <usg orig="A." type="domain">(astron.)</usg>, <def>Musca</def> – </sense>
  <re>
    <form>
```



```

    <orth orig="a. albanila">abeja albanila</orth>, </form>
  <sense>
    <def>mason bee</def>; </sense>
</re>
<re>
  <form>
    <orth orig="a. carpintera">abeja carpintera</orth>, </form>
  <sense>
    <def>carpenter bee</def>; </sense>
</re>
<re>
  <form>
    <orth orig="a. reina or maestra"
      xml:id="re-01">abeja reina</orth>
    <orth mergedIn="#re-01">abeja maestra</orth>
  </form>
  <sense>
    <def>queen bee</def>; </sense>
</re>
<re>
  <form>
    <orth orig="a. neutra or obrera"
      xml:id="re-02">abeja neutra</orth>
    <orth mergedIn="#re-02">abeja obrera</orth>
  </form>
  <sense>
    <def>worker bee</def>. </sense>
</re>
</entry>

```

*Note* May contain character data mixed with any other elements defined in the dictionary tag set. Identical in sub-elements to an <entry> tag, and used where a dictionary has embedded information inside one entry which could have formed a separate entry. Some authorities distinguish related entries, run-on entries, and various other types of degenerate entries; no such typology is attempted here.

---

<reader> Contains all the information on the listener.

*Namespace* <http://readingexp.univ-lemans.fr/tei>

*Module* derived-module-tei\_readingExp

*Attributes* Attributes att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.dateable (@calendar, @period) (att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.dateable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.dateable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod) att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.source (@source)) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.global.facs (@facs)  
att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,  
@select) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.responsibility  
(@cert, @resp) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))  
att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key,  
@ref)) ) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) att.source  
(@source) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.nameLike model.personLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr span

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc  
distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l  
label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote  
ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
particDesc preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExp readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition  
extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote  
sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown listPerson nameLink  
nationality occupation offset org orgName persName placeName region residence  
roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readerStatus

*namesdates:* birth country education faith nationality occupation persName sex

*Declaration*

<pre>element reader {   att.canonical.attributes,</pre>
---

```

    att.dataable.attributes,
    att.dataable.custom.attributes,
    att.dataable.iso.attributes,
    att.dataable.w3c.attributes,
    att.dimensions.attributes,
    att.editLike.attributes,
    att.global.attributes,
    att.global.analytic.attributes,
    att.global.change.attributes,
    att.global.facs.attributes,
    att.global.linking.attributes,
    att.global.rendition.attributes,
    att.global.responsibility.attributes,
    att.naming.attributes,
    att.personal.attributes,
    att.ranging.attributes,
    att.source.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    (
        persName*,
        sex*,
        birth*,
        occupation*,
        country*,
        education*,
        faith*,
        nationality*,
        readerStatus*
    )
}

```

**<readerStatus>** Contains information on the degree of professionalism of the reader in his reading activities.

*Namespace* <http://readingexp.univ-lemans.fr/tei>

*Module* derived-module-tei\_readingExp

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)

**@ref** Reference

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 0–1 occurrences of **data.text** separated by whitespace

*Contained by* derived-module-tei\_readingExp: addressee reader sender

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```

element readerStatus
{
    att.global.attributes,

```

```
att.global.analytic.attributes,  
att.global.change.attributes,  
att.global.facs.attributes,  
att.global.linking.attributes,  
att.global.rendition.attributes,  
att.global.responsibility.attributes,  
attribute ref { data.text }?,  
empty  
}
```

---

**<readingExp>** Contains all the description of the reading experience elements.

*Namespace* `http://readingexp.univ-lemans.fr/tei`

*Module* `derived-module-tei_readingExp`

*Attributes* `Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)`  
`(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,`  
`@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic`  
`(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))`  
`(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))`

**@ref** Reference

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 0–1 occurrences of `data.text` separated by whitespace

*Contained by* `derived-module-tei_readingExp`: `readingExpDesc`

*May contain*

*core*: `date` `note` `respStmt` `title`

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp*: `emotion` `experienceType` `listener` `reader` `textread`

*header*: `langUsage`

*namesdates*: `place`

*Declaration*

```
element readingExp  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  attribute ref { data.text }?,  
  (  
    respStmt*,  
    date*,  
    reader*,  
    listener*,  
    place*,  
    langUsage*,  
    textread*,  
    experienceType*,  
    note*,  
    title*,  
    emotion*  
  )  
}
```

---

**<readingExpDesc>**

*Namespace* http://readingexp.univ-lemans.fr/tei

*Module* derived-module-tei\_readingExp

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))

*Member of* model.teiHeaderPart

*Contained by*

*header:* teiHeader

*May contain*

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExp

*Declaration*

<pre>element readingExpDesc { att.global.attributes, ( readingExp* ) }</pre>
--

## <readingExpRef>

*Namespace* http://readingexp.univ-lemans.fr/tei

*Module* derived-module-tei\_readingExp

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))

**@ref** Reference

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 0–1 occurrences of 

data.text
-----------

 separated by whitespace

*Member of* model.pPart.data

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct  
 editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label  
 measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref  
 reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
 preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder  
 geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage  
 typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

<code>element readingExpRef</code> <code>{</code>
--

```
att.global.attributes,
attribute ref { data.text }?,
macro.paraContent}
```

**<recordHist>** (recorded history) provides information about the source and revision status of the parent manuscript description itself. [10.9.1. Administrative Information]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space ) (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change )) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* adminInfo

*May contain*

*core:* p

*header:* change

*linking:* ab

*msdescription:* source

*Declaration*

```
element recordHist
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( source, change* ) )
}
```

*Example*

```
<recordHist>
  <source>
    <p>Derived from <ref target="#IMEV">IMEV 123</ref> with additional research
      by P.M.W.Robinson</p>
  </source>
  <change when="1999-06-23">
    <name>LDB</name> (editor)
    checked examples against DTD version 3.6
  </change>
</recordHist>
```

**<recording>** (recording event) provides details of an audio or video recording event used as the source of a spoken text, either directly or from a public broadcast. [8.2. Documenting the Source of Transcribed Speech 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

*Module* spoken

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space ) (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change )) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) att.declarable ( @default ) att.duration (att.duration.w3c ( @dur )) (att.duration.iso ( @dur-iso ))

@type the kind of recording.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Legal values are:* **audio** audio recording[Default]

**video** audio and video recording

*Contained by:* broadcast recordingStmt

*May contain*

*core:* date media p respStmt time

*linking:* ab

*spoken:* broadcast equipment

*Declaration*

```
element recording
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.duration.attributes,
  attribute type { "audio" | "video" }?,
  ( model.recordingPart | model.pLike )*
}
```

*Example*

```
<recording dur="P30M" type="audio">
  <equipment>
    <p>Recorded on a Sony TR444 walkman by unknown participants; remastered
      to digital tape at <placeName>Borehamwood Studios</placeName> by
    <orgName>Transcription Services Inc</orgName>.</p>
  </equipment>
</recording>
```

*Example*

```
<recording dur="P10M" type="audio">
  <equipment>
    <p>Recorded from FM Radio to digital tape</p>
  </equipment>
  <broadcast>
    <bibl>
      <title>Interview on foreign policy</title>
      <author>BBC Radio 5</author>
      <respStmt>
        <resp>interviewer</resp>
        <name>Robin Day</name>
      </respStmt>
      <respStmt>
        <resp>interviewee</resp>
        <name>Margaret Thatcher</name>
      </respStmt>
    </bibl>
    <series>
      <title>The World Tonight</title>
    </series>
    <note>First broadcast on
      <date when="1989-11-27">27 Nov 89</date>
    </note>
  </broadcast>
</recording>
```



*Note* The *dur* attribute is used to indicate the original duration of the recording.

**<recordingStmt>** (recording statement) describes a set of recordings used as the basis for transcription of a spoken text. [8.2. Documenting the Source of Transcribed Speech 2.2.7. The Source Description]

*Module* spoken

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

*Member of* model.sourceDescPart

*Contained by*

*header:* sourceDesc

*May contain*

*core:* p

*linking:* ab

*spoken:* recording

*Declaration*

```
element recordingStmt { att.global.attributes, ( model.pLike+ | recording+ ) }
```

*Example*

```
<recordingStmt>
  <recording dur="P30M" type="audio">
    <respStmt>
      <resp>Location recording by</resp>
      <name>Sound Services Ltd.</name>
    </respStmt>
    <equipment>
      <p>Multiple close microphones mixed down to stereo Digital
        Audio Tape, standard play, 44.1 KHz sampling frequency</p>
    </equipment>
    <date>12 Jan 1987</date>
  </recording>
</recordingStmt>
```

*Example*

```
<recordingStmt>
  <p>Three
    distinct recordings made by hidden microphone in early February
    2001.</p>
</recordingStmt>
```

**<redo/>** indicates one or more cancelled interventions in a document which have subsequently been marked as reaffirmed or repeated. [11.3.4.4. Confirmation, Cancellation, and Reinstatement of Modifications]

*Module* transcr

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic

(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.transcriptional  
(@hand, @status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions  
(@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost,  
@min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source)) )

**@target** points to one or more elements representing the interventions which are  
being reasserted.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

*Member of* model.pPart.transcriptional

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl pc phr s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor  
email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure  
mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic  
soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit  
forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset  
orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex  
socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element redo
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  attribute target { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  empty
}
```

*Example*

```

<line>
  <redo cause="fix" hand="#g_t"
    target="#redo-1"/>
  <mod hand="#g_bl" rend="strikethrough"
    spanTo="#anchor-1" xml:id="redo-1"/>Ihr hagren, triften,
krummgezog<mod rend="strikethrough">nen</mod>ener Nacken
</line>
<line>Wenn ihr nur piepfet ist die Welt fchon matt.<anchor xml:id="anchor-1"/>
</line>

```

This encoding represents the following sequence of events:

- "Ihr hagren, tristen, krummgezog nenener Nacken/ Wenn ihr nur piepset ist die Welt schon matt." is written
- the redundant letters "nen" in "nenener" are deleted
- the whole passage is deleted by hand **g\_bl** using **strikethrough**
- the deletion is reasserted by another hand (identified here as **g\_t**)

---

**<ref>** (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment. [3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References 16.1. Links]

*Module core*

*Attributes* *Attributes* *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (*att.global.rendition* (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (*att.global.linking* (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*)) (*att.global.change* (*@change*)) (*att.global.responsibility* (*@cert*, *@resp*)) *att.pointing* (*@targetLang*, *@target*, *@evaluate*) *att.internetMedia* (*@mimeType*) *att.typed* (*@type*, *@subtype*) *att.declaring* (*@decls*) *att.cReferencing* (*@cRef*)

*Member of model.ptrLike**Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine analytic author bibl biblScope biblStruct cit citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned monogr name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg relatedItem resp rs said series sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xi

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc notatedMusic

*header:* application authority catDesc change classCode correspContext creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* eLeaf eTree

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

element ref
-------------

```
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.internetMedia.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.cReferencing.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

*Schematron* <s:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target' and @cRef' may be supplied on <s:name/></s:report>

*Example*

See especially <ref target="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2">the second sentence</ref>

*Example*

See also <ref target="#locution">s.v. <term>locution</term></ref>.

*Note* The *target* and *cRef* attributes are mutually exclusive.

**<refState/>** (reference state) specifies one component of a canonical reference defined by the milestone method. [2.3.6.3. Milestone Method 2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.milestoneUnit (@unit) att.edition (@ed, @edRef)

**@length** specifies the fixed length of the reference component.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.count**

*Note* When constructing a reference, if the reference component found is of numeric type, the length is made up by inserting leading zeros; if it is not, by inserting trailing blanks. In either case, reference components are truncated if necessary at the right hand side. When seeking a reference, the length indicates the number of characters which should be compared. Values longer than this will be regarded as matching, if they start correctly. If no value is provided, the length is unlimited and goes to the next delimiter or to the end of the value.

**@delim** (delimiter) supplies a delimiting string following the reference component.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.text**

*Contained by:* refsDecl

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element refState
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.milestoneUnit.attributes,
  att.edition.attributes,
  attribute length { data.count }?,
  attribute delim { data.text }?,
  empty
}
```

*Example*

```
<refState delim=":" unit="book"/>
<refState length="4" unit="line"/>
```

---

**<refsDecl>** (references declaration) specifies how canonical references are constructed for this text. [2.3.6.3. Milestone Method 2.3. The Encoding Description 2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) att.declarable ( @default )

*Member of* model.encodingDescPart

*Contained by*

*header:* encodingDesc

*May contain*

*core:* p

*header:* cRefPattern refState

*linking:* ab

*Declaration*

```
element refsDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | cRefPattern+ | refState+ )
}
```

*Example*

```
<refsDecl>
  <cRefPattern matchPattern="([A-Za-z0-9]+) ([0-9]+):([0-9]+)"
    replacementPattern="#xpath(//body/div[@n='$1']/div[$2]/div3[$3])"/>
</refsDecl>
```

This example is a formal representation for the referencing scheme described informally in the following example.

*Example*

```
<refsDecl>
  <p>References are made up by concatenating the value for the
  <att>n</att> attribute on the highest level <gi>div</gi>
  element, followed by a space, followed by the sequential
```

```

number of the next level <gi>div</gi> followed by a colon
followed by the sequential number of the next (and lowest)
level <gi>div</gi>.</p>
</refsDecl>

```

**<reg>** (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense. [3.4.2. Regularization and Normalization 12. Critical Apparatus]

*Module core*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) att.editLike ( @evidence, @instant )  
 (att.dimensions ( @unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope )) (att.ranging  
 ( @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence )) ) (att.source ( @source )) att.typed  
 ( @type, @subtype )

*Member of* model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl pc phr s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del distinct  
 editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label  
 measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said  
 sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit  
 forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset  
 orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex  
 socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element reg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
}
```

*Example* If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been regularized, <reg> may be used alone:

```
<q>Please <reg>knock</reg> if an <reg>answer</reg> is <reg>required</reg>
</q>
```

*Example* It is also possible to identify the individual responsible for the regularization, and, using the <choice> and <orig> elements, to provide both the original and regularized readings:

```
<q>Please <choice>
  <reg resp="#LB">knock</reg>
  <orig>cnk</orig>
</choice> if an <choice>
  <reg>answer</reg>
  <orig>nsr</orig>
</choice> is <choice>
  <reg>required</reg>
  <orig>reqd</orig>
```



```
</choice>
</q>
```

**<region>** contains the name of an administrative unit such as a state, province, or county, larger than a settlement, but smaller than a country. [13.2.3. Place Names]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dateable (@calendar, @period) (att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.dateable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))

*Member of* model.placeNamePart

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msIdentifier musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink nationality occupation offset org orgName persName place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element region
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example*

```
<placeName>
  <region n="IL" type="state">Illinois</region>
</placeName>
```

---

**<relatedItem>** contains or references some other bibliographic item which is related to the present one in some specified manner, for example as a constituent or alternative version of it. [3.11.2.7. Related Items]

*Module core*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,

(@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

**@target** points to the related bibliographic element by means of an absolute or relative URI reference

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

*Member of* model.biblPart

*Contained by*

*core:* bibl biblStruct

*header:* notesStmt

*May contain*

*core:* bibl biblStruct listBibl ptr ref

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* textread

*header:* biblFull

*msdescription:* msDesc

*Declaration*

```

element relatedItem
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute target { data.pointer }?,
  ( model.biblLike | model.ptrLike )?
}

```

*Schematron* <sch:report test="@target and count( child::\* ) > 0">If the @target attribute on <sch:name/> is used, the relatedItem element must be empty</sch:report> <sch:assert test="@target or child::\*">A relatedItem element should have either a 'target' attribute or a child element to indicate the related bibliographic item</sch:assert>

*Example*

```

<biblStruct>
  <monogr>
    <author>Shirley, James</author>
    <title type="main">The gentlemen of Venice</title>
    <imprint>
      <pubPlace>New York</pubPlace>
      <publisher>Readex Microprint</publisher>
      <date>1953</date>
    </imprint>
    <extent>1 microprint card, 23 x 15 cm.</extent>
  </monogr>
  <series>
    <title>Three centuries of drama: English, 1642–1700</title>
  </series>
  <relatedItem type="otherForm">
    <biblStruct>
      <monogr>
        <author>Shirley, James</author>
        <title type="main">The gentlemen of Venice</title>
        <title type="sub">a tragi-comedie presented at the private house in Salisbury Court by Her Majesties servants</title>
        <imprint>
          <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>

```

```

<publisher>H. Moseley</publisher>
<date>1655</date>
</imprint>
<extent>78 p.</extent>
</monogr>
</biblStruct>
</relatedItem>
</biblStruct>

```

*Note* If the *target* attribute is used to reference the related bibliographic item, the element should be empty.

---

**<relation>** (relationship) describes any kind of relationship or linkage amongst a specified group of places, events, persons, objects or other items. [13.3.2.3. Personal Relationships]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change)) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) att.dataable ( @calendar, @period) (att.dataable.w3c ( @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dataable.iso ( @when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.dataable.custom ( @when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike ( @evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions ( @unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging ( @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source ( @source)) att.canonical ( @key, @ref) att.sortable ( @sortKey) att.typed ( @type, @subtype)

**@name** supplies a name for the kind of relationship of which this is an instance.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

**@active** identifies the ‘active’ participants in a non-mutual relationship, or all the participants in a mutual one.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

**@mutual** supplies a list of participants amongst all of whom the relationship holds equally.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

**@passive** identifies the ‘passive’ participants in a non-mutual relationship.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

*Contained by* listBibl

*namesdates:* listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation

*May contain*

*core:* desc

*Declaration*

```

element relation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute name { data.enumerated }?,
  (
    attribute active { list { data.pointer+ } }?
    | attribute mutual { list { data.pointer+ } }?
  ),
  attribute passive { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  desc?
}

```

*Schematron* <s:assert test="@ref or @key or @name">One of the attributes 'name', 'ref' or 'key' must be supplied</s:assert>

*Schematron* <s:report test="@active and @mutual">Only one of the attributes @active and @mutual may be supplied</s:report>

*Schematron* <s:report test="@passive and not(@active)">the attribute 'passive' may be supplied only if the attribute 'active' is supplied</s:report>

*Example*

```

<relation active="#p1" name="supervisor"
  passive="#p2 #p3 #p4" type="social"/>

```

This indicates that the person with identifier p1 is supervisor of persons p2, p3, and p4.

*Example*

```

<relation mutual="#p2 #p3 #p4"
  name="friends" type="personal"/>

```

This indicates that p2, p3, and p4 are all friends.

*Example*

```

<relation active="http://id.clarosnet.org/places/metamorphoses/place/italy-orvieto"
  name="P89_falls_within"
  passive="http://id.clarosnet.org/places/metamorphoses/country/IT" type="CRM"/>

```

This indicates that there is a relation, defined by CIDOC CRM, between two resources identified by URLs.

*Example*

```

<relation active="http://www.ancientwisdoms.ac.uk/cts/
urn:cts:greekLit:tlg3017.Syno298.sawsGrc01:divedition.divsection1.o14.a107"
  passive="http://data.perseus.org/citations/
urn:cts:greekLit:tlg0031.tlg002.perseus-grc1:9.35"
  ref="http://purl.org/saws/ontology#isVariantOf" resp="http://viaf.org/viaf/
44335536/" />

```

This example records a relationship, defined by the SAWS ontology, between a passage of text identified by a CTS URN, and a variant passage of text in the Perseus Digital Library, and assigns the identification of the relationship to a particular editor (all using resolvable URIs).

*Note* Only one of the attributes *active* and *mutual* may be supplied; the attribute *passive* may be supplied only if the attribute *active* is supplied. Not all of these constraints can be enforced in all schema languages.

**<remarks>** contains any commentary or discussion about the usage of an element, attribute, class, or entity not otherwise documented within the containing element. [22.4.4. Element Specifications 22.4.5. Attribute List Specification 22.4.6. Element Classes 22.4.7. Pattern Documentation]

*Module* tagdocs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.translatable (@versionDate)

*Contained by*

*tagdocs:* attDef classSpec elementSpec macroSpec moduleSpec

*May contain*

*core:* p

*linking:* ab

*Declaration*

```
element remarks
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.translatable.attributes,
  model.pLike+
}
```

*Example*

```
<remarks>
  <p>This element is probably redundant.</p>
</remarks>
```

*Note* Contains at least one paragraph, unless it is empty. As defined in ODD, must contain paragraphs; should be special.para

---

**<rendition>** supplies information about the rendition or appearance of one or more elements in the source text. [2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration]

*Module* header

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.styleDef (@scheme, @schemeVersion)  
**@scope** where CSS is used, provides a way of defining ‘pseudo-elements’, that is, styling rules applicable to specific sub-portions of an element.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.enumerated`

*Sample values include:* **first-line** styling applies to the first line of the target element

**first-letter** styling applies to the first letter of the target element

**before** styling should be applied immediately before the content of the target element

**after** styling should be applied immediately after the content of the target element

*Contained by:* tagsDecl

*May contain*

*core:* abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote refs said soCalled stage term time title

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* table

*header:* biblFull idno

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef macroSpec moduleSpec specGrp specGrpRef tag val

*textcrit:* listApp listWit

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* am ex subst

*Declaration*

```

element rendition
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.styleDef.attributes,
  attribute scope { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.limitedContent}

```

*Example*

```

<tagsDecl>
  <rendition scheme="css" xml:id="r-center">text-align: center;</rendition>
  <rendition scheme="css" xml:id="r-small">font-size: small;</rendition>
  <rendition scheme="css" xml:id="r-large">font-size: large;</rendition>
  <rendition scheme="css"
    scope="first-letter" xml:id="initcaps">font-size: xx-large</rendition>
</tagsDecl>

```

*Note* The present release of these Guidelines does not specify the content of this element in any further detail. It may be used to hold a description of the default rendition to be associated with the specified element, expressed in running prose, or in some more formal language such as CSS.

<repository> contains the name of a repository within which manuscripts are stored, possibly forming part of an institution. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef)  
(att.canonical (@key, @ref))

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* altIdentifier msIdentifier

*May contain*

*gaiji:* g

*Declaration*

```
element repository
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.xtext}
```

*Example*

```
<msIdentifier>
  <settlement>Oxford</settlement>
  <institution>University of Oxford</institution>
  <repository>Bodleian Library</repository>
  <idno>MS. Bodley 406</idno>
</msIdentifier>
```

---

**<residence>** describes a person's present or past places of residence. [15.2.2. The Participant Description]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.datable (@calendar, @period)  
(att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso  
(@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom  
(@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom,  
@datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions  
(@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost,  
@min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef)  
(att.canonical (@key, @ref))

*Member of* model.persStateLike

*Contained by*

*namesdates:* person personGrp

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear



*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element residence
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

#### Example

```
<residence>Childhood in East Africa and long term resident of Glasgow,
Scotland.</residence>
```

#### Example

```

<residence notAfter="1997">Mbeni estate, Dzukumura region, Matabele land</residence>
<residence notAfter="1996" notBefore="1903">
  <placeName>
    <settlement>Glasgow</settlement>
    <region>Scotland</region>
  </placeName>
</residence>

```

**<resp>** (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility, or an organization's role in the production or distribution of a work.  
 [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]

#### Module core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.dataable

(*@calendar*, *@period*) (*att.dataable.w3c* (*@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*,  
*@to*)) (*att.dataable.iso* (*@when-iso*, *@notBefore-iso*, *@notAfter-iso*, *@from-iso*,  
*@to-iso*)) (*att.dataable.custom* (*@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*,  
*@notAfter-custom*, *@from-custom*, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*, *@datingMethod*))

*Contained by*

*core:* respStmt

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index  
lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled  
term time title

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident tag val

*textcrit:* witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst  
substJoin

*Declaration*

```
element resp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

*Example*

```
<respStmt>
  <resp ref="http://id.loc.gov/vocabulary/relators/com.html">compiler</resp>
  <name>Edward Child</name>
</respStmt>

```

*Note* The attributes *key* or *ref*, inherited from the class *att.canonical* may be used to indicate the kind of responsibility in a normalized form, by referring directly (using *ref*) or indirectly (using *key*) to a standardized list of responsibility types, such as that maintained by a naming authority, for example the list maintained at <http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html> for bibliographic usage.

**<respStmt>** (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) att.canonical ( @key, @ref )

*Member of* model.recordingPart model.respLike

*Contained by*

*core:* analytic bibl imprint monogr series

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExp

*header:* editionStmt seriesStmt titleStmt

*msdescription:* msItem msItemStruct

*spoken:* recording

*May contain*

*core:* name resp

*namesdates:* orgName persName

*Declaration*

```

element respStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  ( ( resp+, model.nameLike.agent+ ) | ( model.nameLike.agent+, resp+ ) )
}

```

*Example*

```

<respStmt>
  <resp>transcribed from original ms</resp>
  <persName>Claus Huitfeldt</persName>
</respStmt>

```

*Example*

```

<respStmt>
  <resp>converted to XML encoding</resp>
  <name>Alan Morrison</name>
</respStmt>

```

**<respons>** (responsibility) identifies the individual(s) responsible for some aspect of the content or markup of particular element(s). [21.3. Attribution of Responsibility]

*Module* certainty

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))

(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.scoping (@target, @match) att.source (@source)

**@locus** indicates the specific aspect of the encoding (markup or content) for which responsibility is being assigned.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.enumerated` separated by whitespace

*Legal values are:* **name** responsibility is being assigned concerning the name of the element or attribute used.

**start** responsibility is being assigned concerning the start of the element concerned.

**end** responsibility is being assigned concerning the end of the element concerned.

**location** responsibility is being assigned concerning the location of the element concerned.

**value** responsibility is being assigned concerning the content (for an element) or the value (for an attribute)

*Member of* model.certLike model.global.meta

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl interp m phr s span w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gap gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab join seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc space substJoin  
supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* desc

*Declaration*

```

element respons
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.scoping.attributes,
  att.source.attributes,
  attribute locus
  {
    list { ( "name" | "start" | "end" | "location" | "value" )+ }
  },
  ( model.descLike | model.certLike )*
}

```

*Example*

```

<respons locus="name location"
  resp="#encoder1" target="#p1"/>
<respons locus="value" match="@rend"
  resp="#encoder2" target="#p2"/>
<list type="encoders">
  <item xml:id="encoder1"/>
  <item xml:id="encoder2"/>
</list>

```

*Example* In this (partially fictional) example the entire document was transcribed and encoded by a single encoder, except for one passage which was transcribed and encoded by the proofreader.

```

<!-- in the <teiHeader>: --><respStmt xml:id="enc01">
  <name>C. Colin Backslash</name>
  <resp>transcription</resp>
  <resp>encoding</resp>
</respStmt>
<respStmt xml:id="prf01">
  <name>Erin Spelling</name>
  <resp>proofreading</resp>
</respStmt>
<!-- in the <text>: -->
<p>θερινή τροπή
<lb/>
  <foreign xml:id="mp0a8" xml:lang="heb"> □
  <supplied reason="undefined">□□</supplied>
  <unclear/>□<unclear>
    □ □□□
  </foreign>
</p>
<!-- elsewhere: -->

```

```
<respons locus="name value" resp="#prf01"
target="#mp0a8"/>
```

*Example* In this (partially fictional) example an initial encoder ('across.dta') encoded most of the document; a later encoder ('rcapolung.ewo') encoded a particular passage; and a third encoder ('sbauman.emt') fixed some of that encoding.

```
<!-- in the <teiHeader>: --><respStmt xml:id="enc03">
  <persName ref="../../../contextual/persons.xml#across.dta"/>
  <resp>encoding</resp>
</respStmt>
<!-- in the <text>: -->
<spGrp rend="braced(atoncel)"
xml:id="sgrp05">
  <sp who="#mo">
    <speaker rend="align(left)slant(italic)">
      <persName>Mor</persName>.</speaker>
    <p rend="break(no)">So, so, so!</p>
  </sp>
  <sp who="#hg">
    <speaker rend="align(left)slant(italic)">
      <persName>Mr. H</persName>.</speaker>
    <p rend="break(no)">What, without my Leave!</p>
  </sp>
  <sp who="#la">
    <speaker rend="align(left)slant(italic)">
      <persName>Lady D</persName>.</speaker>
    <p rend="break(no)">Amazing!</p>
  </sp>
</spGrp>
<stage rend="align(right)slant(italic)"
type="delivery" xml:id="atoncel">All together.</stage>
<!-- anywhere: -->
<respons locus="name"
resp="../../../contextual/persons.xml#rcapolung.ewo" target="sgrp05">
  <desc>Ashley did not know what to do with this; I have decided it
    best fits as a braced <gi>spGrp</gi>
  </desc>
</respons>
<respons locus="value" match="//@rend"
resp="../../../contextual/persons.xml#sbauman.emt" target="sgrp05">
  <desc>fixed <att>rend</att> attributes</desc>
</respons>
```

*Note* The <respons> element is designed for cases in which fine-grained information about specific aspects of the markup of a text is desirable for whatever reason. Global responsibility for certain aspects of markup is usually more simply indicated in the TEI header, using the <respStmt> element within the title statement, edition statement, or change log.

---

**<restore>** indicates restoration of text to an earlier state by cancellation of an editorial or authorial marking or instruction. [11.3.1.6. Cancellation of Deletions and Other Markings]

*Module* transcr

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.transcriptional (@hand, @status,  
 @cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit,  
 @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min,  
 @max, @confidence))) ) (att.source (@source)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.pPart.transcriptional

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl pc phr s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor  
 email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure  
 mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic  
 soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit  
 forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset  
 orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex  
 socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
 distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
 listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
 q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```

element restore
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Example*

```

For I hate this
<restore hand="#dhl"
  type="marginalStetNote">
  <del>my</del>
</restore> body

```

*Note* On this element, the *type* attribute categorizes the way that the cancelled intervention has been indicated in some way, for example by means of a marginal note, over-inking, additional markup, etc.

---

**<retrace>** contains a sequence of writing which has been retraced, for example by over-inking, to clarify or fix it. [11.3.4.3. Fixation and Clarification]

*Module transcr*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) att.spanning ( @spanTo) att.transcriptional  
( @hand, @status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike ( @evidence, @instant)) (att.dimensions  
( @unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging ( @atLeast, @atMost,  
@min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source ( @source)) )

*Member of* model.pPart.transcriptional

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl pc phr s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor  
email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure



mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic  
 soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr  
*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view  
*figures:* cell  
*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit  
 forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset  
 orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex  
 socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone  
*verse:* rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
 distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
 listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
 q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* biblFull idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
 offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
 surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
 macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element retrace
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Note* Multiple retraces are indicated by nesting one <retrace> within another. In principle, a retrace differs from a substitution in that second and subsequent rewrites do not materially alter the content of an element. Where minor changes have been made during the retracing action however these may be marked up using <del>, <add>, etc. with an appropriate value for the *change* attribute.

---

**<revisionDesc>** (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file. [2.5. The Revision Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) att.docStatus ( @status )

*Contained by*

*header:* teiHeader

*May contain*

*core:* list

*header:* change listChange

*Declaration*

```

element revisionDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  ( list | listChange | change+ )
}

```

*Example*

```

<revisionDesc status="embargoed">
  <change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change>
</revisionDesc>

```

*Note* If present on this element, the *status* attribute should indicate the current status of the document. The same attribute may appear on any <change> to record the

status at the time of that change. Conventionally change elements should be given in reverse date order, with the most recent change at the start of the list.

<rhyme> marks the rhyming part of a metrical line. [6.5. Rhyme]

*Module* verse

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*)  
(att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic  
(*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))  
(att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

*@label* provides a label (usually a single letter) to identify which part of a rhyme scheme this rhyming string instantiates.

*Status* Recommended

*Datatype* data.word

*Note* Within a particular scope, all <rhyme> elements with the same value for their *label* attribute are assumed to rhyme with each other. The scope is defined by the nearest ancestor element for which the *rhyme* attribute has been supplied.

*Member of* model.IPart

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email  
emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure  
mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic  
soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit  
forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset  
orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex  
socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element rhyme
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute label { data.word }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Example*

```
<lg rhyme="abababcc">
  <l>'Tis pity learned virgins ever <rhyme label="a">wed</rhyme>
  </l>
  <l>With persons of no sort of edu<rhyme label="b">cation</rhyme>,</l>
  <l>Or gentlemen, who, though well born and <rhyme label="a">bred</rhyme>,</l>
  <l>Grow tired of scientific conver<rhyme label="b">sation</rhyme>:</l>
  <l>I don't choose to say much on this <rhyme label="a">head</rhyme>,</l>
  <l>I'm a plain man, and in a single <rhyme label="b">station</rhyme>,</l>
  <l>But – Oh! ye lords of ladies inte<rhyme label="c">llectual</rhyme>,</l>
  <l>Inform us truly, have they not hen-<rhyme label="a">peck'd you all</rhyme>?</l>
</lg>

```

**<role>** contains the name of a dramatic role, as given in a cast list. [7.1.4. Cast Lists]

*Module* drama

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*)  
(att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic  
(*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))  
(att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

*Member of* model.castItemPart

*Contained by*

*drama:* castItem

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element role { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

*Example*

```
<role xml:id="jt">Joan Trash</role>
<roleDesc>A Ginger-bread-woman</roleDesc>
```

*Note* It is important to assign a meaningful ID attribute to the <role> element, since this ID is referred to by *who* attributes on many other elements.

**<roleDesc>** (role description) describes a character's role in a drama. [7.1.4. Cast Lists]

*Module* drama

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*)  
 (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic  
 (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))  
 (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

*Member of* model.castItemPart

*Contained by*

*drama:* castGroup castItem

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

<pre>element roleDesc { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>
--

*Example*

```
<roleDesc>gentlemen of leisure</roleDesc>
```

---

**<roleName>** contains a name component which indicates that the referent has a particular role or position in society, such as an official title or rank. [13.2.1. Personal Names]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*)  
 (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic

(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming  
 (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.persNamePart

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc  
 distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l  
 label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote  
 ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
 preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition  
 extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote  
 sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
 settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element roleName
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example*

```
<persName>
  <forename>William</forename>
  <surname>Poulteny</surname>
  <roleName>Earl of Bath</roleName>
</persName>
```

*Note* A <roleName> may be distinguished from an <addName> by virtue of the fact that, like a title, it typically exists independently of its holder.

---

**<root>** (root node) represents the root node of a tree. [19.2. Trees]

*Module* nets

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

**@value** identifies the root node of the network by pointing to a feature structure  
or other analytic element.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.pointer**

**@children** identifies the elements which are the children of the root node.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of **data.pointer** separated by whitespace

*Note* If the root has no children (i.e., the tree is ‘trivial’), then the  
*children* attribute should be omitted.

**@ord** (ordered) indicates whether or not the root is ordered.



*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.xTruthValue`

*Note* The value true indicates that the children of the root are ordered, whereas false indicates the are unordered. Use if and only if *ord* is specified as partial on the <tree> element and the root has more than one child.

*@outDegree* gives the out degree of the root, the number of its children.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.count`

*Note* The in degree of the root is always 0.

*Contained by* tree

*May contain*

*core:* label

*Declaration*

```
element root
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute value { data.pointer }?,
  attribute children { list { data.pointer+ } },
  attribute ord { data.xTruthValue }?,
  attribute outDegree { data.count }?,
  label?
}
```

*Example*

```
<root children="#vb1 #pn1" outDegree="2"
  xml:id="vp1">
  <label>VP</label>
</root>
<leaf xml:id="vb1"/>
<leaf xml:id="pn1"/>
```

<row> contains one row of a table. [14.1.1. TEI Tables]

*Module* figures

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) att.tableDecoration ( @role, @rows, @cols)

*Contained by*

*figures:* table

*May contain*

*figures:* cell

*Declaration*

```
element row { att.global.attributes, att.tableDecoration.attributes, cell+ }
```

*Example*

```
<row role="data">
  <cell role="label">Classics</cell>
  <cell>Idle listless and unimproving</cell>
</row>
```

---

**<rs>** (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string. [13.2.1. Personal Names 3.5.1. Referring Strings]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.source (@source)

*Member of* model.nameLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation offset org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```

element rs
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.source.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

*Example*

```

<q>My dear <rs type="person">Mr. Bennet</rs>, </q> said <rs type="person">his
lady</rs>
to him one day,
<q>have you heard that <rs type="place">Netherfield Park</rs> is let at
last?</q>

```

<rubric> contains the text of any *rubric* or heading attached to a particular manuscript item, that is, a string of words through which a manuscript signals the beginning of a text division, often with an assertion as to its author and title, which is in some way set off from the text itself, usually in red ink, or by use of different size or type of script, or some other such visual device. [10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.msQuoteLike

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* msItem msItemStruct

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element rubric { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

*Example*

```
<rubric>Nu koma Skyckiu Rym<expan>ur</expan>.</rubric>
<rubric>Incipit liber de consciencia humana a beatissimo Bernardo editus.</rubric>
<rubric>
  <locus>16. f. 28v in margin: </locus>Dicta Cassiodori
</rubric>
```

---

<S> (s-unit) contains a sentence-like division of a text. [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories  
8.4.1. Segmentation]

*Module analysis*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,

(@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.segLike (@function) (att.metrical (@met, @real, @rhyme)) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.segLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element s
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.global      | binaryObject      | formula      | graphic      | medi
```

*Schematron* <s:report test="tei:s">You may not nest one s element within another: use  
seg instead</s:report>

*Example*

```
<head>
  <s>A short affair</s>
</head>
<s>When are you leaving?</s>
<s>Tomorrow.</s>
```

*Note* The <s> element may be used to mark orthographic sentences, or any other  
segmentation of a text, provided that the segmentation is end-to-end, complete, and  
non-nesting. For segmentation which is partial or recursive, the <seg> should be  
used instead. The *type* attribute may be used to indicate the type of segmentation  
intended, according to any convenient typology.

---

**<said>** (speech or thought) indicates passages thought or spoken aloud, whether explicitly  
indicated in the source or not, whether directly or indirectly reported, whether by  
real people or fictional characters. [3.3.3. Quotation]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.ascribed (@who)

**@aloud** may be used to indicate whether the quoted matter is regarded as having  
been vocalized or signed.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.xTruthValue

*Default* unknown

<p> Celia thought privately, <said aloud="false">Dorothea quite despises Sir James Chettam;  
 I believe she would not accept him.</said> Celia felt that this was a pity.

<!-- ... -->  
 </p>

*Note* The value true indicates the encoded passage was expressed outwardly (whether spoken, signed, sung, screamed, chanted, etc.); the value false indicates that the encoded passage was thought, but not outwardly expressed.

@direct may be used to indicate whether the quoted matter is regarded as direct or indirect speech.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.xTruthValue

*Default* true

<!-- in the header --><editorialDecl>  
 <quotation marks="none"/>  
 </editorialDecl>  
 <!-- .... -->  
 <p> Tantripp had brought a card, and said that there was a gentleman waiting in the lobby.  
 The courier had told him that <said direct="false">only Mrs. Casaubon was at home</said>,  
 but he said <said direct="false">he was a relation of Mr. Casaubon's: would she see him?</said>  
 </p>

*Note* The value true indicates the speech or thought is represented directly; the value false that speech or thought is represented indirectly, e.g. by use of a marked verbal aspect.

*Member of* model.qLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said  
 sic sp stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
 filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
 support surrogates

*spoken:* writing

*textcrit:* lem rdg witness

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
 imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb  
ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element said
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  attribute aloud { data.xTruthValue }?,
  attribute direct { data.xTruthValue }?,
  macro.specialPara}
```

*Example*

```
<!-- in the header --><editorialDecl>
  <quotation marks="all"/>
</editorialDecl>
<!-- .... -->
<p>
  <said>"Our minstrel here will warm the old man's heart with song, dazzle him with
jewels and
  gold"</said>, a troublemaker simpered. <said>"He'll trample on the Duke's
camellias, spill
  his wine, and blunt his sword, and say his name begins with X, and in the end the
```



```
Duke
  will say, <said>'Take Saralinda, with my blessing, O lordly Prince of Rags and
Tags, O
  rider of the sun!'/</said></said>
</p>
```

*Example*

```
<p>
  <said aloud="true" rend="pre(") post(">Hmmm</said>, said a small voice in his
ear.
<said aloud="true" rend="pre(") post(">Difficult. Very difficult. Plenty of
courage, I see.
  Not a bad mind either. there's talent, oh my goodness, yes – and a nice thirst
to prove
  yourself, now that's interesting. ... So where shall I put you?</said>
</p>
<p>Harry gripped the edges of the stool and thought,
<said aloud="false" rend="italic">Not
  Slytherin, not Slytherin</said>.</p>
```

**<salute>** (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.divWrapper

*Contained by*

*core:* lg list

*drama:* castList epilogue performance prologue

*figures:* figure table

*textstructure:* body closer div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group opener

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
 distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
 listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
 q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element salute { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

*Example*

```
<salute>To all courteous mindes, that will vouchsafe the readinge.</salute>
```

---

**<samplingDecl>** (sampling declaration) contains a prose description of the rationale and methods used in sampling texts in the creation of a corpus or collection. [2.3.2. The Sampling Declaration 2.3. The Encoding Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change)) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) att.declarable ( @default)

*Member of* model.encodingDescPart

*Contained by*

*header:* encodingDesc

*May contain*

*core:* p

*linking:* ab

*Declaration*

```
element samplingDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  model.pLike+
}
```

*Example*

```
<samplingDecl>
  <p>Samples of up to 2000 words taken at random from the beginning, middle, or end
```

of each  
text identified as relevant by respondents.</p>  
</samplingDecl>

*Note* This element records all information about systematic inclusion or omission of portions of the text, whether a reflection of sampling procedures in the pure sense or of systematic omission of material deemed either too difficult to transcribe or not of sufficient interest.

<schemaSpec> (schema specification) generates a TEI-conformant schema and documentation for it. [2.3. The Encoding Description 22.2. Modules and Schemas 23.5.1. Making a Unified ODD]

*Module* tagdocs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change)) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) att.identified ( @ident, @predeclare, @module, @status) (att.combinable ( @mode) (att.deprecated ( @validUntil)) ) att.namespaceable ( @ns) att.readFrom ( @source)

@start specifies entry points to the schema, i.e. which patterns may be used as the root of documents conforming to it.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of data.name separated by whitespace

*Default* TEI

@prefix specifies a default prefix which will be prepended to all patterns relating to TEI elements, unless otherwise stated.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* " " | data.xmlName

*Note* Use of this attribute allows an external schema which has an element with the same local name as a TEI element to be mixed in.

@targetLang (target language) specifies which language to use when creating the objects in a schema if names for elements or attributes are available in more than one language

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.language

@docLang (documentation language) specifies which languages to use when creating documentation if the description for an element, attribute, class or macro is available in more than one language

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of data.language separated by whitespace

*Member of* model.divPart model.encodingDescPart

*Contained by*

*core:* item note q quote said stage

*drama:* castList epilogue performance prologue set view

*figures:* cell figure

*header:* change encodingDesc handNote licence scriptNote typeNote  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
 filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
 support surrogates  
*tagdocs:* specGrp  
*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph postscript  
*transcr:* metamark  
*May contain*  
*core:* desc gloss  
*tagdocs:* altIdent classRef classSpec constraintSpec elementRef elementSpec equiv listRef  
 macroRef macroSpec moduleRef moduleSpec specGrp specGrpRef  
*Declaration*

```

element schemaSpec
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.identified.attributes,
  att.namespaceable.attributes,
  att.readFrom.attributes,
  attribute start { list { data.name+ } }?,
  attribute prefix { "" | data.xmlName }?,
  attribute targetLang { data.language }?,
  attribute docLang { list { data.language+ } }?,
  ( ( model.glossLike | model.descLike )*, ( model.oddRef | model.oddDecl )* )
}

```

*Example*

```

<schemaSpec ident="testsvg" prefix="TEI_"
  start="TEI svg">
  <moduleRef key="header"
    source="tei:current"/>
  <moduleRef key="core"/>
  <moduleRef key="drama"/>
  <moduleRef url="svg11.rng"/>
</schemaSpec>

```

This schema combines elements from the current versions of the drama and core modules, the current release version of the header module, and elements from an existing RELAXNG schema available from the URL indicated.

*Note* A <schemaSpec> combines references to modules, individual element or macro declarations, and specification groups together to form a unified schema. The processing of the <schemaSpec> element must resolve any conflicts amongst the declarations it contains or references. Different ODD processors may generate schemas and documentation using different concrete syntaxes.

---

**<scriptDesc>** contains a description of the scripts used in a manuscript or similar source. [10.7.2.1. Writing]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 ( att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition ) ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select ) ) ( att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) ( att.global.change ( @change ) )  
 ( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) )

*Member of* model.physDescPart

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* physDesc

*May contain*

*core:* p

*header:* scriptNote

*linking:* ab

*msdescription:* summary

*Declaration*

```

element scriptDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( summary?, scriptNote+ ) )
}

```

*Example*

```

<scriptDesc>
  <p/>
</scriptDesc>

```

*Example*

```

<scriptDesc>
  <summary>Contains two distinct styles of scripts </summary>
  <scriptNote xml:id="style-1">.</scriptNote>
  <scriptNote xml:id="style-2">.</scriptNote>
</scriptDesc>

```

**<scriptNote>** describes a particular script distinguished within the description of a manuscript or similar resource. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.handFeatures (@scribe, @scribeRef,  
 @script, @scriptRef, @medium, @scope)

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* scriptDesc

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
 distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
 listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb  
 ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g  
*header:* biblFull idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait  
*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element scriptNote
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.handFeatures.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

*Example*

```
<scriptNote scope="sole"/>
```

---

**<scriptStmt>** (script statement) contains a citation giving details of the script used for a spoken text. [8.2. Documenting the Source of Transcribed Speech 2.2.7. The Source Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

*Module* spoken

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.declarable (@default)

*Member of* model.sourceDescPart

*Contained by*

*header:* sourceDesc

*May contain*

*core:* bibl biblStruct listBibl p

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* textread

*header:* biblFull

*linking:* ab

*msdescription:* msDesc

*Declaration*

```

element scriptStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | model.biblLike )
}

```

*Example*

```

<scriptStmt>
  <bibl>
    <author>Craig Warner</author>
    <title>Strangers on a Train</title>
    <title type="sub">Based on the novel by Patricia Highsmith</title>
    <edition>French's acting edition</edition>
    <idno type="ISBN">978 0 573 01972 2</idno>
    <publisher>Samuel French Ltd</publisher>
  </bibl>
</scriptStmt>

```

**<seal>** contains a description of one seal or similar attachment applied to a manuscript.  
[10.7.3.2. Seals]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 ( att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition ) ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select ) ) ( att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) ( att.global.change ( @change ) )  
 ( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) ) att.typed ( @type, @subtype ) att.dateable  
 ( @calendar, @period ) ( att.dateable.w3c ( @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from,  
 @to ) ) ( att.dateable.iso ( @when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso,  
 @to-iso ) ) ( att.dateable.custom ( @when-custom, @notBefore-custom,  
 @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod ) )  
 @contemporary specifies whether or not the seal is contemporary with the item to  
 which it is affixed  
*Status* Optional  
*Datatype* data.xTruthValue

*Contained by* msdescription: sealDesc

*May contain*

*core:* p

*linking:* ab

*msdescription:* decoNote

*Declaration*

```

element seal
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  attribute contemporary { data.xTruthValue }?,
  ( model.pLike | decoNote )+
}

```

*Example*

```
<seal n="2" subtype="cauda_duplex"
  type="pendant">
  <p>The seal of <name>Jens Olufsen</name> in black wax.
    (<ref>DAS 1061</ref>). Legend: <q>S IOHANNES OLAVI</q>.
    Parchment tag on which is written: <q>Woldorp Iohanne G</q>.</p>
</seal>
```

---

**<sealDesc>** (seal description) describes the seals or other external items attached to a manuscript, either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of distinct <seal> elements, possibly with additional <decoNote>s. [10.7.3.2. Seals]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.physDescPart

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* physDesc

*May contain*

*core:* p

*linking:* ab

*msdescription:* condition decoNote seal summary

*Declaration*

```
element sealDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( summary?, ( decoNote | seal | condition )+ ) )
}
```

*Example*

```
<sealDesc>
  <seal contemporary="true" type="pendant">
    <p>Green wax vertical oval seal attached at base.</p>
  </seal>
</sealDesc>
```

*Example*

```
<sealDesc>
  <p>Parchment strip for seal in place; seal missing.</p>
</sealDesc>
```

---

**<secFol>** (second folio) marks the word or words taken from a fixed point in a codex (typically the beginning of the second leaf) in order to provide a unique identifier for it. [10.3.7. Catchwords, Signatures, Secundo Folio]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic



(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.pPart.msdesc

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor  
 email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure  
 meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs  
 said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
 preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder  
 geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage  
 typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
 settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

`element secFol { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }`

*Example*

```
<secFol>(con-)versio morum</secFol>
```

---

**<seg>** (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the ‘chunk’ level.  
[16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 6.2. Components of the Verse Line 7.2.5.  
Speech Contents]

*Module* linking

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*)  
(att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic  
(*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))  
(att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.segLike (*@function*) (att.metrical  
(*@met*, *@real*, *@rhyme*)) (att.datcat (*@datcat*, *@valueDatcat*)) (att.fragmentable  
(*@part*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.source (*@source*)

*Member of* model.choicePart model.segLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del distinct  
editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label  
measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said  
sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout

material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit  
 forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset  
 orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex  
 socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone  
*verse:* rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
 distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
 listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
 q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* biblFull idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
 offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
 surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
 macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element seg
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.segLike.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,

```

`att.source.attributes,  
macro.paraContent}`

*Example*

```
<seg>When are you leaving?</seg>  
<seg>Tomorrow.</seg>
```

*Example*

```
<s>  
  <seg rend="caps" type="initial-cap">So father's only</seg> glory was the  
  ballfield.  
</s>
```

*Example*

```
<seg type="preamble">  
  <seg>Sigmund, <seg type="patronym">the son of Volsung</seg>, was a king in  
  Frankish country.</seg>  
  <seg>Sinfiotli was the eldest of his sons ...</seg>  
  <seg>Borghild, Sigmund's wife, had a brother ... </seg>  
</seg>
```

*Note* The `<seg>` element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any segments of the text of interest for processing. One use of the element is to mark text features for which no appropriate markup is otherwise defined. Another use is to provide an identifier for some segment which is to be pointed at by some other element—i.e. to provide a target, or a part of a target, for a `<ptr/>` or other similar element.

---

**<segmentation>** describes the principles according to which the text has been segmented, for example into sentences, tone-units, graphemic strata, etc. [2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.rendition` (`@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`)) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`)) (`att.global.responsibility` (`@cert`, `@resp`)) `att.declarable` (`@default`)

*Member of* model.editorialDeclPart

*Contained by*

*header:* editorialDecl

*May contain*

*core:* p

*linking:* ab

*Declaration*

```
element segmentation  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.declarable.attributes,  
  model.pLike+  
}
```

*Example*

```
<segmentation>  
<p>
```

`<gi>s</gi>` elements mark orthographic sentences and are numbered sequentially within their parent `<gi>div</gi>` element `</p>`  
`</segmentation>`

*Example*

`<p>`  
`<gi>seg</gi>` elements are used to mark functional constituents of various types within each  
`<gi>s</gi>`; the typology used is defined by a `<gi>taxonomy</gi>` element in the corpus  
 header `<gi>classDecl</gi>`  
`</p>`

**<sender>** sender, writer

*Namespace* `http://readingexp.univ-lemans.fr/tei`

*Module* `derived-module-tei_readingExp`

*Member of* `model.personLike`

*Contained by*

*corpus:* `particDesc`

*namesdates:* `listPerson org`

*May contain*

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* `readerStatus`

*namesdates:* `birth country education faith nationality occupation persName sex`

*Declaration*

```

element sender
{
  persName*,
  sex*,
  birth*,
  occupation*,
  country*,
  education*,
  faith*,
  nationality*,
  readerStatus*
}

```

**<sense>** groups together all information relating to one word sense in a dictionary entry, for example definitions, examples, and translation equivalents. [9.2. The Structure of Dictionary Entries]

*Module* `dictionaries`

*Attributes* `Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)`  
`(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,`  
`@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic`  
`(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))`  
`(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split,`  
`@value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))`

**@level** gives the nesting depth of this sense.

*Status* `Optional`

Datatype **data.count**

Member of model.entryPart

Contained by

core: cit

dictionaries: dictScrap entry entryFree hom re sense

namesdates: nym

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

certainty: certainty precision respons

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del distinct email emph  
expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

derived-module-tei\_readingExp: correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

dictionaries: def dictScrap etym form gramGrp lang oRef oVar pRef pVar re sense usg xr

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

spoken: incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

tagdocs: att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element sense
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  attribute level { data.count }?,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | sense      | model.entryPart.top    | model.phrase      | model.global
```

Example

```
<sense n="2">
  <usg type="time">Vx.</usg>
  <def>Vaillance, bravoure (spécial., au combat)</def>
  <cit type="example">
    <quote>La valeur n'attend pas le nombre des années</quote>
    <bibl>
      <author>Corneille</author>
    </bibl>
```

```
</cit>
</sense>
```

*Note* May contain character data mixed with any other elements defined in the dictionary tag set.

## <sequence> sequence of references

*Module* tagdocs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.repeatable (@context, @minOccurs, @maxOccurs)

**@preserveOrder** if true, indicates that the order in which component elements of a sequence appear in a document must correspond to the order in which they are given in the content model.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.truthValue

*Member of* model.contentPart

*Contained by*

*tagdocs:* alternate content sequence

*May contain*

*tagdocs:* alternate classRef elementRef macroRef sequence textNode

*Declaration*

```
element sequence
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.repeatable.attributes,
  attribute preserveOrder { data.truthValue }?,
  model.contentPart+
}
```

*Schematron* <sch:assert test="count(\*)>1">The sequence element must have at least two child elements</sch:assert>

*Example*

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate>
      <elementRef key="name"/>
      <elementRef key="persName"/>
    </alternate>
    <elementRef key="placeName" maxOccurs="5"
      minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

This example content model matches a sequence consisting of either a <name> or a <persName> followed by nothing, or by a sequence of up to five <placeName> elements.

**<series>** (series information) contains information about the series in which a book or other bibliographic item has appeared. [3.11.2.1. Analytic, Monographic, and Series Levels]

*Module core*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.biblPart

*Contained by*

*core:* bibl biblStruct

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* biblScope cb editor gap gb index lb milestone note pb ptr ref respStmt textLang title

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* availability idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*textcrit:* witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```
element series
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | title      | model.ptrLike      | editor      | respStmt      | biblScope
  )
}
```

*Example*

```
<series xml:lang="de">
  <title level="s">Halbgraue Reihe zur Historischen Fachinformatik</title>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>Herausgegeben von</resp>
    <name type="person">Manfred Thaller</name>
    <name type="org">Max-Planck-Institut für Geschichte</name>
  </respStmt>
  <title level="s">Serie A: Historische Quellenkunden</title>
  <biblScope>Band 11</biblScope>
</series>
```

---

**<seriesStmt>** (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs. [2.2.5. The Series Statement 2.2. The File Description]



*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 ( att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition ) ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select ) ) ( att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) ( att.global.change ( @change ) )  
 ( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) )

*Contained by*

*header:* biblFull fileDesc

*May contain*

*core:* biblScope editor p respStmt title

*header:* idno

*linking:* ab

*Declaration*

```

element seriesStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( title+, ( editor | respStmt )*, ( idno | biblScope )* ) )
}

```

*Example*

```

<seriesStmt>
  <title>Machine-Readable Texts for the Study of Indian Literature</title>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>ed. by</resp>
    <name>Jan Gonda</name>
  </respStmt>
  <biblScope unit="volume">1.2</biblScope>
  <idno type="ISSN">0 345 6789</idno>
</seriesStmt>

```

**<set>** (setting) contains a description of the setting, time, locale, appearance, etc., of the action of a play, typically found in the front matter of a printed performance text (not a stage direction). [7.1. Front and Back Matter ]

*Module drama*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 ( att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition ) ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select ) ) ( att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) ( att.global.change ( @change ) )  
 ( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) )

*Member of* model.frontPart.drama

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* back front

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* bibl biblStruct cb cit desc gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note  
 p pb q quote said sp stage

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc textread

*dictionaries:* entry entryFree superEntry

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view  
*figures:* figure notatedMusic table  
*header:* biblFull  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  
*msdescription:* msDesc  
*namesdates:* listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace  
*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* classSpec constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec listRef macroSpec moduleSpec  
           schemaSpec specGrp specGrpRef  
*textcrit:* listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin  
*Declaration*

```

element set
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( model.headLike | model.global )*, ( ( model.common ), model.global* )* )
}

```

## Example

```

<set>
  <p>The action takes place on February 7th between the hours of noon and six in the
    afternoon, close to the Trenartha Tin Plate Works, on the borders of England and
    Wales,
    where a strike has been in progress throughout the winter.</p>
</set>

```

## Example

```

<set>
  <head>SCENE</head>
  <p>A Sub-Post Office on a late autumn evening</p>
</set>

```

## Example

```

<front>
<!-- <titlePage>, <div type="Dedication">, etc. -->
  <set>
    <list type="gloss">
      <label>TIME</label>
      <item>1907</item>
      <label>PLACE</label>
      <item>East Coast village in England</item>
    </list>
  </set>
</front>

```

*Note* Contains paragraphs or phrase level tags. This element should not be used outside the front matter; for similar contextual descriptions within the body of the text, use the <stage> element.

---

**<setting>** describes one particular setting in which a language interaction takes place.  
 [15.2.3. The Setting Description]

*Module* corpus

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.ascribed (@who)

*Contained by*

*corpus:* settingDesc

*May contain*

*core:* date name p time

*corpus:* activity locale

*linking:* ab

*namesdates:* orgName persName

*Declaration*

```

element setting
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  (
    model.pLike+
    | ( model.nameLike.agent | model.dateLike | model.settingPart )*
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<setting>
  <name>New York City, US</name>
  <date>1989</date>
  <locale>on a park bench</locale>
  <activity>feeding birds</activity>
</setting>

```

*Note* If the *who* attribute is not supplied, the setting is assumed to be that of all participants in the language interaction.

---

<settingDesc> (setting description) describes the setting or settings within which a language interaction takes place, or other places otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata. [15.2. Contextual Information 2.4. The Profile Description]

*Module* corpus

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.declarable (@default)

*Member of* model.profileDescPart

*Contained by*

*header:* profileDesc

*May contain*

*core:* p

*corpus:* setting

*linking:* ab

*namesdates:* listPlace place

*Declaration*

```

element settingDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( setting | model.placeLike | listPlace )+ )
}

```

*Example*

```

<settingDesc>
  <p>Texts recorded in the
    Canadian Parliament building in Ottawa, between April and November 1988 </p>
</settingDesc>

```

*Note* May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a series of <setting> elements. If used to record not settings of language interactions, but other places mentioned in the text, then <place> optionally grouped by <listPlace> should be preferred.

---

**<settlement>** contains the name of a settlement such as a city, town, or village identified as a single geo-political or administrative unit. [13.2.3. Place Names]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dataable (@calendar, @period) (att.dataable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dataable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.dataable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))

*Member of* model.placeNamePart

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition  
 extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote  
 sponsor tagUsage typeNote  
*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier catchwords collation colophon  
 condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit  
 layout material msIdentifier musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin  
 provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates  
 watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink  
 nationality occupation offset org orgName persName place placeName region  
 residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example*

```
<placeName>
  <settlement type="town">Glasgow</settlement>
  <region>Scotland</region>
</placeName>
```

---

**<sex>** specifies the sex of a person. [13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) att.editLike ( @evidence, @instant)  
 (att.dimensions ( @unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging  
 ( @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source ( @source)) att.dataable  
 ( @calendar, @period) (att.dataable.w3c ( @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from,  
 @to)) (att.dataable.iso ( @when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso,  
 @to-iso)) (att.dataable.custom ( @when-custom, @notBefore-custom,  
 @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))

**@value** supplies a coded value for sex

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.sex` separated by whitespace

*Note* Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, or may refer to an external standard, such as vCard's sex property <http://microformats.org/wiki/gender-formats> (in which M indicates male, F female, O other, N none or not applicable, U unknown), or the often used ISO 5218:2004 *Representation of Human Sexes* [http://standards.iso.org/ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266\\_ISO\\_IEC\\_5218\\_2004\(E\\_F\).zip](http://standards.iso.org/ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266_ISO_IEC_5218_2004(E_F).zip) (in which 0 indicates unknown; 1 male; 2 female; and 9 not applicable, although the ISO standard is widely considered inadequate); cf. CETH's *Recommendations for Inclusive Data Collection of Trans People* <http://transhealth.ucsf.edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection>.

*Member of* model.persStateLike

*Contained by*

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* addressee listener reader sender

*namesdates:* person personGrp

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element sex
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  attribute value { list { data.sex+ } }?,
  macro.phraseSeq
}

```

#### Example

```
<sex value="M">male</sex>
```

#### Example

```
<sex value="2">female</sex>
```

#### Example

```
<sex value="I">Intersex</sex>
```

#### Example

```
<sex value="TG F">Female (TransWoman)</sex>
```

*Note* As with other culturally-constructed traits such as age, the way in which this concept is described in different cultural contexts may vary. The normalizing attributes are provided only as an optional means of simplifying that variety to one or more external standards for purposes of interoperability, or project-internal taxonomies for consistency, and should not be used where that is inappropriate or unhelpful. The content of the element may be used to describe the intended concept in more detail, using plain text.

**<shift/>** marks the point at which some paralinguistic feature of a series of utterances by any one speaker changes. [8.3.6. Shifts]

*Module spoken*

*Attributes* `Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)`  
`(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,`  
`@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic`  
`(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))`  
`(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.ascribed (@who)`

**@feature** a paralinguistic feature.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.enumerated`

*Legal values are:* **tempo** speed of utterance.

**loud** loudness.

**pitch** pitch range.

**tension** tension or stress pattern.

**rhythm** rhythmic qualities.

**voice** voice quality.

**@new** specifies the new state of the paralinguistic feature specified.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.enumerated`

*Default* normal

*Note* Some possible values for this attribute are provided in section 8.4.2. Synchronization and Overlap. The special value normal should be used to indicate that the feature concerned ceases to be remarkable at this point. In earlier versions of these Guidelines, a null value for this attribute was understood to have the same effect: this practice is now deprecated and will be removed at a future release.

*Member of* model.global.spoken

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del  
distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint  
item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q  
quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang  
time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom  
hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg  
xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue  
role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote  
language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote



*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance  
rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence  
roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
surfaceGrp surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element shift
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  attribute feature
  {
    "tempo" | "loud" | "pitch" | "tension" | "rhythm" | "voice"
  }?,
  attribute new { data.enumerated }?,
  empty
}
```

*Schematron* <s:assert role="warning" test="@new"> The @new attribute should always be supplied; use the special value "normal" to indicate that the feature concerned ceases to be remarkable at this point.</s:assert>

*Example*

```
<u who="#LB">
  <shift feature="loud" new="f"/>Elizabeth
</u>
<u who="#EB">Yes</u>
<u who="#LB">
  <shift feature="loud" new="normal"/>Come and try this
<pause/>
  <shift feature="loud" new="ff"/>come on
</u>
<!-- ... -->
<listPerson type="speakers">
  <person xml:id="LB"/>
  <person xml:id="EB"/>
</listPerson>
```

The word ‘Elizabeth’ is spoken loudly, the words ‘Yes’ and ‘Come and try this’ with normal volume, and the words ‘come on’ very loudly.

**<sic>** (Latin for thus or so ) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate. [3.4.1. Apparent Errors]

*Module core*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) att.source ( @source)

*Member of* model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl pc phr s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del distinct  
editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label  
measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said  
sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit  
forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset  
orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex  
socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* biblFull idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```
element sic { att.global.attributes, att.source.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

### Example

for his nose was as sharp as  
a pen, and <sic>a Table</sic> of green fields.

*Example* If all that is desired is to call attention to the apparent problem in the copy text,  
<sic> may be used alone:

I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now  
– how <sic>we can</sic> prove or disprove anyone's theories?

*Example* It is also possible, using the <choice> and <corr> elements, to provide a  
corrected reading:

I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now  
– how <choice>  
<sic>we can</sic>  
<corr>can we</corr>  
</choice> prove or disprove anyone's theories?

### Example

for his nose was as sharp as  
a pen, and <choice>  
<sic>a Table</sic>  
<corr>a' babbld</corr>  
</choice> of green fields.

<signatures> contains discussion of the leaf or quire signatures found within a codex.

[10.3.7. Catchwords, Signatures, Secundo Folio]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.pPart.msdesc

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor  
email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure  
meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs  
said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder  
geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage  
typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb  
ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* biblFull idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait  
*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```
element signatures { att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara }
```

#### Example

```
<signatures>Quire and leaf signatures in letters, [b]-v, and roman
numerals; those in quires 10 (1) and 17 (s) in red ink and different
from others; every third quire also signed with red crayon in arabic
numerals in the center lower margin of the first leaf recto: "2" for
quire 4 (f. 19), "3" for quire 7 (f. 43); "4," barely visible, for
quire 10 (f. 65), "5," in a later hand, for quire 13 (f. 89), "6," in
a later hand, for quire 16 (f. 113).</signatures>
```

<signed> (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.divBottomPart model.divTopPart

*Contained by*

*core:* lg list

*drama:* castList epilogue performance prologue

*figures:* figure table

*textstructure:* back body closer div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group opener  
postscript

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

element signed { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }

*Example*

```
<signed>Thine to command <name>Humph. Moseley</name>
</signed>
```

*Example*

```
<closer>
<signed>Sign'd and Seal'd,
<list>
  <item>John Bull,</item>
  <item>Nic. Frog.</item>
</list>
</signed>
</closer>
```

**<soCalled>** contains a word or phrase for which the author or narrator indicates a disclaiming of responsibility, for example by the use of scare quotes or italics. [3.3.3. Quotation]

*Module core*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.emphLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hypth iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan

foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp*: correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries*: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures*: figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji*: g  
*header*: idno  
*iso-fs*: fLib fs fvLib  
*linking*: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription*: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates*: addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken*: incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs*: att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit*: app witDetail  
*transcr*: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse*: caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

element soCalled { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
---

#### Example

To edge his way along  
the crowded paths of life, warning all human sympathy to keep its distance, was what  
the  
knowing ones call <soCalled>nuts</soCalled> to Scrooge.

---

**<socecStatus>** (socio-economic status) contains an informal description of a person's  
perceived social or economic status. [15.2.2. The Participant Description]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.dateable (@calendar, @period)  
(att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso  
(@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.dateable.custom  
(@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom,  
@datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions  
(@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost,  
@min, @max, @confidence))) (att.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef)  
(att.canonical (@key, @ref))

**@scheme** identifies the classification system or taxonomy in use, for example by  
pointing to a locally-defined <taxonomy> element or by supplying a URI  
for an externally-defined system.

*Status* Optional



*Datatype* **data.pointer**

**@code** identifies a status code defined within the classification system or taxonomy defined by the *scheme* attribute.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.pointer**

*Member of* model.persStateLike

*Contained by*

*namesdates:* person personGrp

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element socecStatus
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  attribute scheme { data.pointer }?,
  attribute code { data.pointer }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example*

```
<socecStatus code="#ab1" scheme="#rg"/>
```

*Example*

```
<socecStatus>Status AB1 in the RG Classification scheme</socecStatus>
```

*Note* The content of this element may be used as an alternative to the more formal specification made possible by its attributes; it may also be used to supplement the formal specification with commentary or clarification.

---

**<sound>** describes a sound effect or musical sequence specified within a screen play or radio script. [7.3.1. Technical Information 7.3. Other Types of Performance Text]

*Module* drama

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change)) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))

**@type** categorizes the sound in some respect, e.g. as music, special effect, etc.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

**@discrete** indicates whether the sound overlaps the surrounding speeches or interrupts them.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.xTruthValue

*Default* unknown

*Note* The value true indicates that the sound is heard between the surrounding speeches; the value false indicates that the sound overlaps one or more of the surrounding speeches.

*Member of* model.stageLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l lg meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic  
sp stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
support surrogates

*spoken:* writing

*textcrit:* lem rdg witness

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* biblFull idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element sound
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute discrete { data.xTruthValue }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

#### Example

```

<sp>
  <speaker>Benjy</speaker>
  <p>Now to business.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Ford and Zaphod</speaker>
  <p>To business.</p>
</sp>
<sound discrete="true">Glasses clink.</sound>
<sp>
  <speaker>Benjy</speaker>
  <p>I beg your pardon?</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Ford</speaker>

```

```
<p>I'm sorry, I thought you were proposing a toast.</p>
</sp>
```

*Note* A specialized form of stage direction.

---

**<source>** describes the original source for the information contained with a manuscript description. [10.9.1.1. Record History]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* recordHist

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb  
ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element source { att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara }
```

*Example*

```
<source>Derived from <ref>Stanley (1960)</ref>
</source>
```

**<sourceDesc>** (source description) describes the source from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence. [2.2.7. The Source Description]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.declarable (@default)

*Contained by*

*header:* biblFull fileDesc

*May contain*

*core:* bibl biblStruct list listBibl p

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* textread

*figures:* table

*header:* biblFull

*linking:* ab

*msdescription:* msDesc

*namesdates:* listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace

*spoken:* recordingStmt scriptStmt

*textcrit:* listApp listWit

*Declaration*

```
element sourceDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  (
    model.pLike+
    | ( model.biblLike | model.sourceDescPart | model.listLike )+
  )
}
```

*Example*

```
<sourceDesc>
<bibl>
  <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>. In
  <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.
  <publisher>OUP</publisher>
  <date>1968</date>. </bibl>
</sourceDesc>
```

*Example*

```
<sourceDesc>
  <p>Born digital: no previous source exists.</p>
</sourceDesc>
```

---

**<sourceDoc>** contains a transcription or other representation of a single source document potentially forming part of a *dossier génétique* or collection of sources. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles 11.2.2. Embedded Transcription]

*Module* transcr

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space ) (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change )) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) att.declaring ( @decls )

*Member of* model.resourceLike

*Contained by*

*core:* teiCorpus

*textstructure:* TEI

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* binaryObject cb gap gb graphic index lb media milestone note pb

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*textcrit:* witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin surface surfaceGrp

*Declaration*

```
element sourceDoc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  ( ( model.global | model.graphicLike | surface | surfaceGrp )+ )
}
```

*Example*

```
<sourceDoc>
  <surfaceGrp n="leaf1">
    <surface facs="page1.png">
      <zone>All the writing on page 1</zone>
    </surface>
    <surface>
      <graphic url="page2-highRes.png"/>
      <graphic url="page2-lowRes.png"/>
      <zone>
        <line>A line of writing on page 2</line>
        <line>Another line of writing on page 2</line>
      </zone>
    </surface>
  </surfaceGrp>
```

```

</surface>
</surfaceGrp>
</sourceDoc>

```

*Note* This element may be used as an alternative to <facsimile> for TEI documents containing only page images, or for documents containing both images and transcriptions. Transcriptions may be provided within the <surface> elements making up a source document, in parallel with them as part of a <text> element, or in both places if the encoder wishes to distinguish these two modes of transcription.

**<sp>** (speech) contains an individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text. [3.12.2. Core Tags for Drama 3.12. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.2. Speeches and Speakers]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.ascribed (@who)

*Member of* model.divPart

*Contained by*

*core:* item note q quote said stage

*drama:* castList epilogue performance prologue set spGrp view

*figures:* cell figure

*header:* change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
support surrogates

*tagdocs:* specGrp

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph postscript

*transcr:* metamark

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* cb cit gap gb index l lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote said speaker stage

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc

*drama:* camera caption move sound tech view

*figures:* figure notatedMusic table

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*namesdates:* listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*textcrit:* listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```

element sp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( speaker, model.global* )?,
    (
      (
        lg          | model.lLike          | model.pLike          | model.listLike
        model.global*
      )+
    )
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<sp>
  <speaker>The reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
  <p>I do not think I have named a single unpresentable fish.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Mr Gryll</speaker>
  <p>Bream, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>The Reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
  <p>On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him. In the first
place....</p>
  <p>Fish, Miss Gryll – I could discourse to you on fish by the hour: but for the
present I
    will forbear...</p>
</sp>

```

*Note* The *who* attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the `<speaker>` element or as an alternative.

*Note* Lines or paragraphs, stage directions, and phrase-level elements. The *who* attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the `<speaker>` element or as an alternative.

---

**<spGrp>** (speech group) contains a group of speeches or songs in a performance text presented in a source as constituting a single unit or ‘number’. [7.2.3. Grouped Speeches]

*Module* drama

*Attributes* Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.rendition` (`@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`)) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`)) (`att.global.responsibility` (`@cert`, `@resp`)) `att.typed` (`@type`, `@subtype`) `att.ascribed` (`@who`)

*Member of* model.divPart

*Contained by*

*core:* item note q quote said stage

*drama:* castList epilogue performance prologue set view

*figures:* cell figure



*header:* change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
 filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
 support surrogates  
*tagdocs:* specGrp  
*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph postscript  
*transcr:* metamark  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* cb gap gb head index lb milestone note pb sp stage  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc  
*drama:* camera caption move sound tech view  
*figures:* figure notatedMusic  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*textcrit:* witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin  
*Declaration*

```

element spGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  ( model.headLike*, ( model.global | sp | model.stageLike )+ )
}

```

#### Example

```

<sp>
  <speaker>FRAULEIN SCHNEIDER:</speaker>
  <p> Herr Schultz! Can I believe what I see? <stage>(HERR SCHULTZ nods
    proudly)</stage> But this is – too much to accept. So rare – so costly –
    so luxurious. </p>
</sp>
<stage>(She sings)</stage>
<spGrp n="4">
  <sp>
    <l>If you bought me diamonds, If you bought me pearls,</l>
    <l>If you bought me roses like some other gents</l>
    <l>Might bring to other girls,</l>
    <l>It couldn't please me more</l>
    <l>Than the gift I see -</l>
    <stage>(She takes a large pineapple out of the bag)</stage>
    <l>A pineapple for me!</l>
  </sp>
  <sp>
    <speaker>SCHULTZ:</speaker>
    <stage>(Singing) </stage>
    <l>If, in your emotion, </l>
    <l>You began to sway, </l>
    <l>Went to get some air, </l>
    <l>Or grabbed a chair </l>
    <l>To keep from fainting dead away, </l>

```

```

<l>It couldn't please me more </l>
<l>Than to see you cling </l>
<l>To the pineapple I bring.</l>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>BOTH:</speaker>
  <l>Ah, ah, ah, ah, ah, ah, ah, ah</l>
</sp>
<!-- ... -->
<stage>(They dance)</stage>
</spGrp>
<sp>
  <speaker>FRAULEIN SCHNEIDER: </speaker>
  <p>But you must not bring me
    any more pineapples! Do you hear? It is not proper. It is a gift a
    young man would present to his lady love. It makes me blush!
  </p>
</sp>

```

---

**<space>** indicates the location of a significant space in the text. [11.5.1. Space]

*Module* transcr

*Attributes* Attributes att.type ( @type, @subtype) att.dimensions ( @unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging ( @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.source ( @source) att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.analytic ( @ana) att.global.facs ( @facs) att.global.change ( @change) att.global.responsibility ( ~~@resp~~, @cert)

**@resp** (responsible party) (responsible party) indicates the individual responsible for identifying and measuring the space

*Derived from* att.global.responsibility

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of **data.pointer** separated by whitespace

**@dim** (dimension) indicates whether the space is horizontal or vertical.

*Status* Recommended

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Legal values are:* **horizontal** the space is horizontal.

**vertical** the space is vertical.

*Note* For irregular shapes in two dimensions, the value for this attribute should reflect the more important of the two dimensions. In conventional left-right scripts, a space with both vertical and horizontal components should be classed as vertical.

*Member of* model.global.edit

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
 preparedness purpose  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom  
 hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg  
 xr  
*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue  
 role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view  
*figures:* cell figure table  
*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote  
 language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance  
 rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence  
 roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*nets:* graph  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail  
*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
 front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
 surfaceGrp surplus zone  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* desc  
*Declaration*

```

element space
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
  att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
  att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,

```

```

att.global.linking.attribute.select,
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
att.global.change.attribute.change,
att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
att.typed.attributes,
att.dimensions.attributes,
att.source.attributes,
attribute resp { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
attribute dim { "horizontal" | "vertical" }?,
( model.descLike | model.certLike )*
}

```

*Example*

By god if wommen had writen storyes  
As <space quantity="7" unit="minims"/> han within her oratoryes

*Example*

στρατηλάτ<space quantity="1" unit="chars"/>ου

*Note* This element should be used wherever it is desired to record an unusual space in the source text, e.g. space left for a word to be filled in later, for later rubrication, etc. It is not intended to be used to mark normal inter-word space or the like.

---

**<span>** associates an interpretative annotation directly with a span of text. [17.3. Spans and Interpretations]

*Module analysis*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) att.interpLike ( @type, @inst ) (att.source  
( @source )) att.pointing ( @targetLang, @target, @evaluate )

**@from** gives the identifier of the node which is the starting point of the span of text being annotated; if not accompanied by a *to* attribute, gives the identifier of the node of the entire span of text being annotated.

*Status* Optional*Datatype* data.pointer

**@to** gives the identifier of the node which is the end-point of the span of text being annotated.

*Status* Optional*Datatype* data.pointer*Member of* model.global.meta*Contained by**analysis:* cl m phr s span spanGrp w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del  
distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint  
item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q  
quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang  
time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom  
hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg  
xr  
*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue  
role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view  
*figures:* cell figure table  
*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote  
language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance  
rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence  
roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*nets:* graph  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail  
*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
surfaceGrp surplus zone  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index  
lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled  
term time title  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang  
*figures:* figure notatedMusic  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident tag val

*textcrit:* witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst  
substJoin

*Declaration*

```

element span
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.interpLike.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  attribute from { data.pointer }?,
  attribute to { data.pointer }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

*Schematron* <s:report test="@from and @target">Only one of the attributes @target and @from may be supplied on <s:name/></s:report>

*Schematron* <s:report test="@to and @target">Only one of the attributes @target and @to may be supplied on <s:name/></s:report>

*Schematron* <s:report test="@to and not(@from)">If @to is supplied on <s:name/>, @from must be supplied as well</s:report>

*Schematron* <s:report test="contains(normalize-space(@to),' ') or contains  
(normalize-space(@from),' ')">The attributes @to and @from on <s:name/> may  
each contain only a single value</s:report>

*Example*

```

<p xml:id="para2">(The "aftermath" starts here)</p>
<p xml:id="para3">(The "aftermath" continues here)</p>
<p xml:id="para4">(The "aftermath" ends in this paragraph)</p>
<!-- ... -->
<span from="#para2" to="#para4"
  type="structure">aftermath</span>

```

---

**<spanGrp>** (span group) collects together span tags. [17.3. Spans and Interpretations]

*Module analysis*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.interpLike (@type, @inst) (att.source  
(@source))

*Member of* model.global.meta

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del  
distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint  
item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q  
quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang  
time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom  
hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg  
xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue  
role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote  
language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance  
rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence  
roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
surfaceGrp surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* span

*Declaration*

```
element spanGrp { att.global.attributes, att.interpLike.attributes, span* }
```

### Example

```
<u xml:id="UU1">Can I have ten oranges and a kilo of bananas please?</u>
<u xml:id="UU2">Yes, anything else?</u>
<u xml:id="UU3">No thanks.</u>
<u xml:id="UU4">That'll be dollar forty.</u>
<u xml:id="UU5">Two dollars</u>
<u xml:id="UU6">Sixty, eighty, two dollars.
<anchor xml:id="UU6e"/>Thank you.<anchor xml:id="UU6f"/>
</u>
<spanGrp type="transactions">
  <span from="#UU1">sale request</span>
  <span from="#UU2" to="#UU3">sale compliance</span>
  <span from="#UU4">sale</span>
  <span from="#UU5" to="#UU6">purchase</span>
  <span from="#UU6e" to="#UU6f">purchase closure</span>
</spanGrp>
```

**<speaker>** contains a specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment. [3.12.2. Core Tags for Drama]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

*Contained by*

*core:* sp

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

element speaker { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
--

*Example*

```
<sp who="#ni #rsa">
  <speaker>Nancy and Robert</speaker>
  <stage type="delivery">(speaking simultaneously)</stage>
  <p>The future? ...</p>
</sp>
<list type="speakers">
  <item xml:id="ni"/>
  <item xml:id="rsa"/>
</list>
```



**<specDesc/>** (specification description) indicates that a description of the specified element or class should be included at this point within a document. [22.1.2. Element and Attribute Descriptions]

*Module tagdocs*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

**@key** (identifier) supplies the identifier of the documentary element or class for which a description is to be obtained.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.name  
**<specDesc key="emph"/>**

**@atts** (attributes) supplies attribute names for which descriptions should additionally be obtained.

*Status* Recommended

*Datatype* 0– occurrences of data.name separated by whitespace  
**<specDesc atts="usage xml:lang" key="foreign"/>**

*Note* The attribute names listed may include both attributes inherited from a class and those defined explicitly for the associated element.

*Member of* model.specDescLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email  
 emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure  
 mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic  
 soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit  
 forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset  
 orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex  
 socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg specList

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```

element specDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute key { data.name }?,
  attribute atts { list { data.name* } }?,
  empty
}

```

*Example*

```
<specDesc key="orth"/>
```

*Example*

```
<specDesc key="emph"/>
```

*Example*

```
<specDesc atts="usage xml:lang"
  key="foreign"/>
```

*Note* The description is usually displayed as a label and an item. The list of attributes may include some which are inherited by virtue of an element's class membership; descriptions for such attributes may also be retrieved using another `<specDesc/>`, this time pointing at the relevant class.

---

**<specGrp>** (specification group) contains any convenient grouping of specifications for use within the current module. [22.2. Modules and Schemas]

*Module* tagdocs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*)  
 (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic  
 (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))  
 (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

*Member of* model.oddDecl

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic  
 stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
 filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
 support surrogates  
*spoken:* writing  
*tagdocs:* schemaSpec specGrp  
*textcrit:* lem rdg witness  
*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
 imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* rhyme  
*May contain*  
*core:* l lg p sp  
*drama:* spGrp  
*linking:* ab  
*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree  
*spoken:* u  
*tagdocs:* classRef classSpec constraintSpec elementRef elementSpec listRef macroRef  
 macroSpec moduleRef moduleSpec schemaSpec specGrp specGrpRef  
*Declaration*

```

element specGrp
{
    att.global.attributes,
    ( model.oddDecl | model.oddRef | model.divPart ) *
}

```

#### Example

```

<specGrp xml:id="xDAILC">
  <elementSpec ident="s">
    <!-- ... -->
  </elementSpec>
  <elementSpec ident="cl">
    <!-- ... -->
  </elementSpec>
  <elementSpec ident="w">
    <!-- ... -->
  </elementSpec>
  <elementSpec ident="m">
    <!-- ... -->
  </elementSpec>
  <elementSpec ident="c">
    <!-- ... -->
  </elementSpec>
</specGrp>

```

This specification group with identifier xDAILC contains specifications for the elements <s>, <cl>, <w>, etc.

*Note* A specification group is referenced by means of its *xml:id* attribute. The declarations it contains may be included in a <schemaSpec> or <moduleSpec> element only by reference (using a <specGrpRef/> element): it may not be nested within a <moduleSpec> element. Different ODD processors may generate representations of the specifications contained by a <specGrp> in different concrete syntaxes. For P5 the intention is to generate modules using both XML and RELAX NG, and to use only the compressed RELAX NG syntax to represent them.

**<specGrpRef/>** (reference to a specification group) indicates that the declarations contained by the <specGrp> referenced should be inserted at this point. [22.2. Modules and Schemas]

*Module tagdocs*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

**@target** points at the specification group which logically belongs here.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* data.pointer

*Member of* model.oddDecl

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

*spoken:* writing

*tagdocs:* schemaSpec specGrp

*textcrit:* lem rdg witness

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element specGrpRef
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute target { data.pointer },
  empty
}
```

*Example*

```
<p>This part of the module contains declarations for names of persons, places, and
organisations: <specGrpRef target="#names.pers"/>
<specGrpRef target="#names.place"/>
```

```

<specGrpRef target="#names.org"/>
</p>
<!-- elsewhere -->
<specGrp xml:id="names.pers">
<!--... -->
</specGrp>
<!-- elsewhere -->
<specGrp xml:id="names.place">
<!--... -->
</specGrp>
<!-- elsewhere -->
<specGrp xml:id="names.org">
<!--... -->
</specGrp>

```

*Note* In ODD documentation processing, a <specGrpRef/> usually produces a comment indicating that a set of declarations printed in another section will be inserted at this point in the <specGrp> being discussed. In schema processing, the contents of the specified <specGrp> are made available for inclusion in the generated schema. The specification group identified by the *target* attribute will normally be part of the current ODD document.

---

**<specList>** (specification list) marks where a list of descriptions is to be inserted into the prose documentation. [22.1.2. Element and Attribute Descriptions]

*Module* tagdocs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.specDescLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp h iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset

orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex  
 socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* rhyme  
*May contain*  
*tagdocs:* specDesc  
*Declaration*

element specList { att.global.attributes, specDesc+ }
---

*Example*

```

<specList>
  <specDesc atts="delim length"
    key="refState"/>
  <specDesc key="div"/>
</specList>

```

---

**<sponsor>** specifies the name of a sponsoring organization or institution. [2.2.1. The Title Statement]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) att.canonical ( @key, @ref )

*Member of* model.respLike

*Contained by*

*core:* bibl monogr

*header:* editionStmt titleStmt

*msdescription:* msItem

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index  
 lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled  
 term time title

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident tag val

*textcrit:* witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst  
substJoin

#### Declaration

```

element sponsor
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

#### Example

```

<sponsor>Association for Computers and the Humanities</sponsor>
<sponsor>Association for Computational Linguistics</sponsor>
<sponsor ref="http://www.allc.org/">Association for Literary and Linguistic
Computing</sponsor>

```

*Note* Sponsors give their intellectual authority to a project; they are to be distinguished from *funders*, who provide the funding but do not necessarily take intellectual responsibility.

---

**<stage>** (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment. [3.12.2. Core Tags for Drama 3.12. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.4. Stage Directions]

#### Module core

*Attributes* Attributes att.ascribed (@who) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.placement (@place)

**@type** indicates the kind of stage direction.

*Status* Recommended

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Suggested values include:* **setting** describes a setting.

**entrance** describes an entrance.

**exit** describes an exit.

**business** describes stage business.

**novelistic** is a narrative, motivating stage direction.

**delivery** describes how a character speaks.

**modifier** gives some detail about a character.

**location** describes a location.

**mixed** more than one of the above

*Member of* model.stageLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l lg meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic  
sp stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
support surrogates

*spoken:* writing

*textcrit:* lem rdg witness

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb  
ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail



*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```

element stage
{
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  attribute type
  {
    "setting"
    | "entrance"
    | "exit"
    | "business"
    | "novelistic"
    | "delivery"
    | "modifier"
    | "location"
    | "mixed"
    | xsd:Name
  }?,
  macro.specialPara}

```

*Example*

```

<stage type="setting">A curtain being drawn.</stage>
<stage type="setting">Music</stage>
<stage type="entrance">Enter Husband as being thrown off his horse.</stage>
<stage type="exit">Exit pursued by a bear.</stage>
<stage type="business">He quickly takes the stone out.</stage>
<stage type="delivery">To Lussurioso.</stage>
<stage type="novelistic">Having had enough, and embarrassed for the family.</stage>
<stage type="modifier">Disguised as Ansaldo.</stage>
<stage type="location">At a window.</stage>
<stage rend="inline" type="delivery">Aside.</stage>

```

*Example*

```

<l>Behold. <stage n="*" place="margin">Here the vp<lb/>per part of the
<hi>Scene</hi> open'd; when
  straight appear'd a Heauen, and all the <hi>Pure Artes</hi> sitting on
  two semi<lb/>circular ben<lb/>ches, one a<lb/>boue another: who sate thus till
the rest of the
  <hi>Prologue</hi> was spoken, which being ended, they descended in
  order within the <hi>Scene,</hi> whiles the Musicke plaid</stage> Our
Poet knowing our free hearts</l>

```

*Note* The *who* attribute may be used to indicate more precisely the person or persons participating in the action described by the stage direction.

---

<stamp> contains a word or phrase describing a stamp or similar device. [10.3.3. Watermarks and Stamps]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.datable  
(@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from,  
@to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso,  
@to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom,  
@notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))

*Member of* model.pPart.msdesc

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor  
email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure  
meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs  
said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder  
geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage  
typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
settlement sex soccecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element stamp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

#### Example

```

<rubric>Apologyticu TTVLLIANI AC IGNORATIA IN XPO IHV<lb/>
SI NON LICET<lb/>
NOBIS RO<lb/>
manii imperii <stamp>Bodleian stamp</stamp>
<lb/>
</rubric>

```

**<state>** contains a description of some status or quality attributed to a person, place, or organization often at some specific time or for a specific date range. [13.3.1. Basic Principles 13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) att.dataable ( @calendar, @period)  
 (att.dataable.w3c ( @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dataable.iso  
 ( @when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.dataable.custom  
 ( @when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom,  
 @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike ( @evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions  
 ( @unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging ( @atLeast, @atMost,  
 @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source ( @source)) att.typed ( @type, @subtype)  
 att.naming ( @role, @nymRef) (att.canonical ( @key, @ref))

*Member of* model.persStateLike model.placeStateLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc  
distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l  
label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote  
ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition  
extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote  
sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
occupation offset org orgName persName person personGrp place placeName region  
residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus state surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*core:* bibl biblStruct desc head label listBibl note p

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* textread

*header:* biblFull

*linking:* ab

*msdescription:* msDesc

*namesdates:* state

*textcrit:* witDetail

*Declaration*

```
element state
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
```

```

    att.naming.attributes,
    (
      state+
      | ( model.headLike*, model.pLike+, ( model.noteLike | model.biblLike )* )
      | ( ( model.labelLike | model.noteLike | model.biblLike )* )
    )
  }

```

*Example*

```

<state ref="#SCHOL" type="status">
  <label>scholar</label>
</state>

```

*Example*

```

<org>
  <orgName notAfter="1960">The Silver Beetles</orgName>
  <orgName notBefore="1960">The Beatles</orgName>
  <state from="1960-08" to="1962-05"
    type="membership">
    <desc>
      <persName>John Lennon</persName>
      <persName>Paul McCartney</persName>
      <persName>George Harrison</persName>
      <persName>Stuart Sutcliffe</persName>
      <persName>Pete Best</persName>
    </desc>
  </state>
  <state notBefore="1963" type="membership">
    <desc>
      <persName>John Lennon</persName>
      <persName>Paul McCartney</persName>
      <persName>George Harrison</persName>
      <persName>Ringo Starr</persName>
    </desc>
  </state>
</org>

```

*Note* Where there is confusion between <trait> and <state> the more general purpose element <state> should be used even for unchanging characteristics. If you wish to distinguish between characteristics that are generally perceived to be time-bound states and those assumed to be fixed traits, then <trait> is available for the more static of these. The <state> element encodes characteristics which are sometimes assumed to change, often at specific times or over a date range, whereas the <trait> elements are used to record characteristics, such as eye-colour, which are less subject to change. Traits are typically, but not necessarily, independent of the volition or action of the holder.

---

**<stdVals>** (standard values) specifies the format used when standardized date or number values are supplied. [2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.declarable (@default)

*Member of* model.editorialDeclPart

*Contained by*

*header:* editorialDecl

*May contain*

*core:* p

*linking:* ab

*Declaration*

```
element stdVals
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  model.pLike+
}
```

*Example*

```
<stdVals>
  <p>All integer numbers are left-filled with zeroes to 8 digits.</p>
</stdVals>
```

---

**<street>** contains a full street address including any name or number identifying a building as well as the name of the street or route on which it is located. [3.5.2. Addresses]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.addrPart

*Contained by*

*core:* address

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element street { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

*Example*

```
<street>via della Faggiola, 36</street>
```

*Example*

```
<street>  
<name>Duntaggin</name>, 110 Southmoor Road  
</street>
```

*Note* The order and presentation of house names and numbers and street names, etc., may vary considerably in different countries. The encoding should reflect the order which is appropriate in the country concerned.

---

**<stress>** contains the stress pattern for a dictionary headword, if given separately. [9.3.1. Information on Written and Spoken Forms]

*Module* dictionaries

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.formPart

*Contained by*

*dictionaries:* form

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element stress { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

*Example*

```
<form>
<orth>alternating current</orth>
<stress>,...'..</stress>
</form>
```

*Note* Usually stress information is included within pronunciation information.

---

**<string>** (string value) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which contains a string. [18.3. Other Atomic Feature Values]

*Module* iso-fs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)

*Member of* model.featureVal.single

*Contained by*

*iso-fs:* f fvLib if vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel vMerge vNot vRange

*May contain*

*gaiji:* g

*Declaration*

```
element string { att.global.attributes, att.datcat.attributes, macro.xtext }
```

*Example*

```
<f name="greeting">
<string>Hello, world!</string>
</f>
```



**<styleDefDecl>** (style definition language declaration) specifies the name of the formal language in which style or renditional information is supplied elsewhere in the document. The specific version of the scheme may also be supplied. [2.3.5. The Default Style Definition Language Declaration]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.declarable (@default) att.styleDef (@scheme, @schemeVersion)

*Member of* model.encodingDescPart

*Contained by*

*header:* encodingDesc

*May contain*

*core:* p

*linking:* ab

*Declaration*

```
element styleDefDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.styleDef.attributes,
  model.pLike*
}
```

*Example*

```
<styleDefDecl scheme="css"
  schemeVersion="2.1"/>
<!-- ... -->
<tagsDecl>
  <rendition xml:id="boldface">font-weight: bold;</rendition>
  <rendition xml:id="italicstyle">font-style: italic;</rendition>
</tagsDecl>
```

**<subc>** (subcategorization) contains subcategorization information (transitive/intransitive, countable/non-countable, etc.) [9.3.2. Grammatical Information]

*Module dictionaries*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

*Member of* model.entryPart model.gramPart

*Contained by*

*core:* cit

*dictionaries:* dictScrap entryFree form gramGrp

*namesdates:* nym

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element subc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Example*

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>médire</orth>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <subc>t ind</subc>
  </gramGrp>
</entry>

```

---

**<subst>** (substitution) groups one or more deletions with one or more additions when the

combination is to be regarded as a single intervention in the text. [11.3.1.5. Substitutions]

*Module* transcr

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.transcriptional (*@hand*, *@status*, *@cause*, *@seq*) (att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*)) ) (att.source (*@source*)) )

*Member of* model.pPart.editorial

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl pc phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*core:* add cb del gb lb milestone pb

*linking:* anchor

*transcr:* fw

*Declaration*

```

element subst
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  ( add | del | model.milestoneLike )+
}

```

*Schematron* <s:assert test="child::tei:add and child::tei:del"> <s:name/> must have at least one child add and at least one child del</s:assert>

*Example*

```

... are all included. <del hand="#RG">It is</del>
<subst>
  <add>T</add>
  <del>t</del>
</subst>he expressed

```

*Example*

```

that he and his Sister Mifs D – <lb/>who always lived with him, wd. be <subst>
<del>very</del>
<lb/>
<add>principally</add>
</subst> remembered in her Will.

```

*Example*

```

<ab>τ<subst>
  <add place="above">ων</add>
  <del>α</del>
</subst>
συγκυρόντ<subst>
  <add place="above">ων</add>
  <del>α</del>
</subst>
ἐργαστηρί<subst>
  <add place="above">ων</add>
  <del>α</del>
</subst>
</ab>

```

*Example*

```

<subst>
  <del>
    <gap quantity="5" reason="illegible"
      unit="character"/>
  </del>
  <add>apple</add>
</subst>

```

---

**<substJoin>** (substitution join) identifies a series of possibly fragmented additions, deletions or other revisions on a manuscript that combine to make up a single intervention in the text [11.3.1.5. Substitutions]

*Module* transcr

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,

(@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.transcriptional (@hand, @status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source))) )

*Member of* model.global.meta

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* desc

*Declaration*

```

element substJoin
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  ( model.descLike | model.certLike ) *
}

```

*Example*

```

While <del xml:id="r112">pondering</del> thus <add xml:id="r113">she mus'd</add>,
her pinions fann'd
<substJoin target="#r112 #r113"/>

```

---

**<summary>** contains an overview of the available information concerning some aspect of an item (for example, its intellectual content, history, layout, typography etc.) as a complement or alternative to the more detailed information carried by more specific elements. [10.6. Intellectual Content]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* decoDesc handDesc history layoutDesc msContents scriptDesc sealDesc  
 typeDesc

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
 distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
 listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb  
 ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
 offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
 surname terrain trait

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
 macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```
element summary { att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara }
```

#### Example

```
<summary>This item consists of three books with a prologue and an epilogue.
</summary>
```

#### Example

```
<typeDesc>
  <summary>Uses a mixture of Roman and Black Letter types.</summary>
  <typeNote>Antiqua typeface, showing influence of Jenson's Venetian
    fonts.</typeNote>
  <typeNote>The black letter face is a variant of Schwabacher.</typeNote>
</typeDesc>
```

**<superEntry>** groups a sequence of entries within any kind of lexical resource, such as a dictionary or lexicon which function as a single unit, for example a set of homographs. [9.1. Dictionary Body and Overall Structure]

*Module* dictionaries

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 ( att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition ) ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select ) ) ( att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) ( att.global.change ( @change ) )  
 ( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) ) att.entryLike ( @type ) att.sortable  
 ( @sortKey )

*Member of* model.entryLike model.entryPart

*Contained by*

*core:* cit

*dictionaries:* dictScrap entryFree

*drama:* castList epilogue performance prologue set

*figures:* figure

*namesdates:* nym

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph postscript

*May contain*

*dictionaries:* dictScrap entry form

*Declaration*

```
element superEntry
{
  att.global.attributes,
```

```

    att.entryLike.attributes,
    att.sortable.attributes,
    ( ( form?, entry+ ) | dictScrap )
}

```

*Example*

```

<superEntry>
  <form>
    <orth>abandon</orth>
    <hyph>a|ban|don</hyph>
    <pron>@"band@n</pron>
  </form>
  <entry n="1">
    <gramGrp>
      <pos>v</pos>
      <subc>T1</subc>
    </gramGrp>
    <sense n="1">
      <def>to leave completely and for ever ... </def>
    </sense>
    <sense n="2"/>
  </entry>
  <entry n="2">
    <gramGrp>
      <pos>n</pos>
      <subc>U</subc>
    </gramGrp>
    <def>the state when one's feelings and actions are uncontrolled; freedom from
      control</def>
  </entry>
</superEntry>

```

---

**<supplied>** signifies text supplied by the transcriber or editor for any reason; for example because the original cannot be read due to physical damage, or because of an obvious omission by the author or scribe. [11.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text]

*Module* transcr

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) att.editLike ( @evidence, @instant )  
 (att.dimensions ( @unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope )) (att.ranging  
 ( @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence )) ) (att.source ( @source ))

**@reason** one or more words indicating why the text has had to be supplied, e.g.  
*overbinding, faded-ink, lost-folio, omitted-in-original.*

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

*Member of* model.pPart.transcriptional

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl pc phr s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor  
 email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure



mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic  
 soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr  
*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view  
*figures:* cell  
*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit  
 forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset  
 orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex  
 socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone  
*verse:* rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
 distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
 listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
 q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* biblFull idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
 offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
 surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element supplied
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  attribute reason { list { data.word+ } }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Example*

```
I am dr Sr yr
<supplied reason="illegible"
  source="#amanuensis_copy">very humble Servt</supplied>
Sydney Smith

```

*Example*

```
<supplied reason="omitted-in-original">Dedication</supplied> to the duke of Bejar

```

*Note* The <damage>, <gap>, <del>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

---

**<support>** contains a description of the materials etc. which make up the physical support for the written part of a manuscript. [10.7.1. Object Description]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* supportDesc

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb  
ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji*: g  
*header*: biblFull idno  
*iso-fs*: fLib fs fvLib  
*linking*: ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription*: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
                   msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates*: addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
                   geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
                   offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
                   surname terrain trait  
*nets*: eTree forest graph listForest tree  
*spoken*: incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing  
*tagdocs*: att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
                   macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit*: app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure*: floatingText  
*transcr*: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
                   metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse*: caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```
element support { att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara }
```

#### Example

```

<objectDesc form="roll">
  <supportDesc>
    <support> Parchment roll with <material>silk</material> ribbons.
  </support>
</supportDesc>
</objectDesc>

```

**<supportDesc>** (support description) groups elements describing the physical support for the written part of a manuscript. [10.7.1. Object Description]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

**@material** a short project-defined name for the material composing the majority of the support

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Suggested values include:* **paper**

**parch** (parchment)

**mixed**

*Contained by* *msdescription*: objectDesc

*May contain*

*core:* p

*header:* extent

*linking:* ab

*msdescription:* collation condition foliation support

*Declaration*

```

element supportDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute material { "paper" | "parch" | "mixed" | xsd:Name }?,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( support?, extent?, foliation*, collation?, condition? ) )
}

```

*Example*

```

<supportDesc>
  <support> Parchment roll with <material>silk</material> ribbons.
</support>
</supportDesc>

```

---

**<surface>** defines a written surface as a two-dimensional coordinate space, optionally grouping one or more graphic representations of that space, zones of interest within that space, and transcriptions of the writing within them. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles 11.2.2. Embedded Transcription]

*Module* transcr

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space ) (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change )) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) att.coordinated ( @start, @ulx, @uly, @lrx, @lry, @points ) att.declaring ( @decls ) att.typed ( @type, @subtype )

**@attachment** describes the method by which this surface is or was connected to the main surface

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Sample values include:* **glued** glued in place

**pinned** pinned or stapled in place

**sewn** sewn in place

**@flipping** indicates whether the surface is attached and folded in such a way as to provide two writing surfaces

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.truthValue**

*Contained by:* facsimile sourceDoc surface surfaceGrp zone

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* binaryObject cb desc gap gb graphic index label lb media milestone note pb

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*textcrit:* witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw line listTranspose metamark space substJoin  
surface surfaceGrp zone

*Declaration*

```

element surface
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.coordinated.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute attachment { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute flipping { data.truthValue }?,
  (
    ( model.global | model.labelLike | model.graphicLike )*,
    ( ( zone | line | surface | surfaceGrp ), model.global* )*
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<facsimile>
<surface lrx="200" lry="300" ulx="0" uly="0">
  <graphic url="Bovelles-49r.png"/>
</surface>
</facsimile>

```

*Note* The <surface> element represents any two-dimensional space on some physical surface forming part of the source material, such as a piece of paper, a face of a monument, a billboard, a scroll, a leaf etc. The coordinate space defined by this element may be thought of as a grid *lrx* - *ulx* units wide and *uly* - *lry* units high. The <surface> element may contain graphic representations or transcriptions of written zones, or both. The coordinate values used by every <zone> element contained by this element are to be understood with reference to the same grid. Where it is useful or meaningful to do so, any grouping of multiple <surface> elements may be indicated using the <surfaceGrp> elements.

**<surfaceGrp>** defines any kind of useful grouping of written surfaces, for example the recto and verso of a single leaf, which the encoder wishes to treat as a single unit.  
[11.1. Digital Facsimiles]

*Module* transcr

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type,  
@subtype)

*Contained by*

*transcr:* facsimile sourceDoc surface surfaceGrp

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* cb gap gb index lb milestone note pb

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*textcrit:* witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin  
surface surfaceGrp

*Declaration*

```

element surfaceGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( model.global | surface | surfaceGrp )+
}

```

*Example*

```

<sourceDoc>
  <surfaceGrp>
    <surface lrx="200" lry="300" ulx="0"
      uly="0">
      <graphic url="Bovelles-49r.png"/>
    </surface>
    <surface lrx="200" lry="300" ulx="0"
      uly="0">
      <graphic url="Bovelles-49v.png"/>
    </surface>
  </surfaceGrp>
</sourceDoc>

```

*Note* Where it is useful or meaningful to do so, any grouping of multiple <surface> elements may be indicated using the <surfaceGrp> elements.

---

**<surname>** contains a family (inherited) name, as opposed to a given, baptismal, or nick name. [13.2.1. Personal Names]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming  
(@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.persNamePart

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc  
distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l

label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote  
 ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  
*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
 preparedness purpose  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr  
*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view  
*figures:* cell figDesc  
*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition  
 extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote  
 sponsor tagUsage typeNote  
*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
 settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```
element surname
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example*

```
<surname type="combine">St John Stevas</surname>
```

---

**<surplus>** marks text present in the source which the editor believes to be superfluous or redundant. [11.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text]

*Module* transcr

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant)  
 (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging  
 (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source))

**@reason** one or more words indicating why this text is believed to be superfluous,  
 e.g. *repeated, interpolated* etc.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of **data.word** separated by whitespace

*Member of* model.pPart.transcriptional

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl pc phr s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor  
 email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure  
 mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic  
 soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout



material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit  
 forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset  
 orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex  
 socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone  
*verse:* rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
 distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
 listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
 q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* biblFull idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
 offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
 surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
 macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element surplus
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,

```

```
attribute reason { list { data.word+ } }?,
macro.paraContent}
```

*Example*

```
I am dr Sr yrs
<surplus reason="repeated">yrs</surplus>
Sydney Smith
```

---

**<surrogates>** contains information about any representations of the manuscript being described which may exist in the holding institution or elsewhere. [10.9. Additional Information]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change)) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* additional

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element surrogates { att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara }
```

*Example*

```
<surrogates>
  <bibl>
    <title type="gmd">diapositive</title>
    <idno>AM 74 a, fol.</idno>
    <date>May 1984</date>
  </bibl>
  <bibl>
    <title type="gmd">b/w prints</title>
    <idno>AM 75 a, fol.</idno>
    <date>1972</date>
  </bibl>
</surrogates>
```

<syll> (syllabification) contains the syllabification of the headword. [9.3.1. Information on Written and Spoken Forms]

*Module dictionaries*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split,  
@value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

*Member of* model.entryPart model.formPart

*Contained by*

*core:* cit

*dictionaries:* dictScrap entryFree form

*namesdates:* nym

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element syll
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

*Example*

```
<form>
  <orth>area</orth>
  <hyph>ar|ea</hyph>
  <syll>ar|e|a</syll>
</form>
```

---

**<symbol/>** (symbolic value) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which contains one of a finite list of symbols. [18.3. Other Atomic Feature Values]

*Module* iso-fs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)

**@value** supplies a symbolic value for the feature, one of a finite list that may be specified in a feature declaration.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* data.word

*Member of* model.featureVal.single

*Contained by*

*iso-fs:* f fvLib if vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel vMerge vNot vRange

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element symbol
{
  att.global.attributes,
```

```

    att.datcat.attributes,
    attribute value { data.word },
    empty
}

```

*Example*

```

<f name="gender">
  <symbol value="feminine"/>
</f>

```

**<table>** contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns. [14.1.1. TEI Tables]

*Module figures*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

**@rows** indicates the number of rows in the table.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.count**

*Note* If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of rows. Rows should be presented from top to bottom.

**@cols** (columns) indicates the number of columns in each row of the table.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.count**

*Note* If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of columns. Within each row, columns should be presented left to right.

*Member of* model.listLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp h iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* abstract change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

*spoken:* writing

*textcrit:* lem rdg witness

*textstructure:* argument back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition

epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* binaryObject cb gap gb graphic head index lb media meeting milestone note pb

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic row

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*textcrit:* witDetail

*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph postscript  
salute signed trailer

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```
element table
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute rows { data.count }?,
  attribute cols { data.count }?,
  (
    ( model.headLike | model.global )*,
    ( ( row, model.global* )+ | ( ( model.graphicLike ), model.global* )+ ),
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}
```

*Example*

```
<table cols="4" rows="4">
<head>Poor Men's Lodgings in Norfolk (Mayhew, 1843)</head>
<row role="label">
  <cell role="data"/>
  <cell role="data">Dossing Cribs or Lodging Houses</cell>
  <cell role="data">Beds</cell>
  <cell role="data">Needys or Nightly Lodgers</cell>
</row>
<row role="data">
  <cell role="label">Bury St Edmund's</cell>
  <cell role="data">5</cell>
  <cell role="data">8</cell>
  <cell role="data">128</cell>
</row>
<row role="data">
  <cell role="label">Thetford</cell>
  <cell role="data">3</cell>
  <cell role="data">6</cell>
  <cell role="data">36</cell>
</row>
<row role="data">
  <cell role="label">Attleboro'</cell>
  <cell role="data">3</cell>
  <cell role="data">5</cell>
```

```

<cell role="data">20</cell>
</row>
<row role="data">
  <cell role="label">Wyndham</cell>
  <cell role="data">1</cell>
  <cell role="data">11</cell>
  <cell role="data">22</cell>
</row>
</table>

```

*Note* Contains an optional heading and a series of rows. Any rendition information should be supplied using the global *rend* attribute, at the table, row, or cell level as appropriate.

**<tag>** contains text of a complete start- or end-tag, possibly including attribute specifications, but excluding the opening and closing markup delimiter characters. [22. Documentation Elements]

*Module* tagdocs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

@type indicates the type of XML tag intended

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Legal values are:* **start** a start-tag, with delimiters < and > is intended

**end** an end-tag, with delimiters </ and > is intended

**empty** a empty tag, with delimiters < and /> is intended

**pi** a pi (processing instruction), with delimiters <? and ?> is intended

**comment** a comment, with delimiters <!-- and --> is intended

**ms** a marked-section, with delimiters <[CDATA[ and ]]> is intended

@scheme supplies the name of the schema in which this tag is defined.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Sample values include:* **TEI** (text encoding initiative) This tag is defined as part of the TEI scheme.[Default]

**DBK** (docbook) this tag is part of the Docbook scheme.

**XX** (unknown) this tag is part of an unknown scheme.

**Schematron**

**HTML**

*Member of* model.phrase.xml

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure

meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs  
said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  
*corpus*: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp*: readingExpRef  
*dictionaries*: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr  
*drama*: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view  
*figures*: cell figDesc  
*header*: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder  
geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage  
typeNote  
*iso-fs*: fDescr fsDescr  
*linking*: ab seg  
*msdescription*: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates*: addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*spoken*: u writing  
*tagdocs*: eg valDesc  
*textcrit*: lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure*: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr*: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse*: metSym rhyme  
*May contain* Character data only  
*Declaration*

```
element tag
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { "start" | "end" | "empty" | "pi" | "comment" | "ms" }?,
  attribute scheme { data.enumerated }?,
  text
}
```

### Example

Mark the start of each italicised phrase with a `<tag>hi rend="it"</tag>` tag, and its end with a `<tag type="end">hi</tag>` tag.  
`<tag type="comment">Example updated on 2008-04-05</tag>`

---

**<tagUsage>** supplies information about the usage of a specific element within a text.

[2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration]

*Module* header



*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

**@gi** (generic identifier) specifies the name (generic identifier) of the element  
 indicated by the tag, within the namespace indicated by the parent  
 <namespace> element.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* data.name

**@occurs** specifies the number of occurrences of this element within the text.

*Status* Recommended

*Datatype* data.count

**@withId** (with unique identifier) specifies the number of occurrences of this  
 element within the text which bear a distinct value for the global *xml:id*  
 attribute.

*Status* Recommended

*Datatype* data.count

**@render** specifies the identifier of a <rendition> element which defines how this  
 element was rendered in the source text.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

*Contained by:* namespace

*May contain*

*core:* abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign  
 gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref  
 rs said soCalled stage term time title

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* table

*header:* biblFull idno

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
 offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
 surname terrain trait

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
 macroSpec moduleSpec specGrp specGrpRef tag val

*textcrit:* listApp listWit

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* am ex subst

*Declaration*

```
element tagUsage
{
  att.global.attributes,
```

```
attribute gi { data.name },
attribute occurs { data.count }?,
attribute withId { data.count }?,
attribute render { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
macro.limitedContent}
```

*Example*

```
<tagsDecl>
  <rendition xml:id="it">Render using a slant or italic variant on the current
font</rendition>
<!-- ... -->
  <namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
    <tagUsage gi="hi" occurs="28" render="#it"
      withId="2"> Used to mark English words
        italicized in the copy text.</tagUsage>
    <tagUsage gi="foreign" render="#it">Used to mark non-English words in the copy
text.</tagUsage>
  <!-- ... -->
  </namespace>
</tagsDecl>
```

---

**<tagsDecl>** (tagging declaration) provides detailed information about the tagging applied to a document. [2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration 2.3. The Encoding Description]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

**@partial** indicates whether the element types listed exhaustively include all those found within <text>, or represent only a subset.

*Status* Recommended

*Datatype* **data.truthValue**

*Note* TEI recommended practice is to specify this attribute. When the <tagUsage> elements inside <tagsDecl> are used to list each of the element types in the associated <text>, the value should be given as false. When the <tagUsage> elements inside <tagsDecl> are used to provide usage information or default renditions for only a subset of the elements types within the associated <text>, the value should be true.

*Member of* model.encodingDescPart

*Contained by*

*header:* encodingDesc

*May contain*

*header:* namespace rendition

*Declaration*

```
element tagsDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute partial { data.truthValue }?,
```

```
( rendition*, namespace* )
}
```

*Example*

```
<tagsDecl>
  <rendition xml:id="rend-it">to be rendered in italic font</rendition>
  <namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
    <tagUsage gi="hi" occurs="467"
      render="#rend-it"/>
    <tagUsage gi="title" occurs="45"
      render="#rend-it"/>
  </namespace>
  <namespace name="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook">
    <tagUsage gi="para" occurs="10"/>
  </namespace>
</tagsDecl>
```

<taxonomy> defines a typology either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))

*Contained by*

*header:* classDecl

*May contain*

*core:* bibl biblStruct desc gloss listBibl

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* textread

*header:* biblFull category

*msdescription:* msDesc

*tagdocs:* altIdent equiv

*Declaration*

```
element taxonomy
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( model.glossLike | model.descLike ) *
    | category+
    | ( ( model.biblLike ), category* )
  )
}
```

*Example*

```
<taxonomy xml:id="tax.b">
  <bibl>Brown Corpus</bibl>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a">
    <catDesc>Press Reportage</catDesc>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a1">
      <catDesc>Daily</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a2">
```

```
<catDesc>Sunday</catDesc>
</category>
<category xml:id="tax.b.a3">
  <catDesc>National</catDesc>
</category>
<category xml:id="tax.b.a4">
  <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
</category>
<category xml:id="tax.b.a5">
  <catDesc>Political</catDesc>
</category>
<category xml:id="tax.b.a6">
  <catDesc>Sports</catDesc>
</category>
</category>
<category xml:id="tax.b.d">
  <catDesc>Religion</catDesc>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.d1">
    <catDesc>Books</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.d2">
    <catDesc>Periodicals and tracts</catDesc>
  </category>
</category>
</taxonomy>
```

*Example*

```
<taxonomy>
  <category xml:id="literature">
    <catDesc>Literature</catDesc>
    <category xml:id="poetry">
      <catDesc>Poetry</catDesc>
      <category xml:id="sonnet">
        <catDesc>Sonnet</catDesc>
        <category xml:id="shakesSonnet">
          <catDesc>Shakespearean Sonnet</catDesc>
        </category>
        <category xml:id="petraSonnet">
          <catDesc>Petrarchan Sonnet</catDesc>
        </category>
      </category>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="haiku">
      <catDesc>Haiku</catDesc>
    </category>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="drama">
    <catDesc>Drama</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="meter">
    <catDesc>Metrical Categories</catDesc>
    <category xml:id="feet">
      <catDesc>Metrical Feet</catDesc>
      <category xml:id="iambic">
        <catDesc>Iambic</catDesc>
      </category>
      <category xml:id="trochaic">
        <catDesc>trochaic</catDesc>
      </category>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="feetNumber">
      <catDesc>Number of feet</catDesc>
      <category xml:id="pentameter">
```

```

    <catDesc>>Pentameter</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tetrameter">
    <catDesc>>Tetrameter</catDesc>
  </category>
</category>
</taxonomy>
<!-- elsewhere in document -->
<lg ana="#shakesSonnet #iambic #pentameter">
  <l>Shall I compare thee to a summer's day</l>
<!-- ... -->
</lg>

```

**<tech>** (technical stage direction) describes a special-purpose stage direction that is not meant for the actors. [7.3.1. Technical Information]

*Module* drama

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

**@type** categorizes the technical stage direction.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Legal values are:* **light** a lighting cue

**sound** a sound cue

**prop** a prop cue

**block** a blocking instruction

**@perf** (performance) points to one or more <performance> elements documenting the performance or performances to which this technical direction applies.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of **data.pointer** separated by whitespace

*Member of* model.stageLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l lg meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote

filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
support surrogates

*spoken:* writing

*textcrit:* lem rdg witness

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element tech
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { "light" | "sound" | "prop" | "block" }?,
  attribute perf { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  macro.paraContent}
}
```

*Example*

```
<tech type="light">Red spot on his face</tech>
```

**<teiCorpus>** contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more TEI elements, each containing a single text header and a text. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

*Module core*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space ) ( att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition ) ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select ) ) ( att.global.analytic ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) ( att.global.change ( @change ) ) ( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) )

*@version* The version of the TEI scheme

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.version

*Default* 5.0

*Contained by* ~~only~~ teiCorpus

*May contain*

*core:* teiCorpus

*header:* teiHeader

*iso-fs:* fsdDecl

*textstructure:* TEI

*transcr:* facsimile sourceDoc

*Declaration*

```

element teiCorpus
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute version { data.version }?,
  (
    teiHeader,
    ( ( model.resourceLike+, ( TEI | teiCorpus )* ) | ( TEI | teiCorpus )+ )
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<teiCorpus version="5.2" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <!-- header for corpus -->
  </teiHeader>
  <TEI>
    <teiHeader>
      <!-- header for first text -->
    </teiHeader>
    <text>
      <!-- content of first text -->
    </text>
  </TEI>
  <TEI>
    <teiHeader>
      <!-- header for second text -->
    </teiHeader>
    <text>
      <!-- content of second text -->
    </text>
  </TEI>
</teiCorpus>

```

```
</TEI>
<!-- more TEI elements here -->
</teiCorpus>
```

*Note* Must contain one TEI header for the corpus, and a series of <TEI> elements, one for each text. This element is mandatory when applicable.

---

**<teiHeader>** (TEI header) supplies the descriptive and declarative information making up an electronic title page for every TEI-conformant document. [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (*att.global.rendition* (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (*att.global.linking* (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*)) (*att.global.change* (*@change*)) (*att.global.responsibility* (*@cert*, *@resp*))

*@type* specifies the kind of document to which the header is attached, for example whether it is a corpus or individual text.

*Deprecated* will be removed on 2016-11-18

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Sample values include:* **text** the header is attached to a single text.

[Default]

**corpus** the header is attached to a corpus.

*Containability* **teiCorpus**

*textstructure:* TEI

*May contain*

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpDesc

*header:* encodingDesc fileDesc profileDesc revisionDesc

*Declaration*

```
element teiHeader
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  ( fileDesc, model.teiHeaderPart*, revisionDesc? )
}
```

*Example*

```
<teiHeader>
<fileDesc>
  <titleStmt>
    <title>Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) in electronic form</title>
    <author>Shakespeare, William (1564–1616)</author>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>Originally prepared by</resp>
    <name>Trevor Howard-Hill</name>
  </respStmt>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>Revised and edited by</resp>
    <name>Christine Avern-Carr</name>
```



```

</respStmt>
</titleStmt>
<publicationStmt>
  <distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor>
  <address>
    <addrLine>13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK</addrLine>
  </address>
  <idno type="OTA">119</idno>
  <availability>
    <p>Freely available on a non-commercial basis.</p>
  </availability>
  <date when="1968">1968</date>
</publicationStmt>
<sourceDesc>
  <bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Norton Facsimile, 1968)</bibl>
</sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
<encodingDesc>
  <projectDesc>
    <p>Originally prepared for use in the production of a series of old-spelling concordances in 1968, this text was extensively checked and revised for use during the editing of the new Oxford Shakespeare (Wells and Taylor, 1989).</p>
  </projectDesc>
  <editorialDecl>
    <correction>
      <p>Turned letters are silently corrected.</p>
    </correction>
    <normalization>
      <p>Original spelling and typography is retained, except that long s and ligatured forms are not encoded.</p>
    </normalization>
  </editorialDecl>
  <refsDecl xml:id="ASLREF">
    <cRefPattern matchPattern="(\S+) ([^.]*)\.(.*)"
      replacementPattern="#xpath(//div1[@n='$1']/div2[@n='$2']//lb[@n='$3'])">
      <p>A reference is created by assembling the following, in the reverse order as that listed here: <list>
        <item>the <att>n</att> value of the preceding <gi>lb</gi>
      </item>
        <item>a period</item>
        <item>the <att>n</att> value of the ancestor <gi>div2</gi>
      </item>
        <item>a space</item>
        <item>the <att>n</att> value of the parent <gi>div1</gi>
      </item>
      </list>
    </p>
    </cRefPattern>
  </refsDecl>
</encodingDesc>
<revisionDesc>
  <list>
    <item>
      <date when="1989-04-12">12 Apr 89</date> Last checked by CAC</item>
    <item>
      <date when="1989-03-01">1 Mar 89</date> LB made new file</item>
    </list>

```

```
</revisionDesc>  
</teiHeader>
```

*Note* One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document.

---

**<term>** contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term. [3.3.4. Terms, Glosses, Equivalents, and Descriptions]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.declaring (@decls) att.pointing  
(@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.canonical (@key,  
@ref) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.cReferencing (@cRef)

*Member of* model.emphLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct  
editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi index item l label  
measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref  
reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder  
geoDecl handNote keywords language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor  
tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element term
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.cReferencing.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

### Example

A computational device that infers structure from grammatical strings of words is known as a **<term>parser</term>**, and much of the history of NLP over the last 20 years has been occupied with the design of parsers.

### Example

We may define **<term rend="sc" xml:id="TDPV">discoursal point of view</term>** as **<gloss target="#TDPV">the relationship, expressed through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the fiction.</gloss>**

*Note* This element is used to supply the form under which an index entry is to be made for the location of a parent <index> element. In formal terminological work, there is frequently discussion over whether terms must be atomic or may include multi-word lexical items, symbolic designations, or phraseological units. The <term> element may be used to mark any of these. No position is taken on the philosophical issue of what a term can be; the looser definition simply allows the <term> element to be used by practitioners of any persuasion.

As with other members of the `att.canonical` class, instances of this element occurring in a text may be associated with a canonical definition, either by means of a URI (using the `ref` attribute), or by means of some system-specific code value (using the `key` attribute). Because the mutually exclusive `target` and `cRef` attributes overlap with the function of the `ref` attribute, they are deprecated and may be removed at a subsequent release.

---

**<terrain>** contains information about the physical terrain of a place. [13.3.4.3. States, Traits, and Events]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.rendition` (`@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`)) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`)) (`att.global.responsibility` (`@cert`, `@resp`)) `att.datable` (`@calendar`, `@period`) (`att.datable.w3c` (`@when`, `@notBefore`, `@notAfter`, `@from`, `@to`)) (`att.datable.iso` (`@when-iso`, `@notBefore-iso`, `@notAfter-iso`, `@from-iso`, `@to-iso`)) (`att.datable.custom` (`@when-custom`, `@notBefore-custom`, `@notAfter-custom`, `@from-custom`, `@to-custom`, `@datingPoint`, `@datingMethod`)) `att.editLike` (`@evidence`, `@instant`) (`att.dimensions` (`@unit`, `@quantity`, `@extent`, `@precision`, `@scope`) (`att.ranging` (`@atLeast`, `@atMost`, `@min`, `@max`, `@confidence`)) ) (`att.source` (`@source`)) `att.naming` (`@role`, `@nymRef`) (`att.canonical` (`@key`, `@ref`)) `att.typed` (`@type`, `@subtype`)

*Member of* model.placeStateLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset org orgName persName place placeName region residence  
 roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname terrain  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*core:* bibl biblStruct desc head label listBibl note p  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* textread  
*header:* biblFull  
*linking:* ab  
*msdescription:* msDesc  
*namesdates:* terrain  
*textcrit:* witDetail  
*Declaration*

```

element terrain
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    ( ( model.pLike+ ) | ( model.labelLike+ ) ),
    ( model.noteLike | model.biblLike )*,
    terrain*
  )
}

```

#### Example

```

<place xml:id="KERG">
  <placeName>Kerguelen Islands</placeName>
  <!-- ... -->
  <terrain>
    <desc>antarctic tundra</desc>
  </terrain>
  <!-- ... -->
</place>

```

<text> contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a

poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.declaring (*@decls*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* TEI group

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* cb gap gb index lb milestone note pb

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*textcrit:* witDetail

*textstructure:* back body front group

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```
element text
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( front, model.global* )?,
    ( body | group ),
    model.global*,
    ( back, model.global* )?
  )
}
```

*Example*

```
<text>
  <front>
    <docTitle>
      <titlePart>Autumn Haze</titlePart>
    </docTitle>
  </front>
  <body>
    <l>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf</l>
    <l>That settles softly down upon the water?</l>
  </body>
</text>
```

*Example* The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:

```

<text>
  <front>
<!-- front matter for the whole group -->
  </front>
  <group>
    <text>
<!-- first text -->
    </text>
    <text>
<!-- second text -->
    </text>
  </group>
</text>

```

*Note* This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the <floatingText> is provided for this purpose.

**<textClass>** (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.declarable (@default)

*Member of* model.profileDescPart

*Contained by*

*header:* profileDesc

*May contain*

*header:* catRef classCode keywords

*Declaration*

```

element textClass
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( classCode | catRef | keywords ) *
}

```

*Example*

```

<taxonomy>
  <category xml:id="acprose">
    <catDesc>Academic prose</catDesc>
  </category>
<!-- other categories here -->
</taxonomy>
<!-- ... -->
<textClass>
  <catRef target="#acprose"/>
  <classCode scheme="http://www.udcc.org">001.9</classCode>
  <keywords scheme="http://authorities.loc.gov">
    <list>
      <item>End of the world</item>
    </list>
  </keywords>
</textClass>

```

```
<item>History - philosophy</item>
</list>
</keywords>
</textClass>
```

---

**<textDesc>** (text description) provides a description of a text in terms of its situational parameters. [15.2.1. The Text Description]

*Module* corpus

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change)) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) att.declarable ( @default)

*Member of* model.catDescPart model.profileDescPart

*Contained by*

*header:* catDesc profileDesc

*May contain*

*corpus:* channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction preparedness purpose

*Declaration*

```
element textDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( model.textDescPart_sequence, purpose+ )
}
```

*Example*

```
<textDesc n="Informal domestic conversation">
  <channel mode="s"/>
  <constitution type="single"/>
  <derivation type="original"/>
  <domain type="domestic"/>
  <factuality type="mixed"/>
  <interaction active="plural"
    passive="many" type="complete"/>
  <preparedness type="spontaneous"/>
  <purpose degree="high" type="entertain"/>
  <purpose degree="medium" type="inform"/>
</textDesc>
```

---

**<textLang>** (text language) describes the languages and writing systems identified within the bibliographic work being described, rather than its description. [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 10.6.6. Languages and Writing Systems]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic



(*@ana*) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))  
 (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

**@mainLang** (main language) supplies a code which identifies the chief language used in the bibliographic work.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.language

**@otherLangs** (other languages) one or more codes identifying any other languages used in the bibliographic work.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 0– occurrences of data.language separated by whitespace

*Member of* model.biblPart model.msItemPart

*Contained by*

*core:* analytic bibl monogr series

*msdescription:* msContents msItem msItemStruct

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element textLang
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute mainLang { data.language }?,
  attribute otherLangs { list { data.language* } }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example*

```
<textLang mainLang="en" otherLangs="la"> Predominantly in English with Latin glosses</textLang>
```

*Note* This element should not be used to document the languages or writing systems used for the bibliographic or manuscript description itself: as for all other TEI elements, such information should be provided by means of the global *xml:lang* attribute attached to the element containing the description. In all cases, languages should be identified by means of a standardized ‘language tag’ generated according to BCP 47. Additional documentation for the language may be provided by a `<language>` element in the TEI Header.

---

**<textNode>** indicates the presence of a text node in a content model [22.  
Documentation Elements]

*Module* tagdocs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*)  
(att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic  
(*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))  
(att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

*Member of* model.contentPart

*Contained by*

*tagdocs:* alternate content sequence

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

element textNode { att.global.attributes, empty }
---

*Example*

```
<content>
  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
    minOccurs="0">
    <textNode/>
    <elementRef key="hi"/>
    <elementRef key="seg"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

---

**<textProvenance>** Contains information about the text read during the reading  
experience

*Namespace* <http://readingexp.univ-lemans.fr/tei>

*Module* derived-module-tei\_readingExp

*Contained by* —

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

element textProvenance { empty }
----------------------------------

---

**<textread>** Contains information on the text read during the reading experience.

*Namespace* <http://readingexp.univ-lemans.fr/tei>

Module derived-module-tei\_readingExp

*Attributes* Attributes att.dateable (@calendar, @period) (att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.dateable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.dateable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.source (@source)) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.change (@change) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) att.source (@source) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.canonical (~~@ref~~, @key, @key, @key) att.naming (@role, @nymRef, @role, @nymRef) att.personal (@full, @sort)

@ref (reference) Reference

Derived from att.canonical

Status Optional

Datatype 0–1 occurrences of **data.text** separated by whitespace

@ref (reference) Reference

Derived from att.canonical

Status Optional

Datatype 0–1 occurrences of **data.text** separated by whitespace

@ref (reference) Reference

Derived from att.canonical

Status Optional

Datatype 0–1 occurrences of **data.text** separated by whitespace

@ref Reference

Status Optional

Datatype 0–1 occurrences of **data.text** separated by whitespace

Member of model.biblLike model.personLike

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l listBibl meeting note orig p q quote ref  
reg relatedItem said sic stage title unclear

corpus: particDesc

derived-module-tei\_readingExp: readingExp readingExpRef

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

drama: camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy  
typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
 filiation foliation layout msItem musicNotation origin provenance signatures source  
 summary support surrogates

*namesdates:* climate event listPerson location org person personGrp place population  
 state terrain trait

*spoken:* broadcast scriptStmt writing

*textcrit:* lem rdg witness

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
 imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*core:* author title

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* genre origLanguage

*header:* langUsage

*msdescription:* objectType provenance

*Declaration*

```

element textread
{
  att.canonical.attribute.key,
  att.datable.attributes,
  att.datable.custom.attributes,
  att.dimensions.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.analytic.attributes,
  att.global.change.attributes,
  att.global.facs.attributes,
  att.global.linking.attributes,
  att.global.rendition.attributes,
  att.global.responsibility.attributes,
  att.naming.attribute.role,
  att.naming.attribute.nymRef,
  att.canonical.attribute.key,
  att.personal.attribute.full,
  att.personal.attribute.sort,
  att.naming.attribute.role,
  att.naming.attribute.nymRef,
  att.canonical.attribute.key,
  att.ranging.attributes,
  att.source.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute ref { data.text }?,
  attribute ref { data.text }?,
  attribute ref { data.text }?,
  attribute ref { data.text }?,
  (
    author*,
    title*,
    genre*,
    provenance*,
    langUsage*,
    origLanguage*,
    objectType*
  )
}

```

```

    )
  }

```

**<then/>** separates the condition from the default in an <if>, or the antecedent and the consequent in a <cond> element. [18.11. Feature System Declaration]

*Module* iso-fs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Contained by*

*iso-fs:* cond if

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration* `element then { att.global.attributes, empty }`

*Example*

```

<cond>
  <fs>
    <f name="BAR">
      <symbol value="1"/>
    </f>
  </fs>
  <then/>
  <fs>
    <f name="F00">
      <binary value="false"/>
    </f>
  </fs>
</cond>

```

*Note* This element is provided primarily to enhance the human readability of the feature-system declaration.

**<time>** contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format. [3.5.4. Dates and Times]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.dateable (@calendar, @period) (att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.dateable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.duration (att.duration.w3c (@dur)) (att.duration.iso (@dur-iso)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.dateLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span  
*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  
*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose setting  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr  
*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view  
*figures:* cell figDesc  
*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote  
*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* recording u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```

element time
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.duration.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global ) *
}

```

*Example*

As he sat smiling, the  
quarter struck – <time when="11:45:00">the quarter to twelve</time>.

<timeline> provides a set of ordered points in time which can be linked to elements of a spoken text to create a temporal alignment of that text. [16.5.2. Placing Synchronous Events in Time]

*Module linking*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))

*@origin* designates the origin of the timeline, i.e. the time at which it begins.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.pointer**

*Note* If this attribute is not supplied, the implication is that the time of origin is not known. If it is supplied, it must point either to one of the <when/> elements in its content, or to another <timeline> element.

*@unit* specifies the unit of time corresponding to the *interval* value of the timeline or of its constituent points in time.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Suggested values include:* **d** (days)

**h** (hours)

**min** (minutes)

**s** (seconds)

**ms** (milliseconds)

**@interval** specifies a time interval either as a positive integral value or using one of a set of predefined codes.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.interval`

*Note* The value *irregular* indicates uncertainty about all the intervals in the timeline; the value *regular* indicates that all the intervals are evenly spaced, but the size of the intervals is not known; numeric values indicate evenly spaced values of the size specified. If individual points in time in the timeline are given different values for the *interval* attribute, those values locally override the value given in the timeline.

*Member of* model.global.meta

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*teststructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone



*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*linking:* when

*Declaration*

```

element timeline
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute origin { data.pointer }?,
  attribute unit { "d" | "h" | "min" | "s" | "ms" | xsd:Name }?,
  attribute interval { data.interval }?,
  when+
}

```

*Example*

```

<timeline unit="ms" xml:id="TL01">
  <when absolute="11:30:00" xml:id="TL-w0"/>
  <when interval="unknown" since="#TL-w0"
    xml:id="TL-w1"/>
  <when interval="100" since="#TL-w1"
    xml:id="TL-w2"/>
  <when interval="200" since="#TL-w2"
    xml:id="TL-w3"/>
  <when interval="150" since="#TL-w3"
    xml:id="TL-w4"/>
  <when interval="250" since="#TL-w4"
    xml:id="TL-w5"/>
  <when interval="100" since="#TL-w5"
    xml:id="TL-w6"/>
</timeline>

```

---

<title> contains a title for any kind of work. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]

*Module* core

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.typed (type, @subtype)

@type classifies the title according to some convenient typology.

*Derived from* att.typed

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Sample values include:* **main** main title

**sub** (subordinate) subtitle, title of part

**alt** (alternate) alternate title, often in another language, by which the work is also known

**short** abbreviated form of title

**desc** (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work functioning as a title

*Note* This attribute is provided for convenience in analysing titles and processing them according to their type; where such specialized

processing is not necessary, there is no need for such analysis, and the entire title, including subtitles and any parallel titles, may be enclosed within a single <title> element.

**@level** indicates the bibliographic level for a title, that is, whether it identifies an article, book, journal, series, or unpublished material.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Legal values are:* **a** (analytic) the title applies to an analytic item, such as an article, poem, or other work published as part of a larger item.

**m** (monographic) the title applies to a monograph such as a book or other item considered to be a distinct publication, including single volumes of multi-volume works

**j** (journal) the title applies to any serial or periodical publication such as a journal, magazine, or newspaper

**s** (series) the title applies to a series of otherwise distinct publications such as a collection

**u** (unpublished) the title applies to any unpublished material (including theses and dissertations unless published by a commercial press)

*Note* The level of a title is sometimes implied by its context: for example, a title appearing directly within an <analytic> element is *ipso facto* of level ‘a’, and one appearing within a <series> element of level ‘s’. For this reason, the *level* attribute is not required in contexts where its value can be unambiguously inferred. Where it is supplied in such contexts, its value should not contradict the value implied by its parent element.

*Member of* model.emphLike model.msQuoteLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine analytic author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned monogr name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExp readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote seriesStmt sponsor tagUsage titleStmt typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition

custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material msItem msItemStruct musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin  
 provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates  
 watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
 settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
 distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
 listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
 q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* biblFull idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
 offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
 surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
 macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

element title {
--------------------

```

att.global.attributes,
att.canonical.attributes,
att.typed.attribute.subtype,
attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
attribute level { "a" | "m" | "j" | "s" | "u" }?,
macro.paraContent}

```

*Example*

```

<title>Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of
a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK,
18–21 July 1989</title>

```

*Example*

```

<title>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable
edition</title>

```

*Example*

```

<title type="full">
  <title type="main">Synthèse</title>
  <title type="sub">an international journal for
    epistemology, methodology and history of
    science</title>
</title>

```

*Note* The attributes *key* and *ref*, inherited from the class *att.canonical* may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title.

---

**<titlePage>** (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter. [4.6. Title Pages]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* Attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (*att.global.rendition* (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (*att.global.linking* (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*)) (*att.global.change* (*@change*)) (*att.global.responsibility* (*@cert*, *@resp*))

**@type** classifies the title page according to any convenient typology.

*Status* Optional*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Note* This attribute allows the same element to be used for volume title pages, series title pages, etc., as well as for the ‘main’ title page of a work.

*Member of* model.frontPart*Contained by**msdescription:* msContents*textstructure:* back front*May contain**analysis:* interp interpGrp span spanGrp*certainty:* certainty precision respons*core:* binaryObject cb gap gb graphic index lb milestone note pb*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*textcrit:* witDetail

*textstructure:* argument byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle  
epigraph imprimatur titlePart

*transcr:* addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

*Declaration*

```

element titlePage
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( model.titlepagePart ),
    ( model.titlepagePart | model.global )*
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<titlePage>
  <docTitle>
    <titlePart type="main">THOMAS OF Reading.</titlePart>
    <titlePart type="alt">OR, The sixe worthy yeomen of the West.</titlePart>
  </docTitle>
  <docEdition>Now the fourth time corrected and enlarged</docEdition>
  <byline>By T.D.</byline>
  <figure>
    <head>TP</head>
    <p>Thou shalt labor till thou returne to duste</p>
    <figDesc>Printers Ornament used by TP</figDesc>
  </figure>
  <docImprint>Printed at <name type="place">London</name> for <name>T.P.</name>
  <date>1612.</date>
</docImprint>
</titlePage>

```

**<titlePart>** contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page. [4.6. Title Pages]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

**@type** specifies the role of this subdivision of the title.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Suggested values include:* **main** main title of the work[Default]

**sub** (subordinate) subtitle of the work

**alt** (alternate) alternative title of the work

**short** abbreviated form of title

**desc** (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work

*Member of* model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* msItem

*textstructure:* back docTitle front titlePage

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element titlePart
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { "main" | "sub" | "alt" | "short" | "desc" | xsd:Name }?,
  macro.paraContent}
}
```

*Example*

```
<docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main">THE FORTUNES
    AND MISFORTUNES Of the FAMOUS
    Moll Flanders, &c.
  </titlePart>
</docTitle>
```

```
<titlePart type="desc">Who was BORN in NEWGATE,
And during a Life of continu'd Variety for
Threescore Years, besides her Childhood, was
Twelve Year a <hi>Whore</hi>, five times a <hi>Wife</hi> (wherof
once to her own Brother) Twelve Year a <hi>Thief,</hi>
Eight Year a Transported <hi>Felon</hi> in <hi>Virginia</hi>,
at last grew <hi>Rich</hi>, liv'd <hi>Honest</hi>, and died a
<hi>Penitent</hi>.</titlePart>
</docTitle>
```

**<titleStmt>** (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content. [2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2. The File Description]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))

*Contained by*

*header:* biblFull fileDesc

*May contain*

*core:* author editor meeting respStmt title

*header:* funder principal sponsor

*Declaration*

```
element titleStmt { att.global.attributes, ( title+, model.respLike* ) }
```

*Example*

```
<titleStmt>
<title>Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable
transcription</title>
<respStmt>
<resp>compiled by</resp>
<name>P.J. Lucas</name>
</respStmt>
</titleStmt>
```

**<tns>** (tense) indicates the grammatical tense associated with a given inflected form in a dictionary. [9.3.1. Information on Written and Spoken Forms]

*Module dictionaries*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) att.lexicographic ( @expand, @norm, @split,  
 @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt ) (att.datcat ( @datcat, @valueDatcat ))

*Member of* model.morphLike

*Contained by*

*dictionaries:* dictScrap entryFree etym form gramGrp

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* biblFull idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```
element tns
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
}
```

*Example* Taken from *Wörterbuch der Deutschen Sprache. Veranstalet und herausgegeben von Joachim Heinrich Campe. Vierter Theil. S - bis - T. (Braunschweig 1810. In der Schulbuchhandlung):*

Treffen, v. unregelm. ... du triffst, ...

```
<entry>
  <form type="inflected">
    <gramGrp>
      <per value="2"/>
      <number value="singular"/>
      <tns value="present"/>
      <mood value="indicative"/>
    </gramGrp>
    <form type="personalpronoun">
      <orth>du</orth>
```



```

</form>
<form type="headword">
  <orth>
    <oVar>triffst</oVar>
  </orth>
</form>
</form>
</entry>

```

*Note* This element is synonymous with <gram type="tense">.

---

**<trailer>** contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text.  
 [4.2.4. Content of Textual Divisions 4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.divBottomPart

*Contained by*

*core:* lg list

*drama:* castGroup epilogue performance prologue

*figures:* figure table

*textstructure:* back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group postscript

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
 distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
 listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
 q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
 offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
 surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
 macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element trailer
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    text
    | lg      | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter      | model.LLike      | model.
  )
}

```

*Example*

```
<trailer>Explicit pars tertia</trailer>
```

*Example*

```

<trailer>
<l>In stead of FINIS this advice <hi>I</hi> send,</l>
<l>Let Rogues and Thieves beware of <lb/>
<hi>Hamans</hi> END.</l>
</trailer>

```

From EEBO A87070

---

**<trait>** contains a description of some status or quality attributed to a person, place, or organization typically, but not necessarily, independent of the volition or action of the holder and usually not at some specific time or for a specific date range. [13.3.1. Basic Principles 13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics]

*Module* namesdates

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.datable (@calendar, @period)  
 (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso  
 (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom  
 (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom,  
 @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions  
 (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost,  
 @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef)  
 (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.persStateLike model.placeStateLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc  
 distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l

label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote  
 ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  
*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
 preparedness purpose  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr  
*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view  
*figures:* cell figDesc  
*header:* authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition  
 extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote  
 sponsor tagUsage typeNote  
*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset org orgName persName person personGrp place placeName region  
 residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname trait  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*core:* bibl biblStruct desc head label listBibl note p  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* textread  
*header:* biblFull  
*linking:* ab  
*msdescription:* msDesc  
*namesdates:* trait  
*textcrit:* witDetail  
*Declaration*

```

element trait
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    trait+
    | ( model.headLike*, model.pLike+, ( model.noteLike | model.biblLike )* )
    | ( ( model.labellike | model.noteLike | model.biblLike )* )
  )
}

```

```
    )  
}
```

*Example*

```
<trait type="physical">  
  <label>Eye colour</label>  
  <desc>Blue</desc>  
</trait>
```

*Note* Where there is confusion between `<trait>` and `<state>` the more general purpose element `<state>` should be used even for unchanging characteristics. If you wish to distinguish between characteristics that are generally perceived to be time-bound states and those assumed to be fixed traits, then `<trait>` is available for the more static of these. The `<state>` element encodes characteristics which are sometimes assumed to change, often at specific times or over a date range, whereas the `<trait>` elements are used to record characteristics, such as eye-colour, which are less subject to change. Traits are typically, but not necessarily, independent of the volition or action of the holder.

---

**<transpose>** describes a single textual transposition as an ordered list of at least two pointers specifying the order in which the elements indicated should be re-combined. [11.3.4.5. Transpositions]

*Module* `transcr`

*Attributes* `Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )`  
`(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,`  
`@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic`  
`( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))`  
`(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))`

*Contained by*

*transcr:* `listTranspose`

*May contain*

*core:* `ptr`

*Declaration*

```
element transpose { att.global.attributes, ( ptr, ptr+ ) }
```

*Example*

```
<transpose>  
  <ptr target="#ib02"/>  
  <ptr target="#ib01"/>  
</transpose>
```

The transposition recorded here indicates that the content of the element with identifier **ib02** should appear before the content of the element with identifier **ib01**.

*Note* Transposition is usually indicated in a document by a metamark such as a wavy line or numbering. The order in which `<ptr/>` elements appear within a `<transpose>` element should correspond with the desired order, as indicated by the metamark.

---

**<tree>** encodes a tree, which is made up of a root, internal nodes, leaves, and arcs from root to leaves. [19.2. Trees]

*Module* `nets`

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))

**@arity** gives the maximum number of children of the root and internal nodes of the tree.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.count

**@ord** (ordered) indicates whether or not the tree is ordered, or if it is partially ordered.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Legal values are:* **true** indicates that all of the branching nodes of the tree are ordered.

**partial** indicates that some of the branching nodes of the tree are ordered and some are unordered.

**false** indicates that all of the branching nodes of the tree are unordered.

**@order** gives the order of the tree, i.e., the number of its nodes.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.count

*Note* The size of a tree is always one less than its order, hence there is no need for both a *size* and *order* attribute.

*Member of* model.divPart

*Contained by*

*core:* item note q quote said stage

*drama:* castList epilogue performance prologue set view

*figures:* cell figure

*header:* change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
 filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
 support surrogates

*nets:* forest

*tagdocs:* specGrp

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph postscript

*transcr:* metamark

*May contain*

*core:* label

*nets:* iNode leaf root

*Declaration*

```

element tree
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute arity { data.count }?,
  attribute ord { "true" | "partial" | "false" },
  attribute order { data.count }?,
```

```
( label?, ( ( leaf | iNode )*, root, ( leaf | iNode )* ) )  
}
```

*Example*

```
<tree arity="2" n="ex2" ord="partial"  
  order="13">  
  <root children="#G-plu1 #G-exp1"  
    ord="true" xml:id="G-div1">  
    <label>/</label>  
  </root>  
  <iNode children="#G-exp2 #G-exp3"  
    ord="false" parent="#G-div1" xml:id="G-plu1">  
    <label>+</label>  
  </iNode>  
  <iNode children="#G-plu2 #G-num2.3"  
    ord="true" parent="#G-div1" xml:id="G-exp1">  
    <label>**</label>  
  </iNode>  
  <iNode children="#G-vara1 #G-num2.1"  
    ord="true" parent="#G-plu1" xml:id="G-exp2">  
    <label>**</label>  
  </iNode>  
  <iNode children="#G-varb1 #G-num2.2"  
    ord="true" parent="#G-plu1" xml:id="G-exp3">  
    <label>**</label>  
  </iNode>  
  <iNode children="#G-vara2 #G-varb2"  
    ord="false" parent="#G-exp1" xml:id="G-plu2">  
    <label>+</label>  
  </iNode>  
  <leaf parent="#G-exp2" xml:id="G-vara1">  
    <label>a</label>  
  </leaf>  
  <leaf parent="#G-exp2" xml:id="G-num2.1">  
    <label>2</label>  
  </leaf>  
  <leaf parent="#G-exp3" xml:id="G-varb1">  
    <label>b</label>  
  </leaf>  
  <leaf parent="#G-exp3" xml:id="G-num2.2">  
    <label>2</label>  
  </leaf>  
  <leaf parent="#G-plu2" xml:id="G-vara2">  
    <label>a</label>  
  </leaf>  
  <leaf parent="#G-plu2" xml:id="G-varb2">  
    <label>b</label>  
  </leaf>  
  <leaf parent="#G-exp1" xml:id="G-num2.3">  
    <label>2</label>  
  </leaf>  
</tree>
```

*Note* A root, and zero or more internal nodes and leaves, but if there is an internal node, there must also be at least one leaf.

---

**<triangle>** (underspecified embedding tree, so called because of its characteristic shape when drawn) provides for an underspecified eTree, that is, an eTree with information left out. [19.3. Another Tree Notation]

*Module* nets

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))

**@value** supplies a value for the triangle, in the form of the identifier of a feature  
 structure or other analytic element.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

*Contained by* eTree forest triangle

*May contain*

*core:* label

*nets:* eLeaf eTree triangle

*Declaration*

```

element triangle
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute value { data.pointer }?,
  ( label?, ( eTree | triangle | eLeaf )* )
}

```

*Example*

```

<triangle>
  <label>NP</label>
  <eLeaf>
    <label>the periscope</label>
  </eLeaf>
</triangle>

```

*Note* An optional label followed by zero or more embedding trees, triangles, or embedding leafs.

---

**<typeDesc>** contains a description of the typefaces or other aspects of the printing of an incunable or other printed source. [10.7.2.1. Writing]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.physDescPart

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* physDesc

*May contain*

*core:* p

*header:* typeNote

*linking:* ab

*msdescription:* summary

*Declaration*

```
element typeDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( summary?, typeNote+ ) )
}
```

*Example*

```
<typeDesc>
  <p>Uses an unidentified black letter font, probably from the
    15th century</p>
</typeDesc>
```

*Example*

```
<typeDesc>
  <summary>Contains a mixture of blackletter and Roman (antiqua) typefaces</summary>
  <typeNote xml:id="Frak1">Blackletter face, showing
    similarities to those produced in Wuerzburg after 1470.</typeNote>
  <typeNote xml:id="Rom1">Roman face of Venetian origins.</typeNote>
</typeDesc>
```

---

**<typeNote>** describes a particular font or other significant typographic feature distinguished within the description of a printed resource. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]

*Module header*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) att.handFeatures ( @scribe, @scribeRef,  
@script, @scriptRef, @medium, @scope )

*Contained by*

*msdescription:* typeDesc

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb  
ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width



*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

#### Declaration

```
element typeNote
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.handFeatures.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

#### Example

```
<typeNote scope="sole"> Printed in an Antiqua typeface showing strong Italianate
influence.
</typeNote>
```

<u> (utterance) contains a stretch of speech usually preceded and followed by silence or by a change of speaker. [8.3.1. Utterances]

#### Module spoken

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.timed (@start, @end) (att.duration  
(att.duration.w3c (@dur)) (att.duration.iso (@dur-iso)) ) att.declaring (@decls)  
att.ascribed (@who)

**@trans** (transition) indicates the nature of the transition between this utterance and the previous one.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Legal values are:* **smooth** this utterance begins without unusual pause or rapidity.[Default]

**latching** this utterance begins with a markedly shorter pause than normal.

**overlap** this utterance begins before the previous one has finished.

**pause** this utterance begins after a noticeable pause.

*Member of* model.divPart.spoken

*Contained by*

*core:* item note q quote said stage

*drama:* castList epilogue performance prologue set view  
*figures:* cell figure  
*header:* change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote  
 filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary  
 support surrogates  
*tagdocs:* specGrp  
*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph postscript  
*transcr:* metamark  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element u
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.timed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  attribute trans { "smooth" | "latching" | "overlap" | "pause" }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global ) *
}

```

*Example*

```

<u who="#spkr1">if did you set</u>
<u trans="latching" who="#spkr2">well Joe and I set it between us</u>
<list type="speakers">
  <item xml:id="spkr1"/>

```

```
<item xml:id="spkr2"/>
</list>
```

*Note* Prose and a mixture of speech elements Although individual transcriptions may consistently use <u> elements for turns or other units, and although in most cases a <u> will be delimited by pause or change of speaker, <u> is not required to represent a turn or any communicative event, nor to be bounded by pauses or change of speaker. At a minimum, a <u> is some phonetic production by a given speaker.

**<unclear>** contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source. [11.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text 3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

*Module core*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source))

**@reason** indicates why the material is hard to transcribe.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of **data.word** separated by whitespace

```
<div>
  <head>Rx</head>
  <p>500 mg <unclear reason="illegible">placebo</unclear>
</p>
</div>
```

*Note* One or more words may be used to describe the reason; usually each word will refer to a single cause. Typical examples might thus include *faded*, *illegible*, *eccentric\_ductus* *background\_noise*, *passing\_truck*, etc.

**@hand** Where the difficulty in transcription arises from action (partial deletion, etc.) assignable to an identifiable hand, signifies the hand responsible for the action.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.pointer**

**@agent** Where the difficulty in transcription arises from damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Sample values include:* **rubbing** damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges

**mildew** damage results from mildew on the leaf surface

**smoke** damage results from smoke

*Member of* model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl pc phr s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del distinct

editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label  
measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said  
sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit  
forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset  
orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex  
socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list  
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr  
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```
element unclear
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  attribute reason { list { data.word+ } }?,
  attribute hand { data.pointer }?,
  attribute agent { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Example*

<u> ...and then <unclear reason="background-noise">Nathalie</unclear> said ... </u>

*Note* The same element is used for all cases of uncertainty in the transcription of element content, whether for written or spoken material. For other aspects of certainty, uncertainty, and reliability of tagging and transcription, see chapter 21. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility. The <damage>, <gap>, <del>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance. The *hand* attribute points to a definition of the hand concerned, as further discussed in section 11.3.2.1. Document Hands.

<undo/> indicates one or more marked-up interventions in a document which have subsequently been marked for cancellation. [11.3.4.4. Confirmation, Cancellation, and Reinstatement of Modifications]

*Module transcr*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.transcriptional  
(@hand, @status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions  
(@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost,  
@min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source)) )

**@target** points to one or more elements representing the interventions which are to be reverted or undone.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

*Member of* model.pPart.transcriptional

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl pc phr s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element undo
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  attribute target { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  empty
}
```

#### Example

```
<line>This is <del change="#s2" rend="overstrike">
  <seg xml:id="undo-a">just some</seg>
  sample <seg xml:id="undo-b">text</seg>,
  we need</del>
  <add change="#s2">not</add>
a real example.</line>
<undo change="#s3" rend="dotted"
target="#undo-a #undo-b"/>
```

This encoding represents the following sequence of events:

- "This is just some sample text, we need a real example" is written
- At stage s2, "just some sample text, we need" is deleted by overstriking, and "not" is added

- At stage s3, parts of the deletion are cancelled by underdotting, thus reinstating the words "just some" and "text".

**<unicodeName>** (unicode property name) contains the name of a registered Unicode normative or informative property. [5.2.1. Character Properties]

*Module* gaiji

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

**@version** specifies the version number of the Unicode Standard in which this property name is defined.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.version**

*Containing type:* charProp

*May contain* Character data only

*Declaration*

```

element unicodeName
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute version { data.version }?,
  text
}

```

*Example*

```

<unicodeName>character-decomposition-mapping</unicodeName>
<unicodeName>general-category</unicodeName>

```

*Note* A definitive list of current Unicode property names is provided in The Unicode Standard.

**<usg>** (usage) contains usage information in a dictionary entry. [9.3.5.2. Usage Information and Other Labels]

*Module* dictionaries

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

**@type** classifies the usage information using any convenient typology.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Sample values include:* **geo** (geographic) geographic area  
**time** temporal, historical era (archaic, old, etc.)

**dom** (domain) domain or subject matter (e.g. scientific, literary etc.)  
**register**  
**style** style (figurative, literal, etc.)  
**plev** (preference level) preference level (chiefly, usually, etc.)  
**lang** (language) name of a language mentioned in etymological or other linguistic discussion.  
**gram** (grammatical) grammatical usage  
**syn** (synonym) synonym given to show use  
**hyper** (hypernym) hypernym given to show usage  
**colloc** (collocation) typical collocate of the headword.  
**comp** (complement) typical complement  
**obj** (object) typical object  
**subj** (subject) typical subject  
**verb** typical verb  
**hint** unclassifiable piece of information to guide sense choice

*Member of* model.entryPart model.entryPart.top model.gramPart

*Contained by*

*core:* cit

*dictionaries:* dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gramGrp hom re sense xr

*namesdates:* nym

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail



*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element usg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Example*

```
<form>
  <orth>colour</orth>
  <form>
    <usg type="geo">U.S.</usg>
    <orth>color</orth>
  </form>
</form>

```

**<vAlt>** (value alternation) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which contains a set of values, only one of which can be valid. [18.8.1. Alternation]

*Module* iso-fs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.featureVal.single

*Contained by*

*iso-fs:* f fvLib if vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel vMerge vNot vRange

*May contain*

*iso-fs:* binary default fs numeric string symbol vAlt vColl vLabel vMerge vNot

*Declaration*

```
element vAlt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( model.featureVal ), model.featureVal+ )
}

```

*Example*

```
<f name="gender">
  <vAlt>
    <symbol value="masculine"/>
    <symbol value="neuter"/>
    <symbol value="feminine"/>
  </vAlt>
</f>

```

**<vColl>** (collection of values) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which contains multiple values organized as a set, bag, or list. [18.7. Collections as Complex Feature Values]

*Module* iso-fs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))

**@org** (organization) indicates organization of given value or values as set, bag or list.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Legal values are:* **set** indicates that the given values are organized as a set.

**bag** indicates that the given values are organized as a bag (multiset).

**list** indicates that the given values are organized as a list.

*Member of* model.featureVal.complex

*Contained by*

*iso-fs:* f fvLib if vAlt vDefault vLabel vMerge vNot vRange

*May contain*

*iso-fs:* binary default fs numeric string symbol vAlt vLabel

*Declaration*

```
element vColl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute org { "set" | "bag" | "list" }?,
  ( ( fs | model.featureVal.single ) * )
}
```

*Example*

```
<f name="name">
  <vColl>
    <string>Jean</string>
    <string>Luc</string>
    <string>Godard</string>
  </vColl>
</f>
```

*Example*

```
<fs>
  <f name="lex">
    <symbol value="auxquels"/>
  </f>
  <f name="maf">
    <vColl org="list">
      <fs>
        <f name="cat">
          <symbol value="prep"/>
        </f>
      </fs>
    </vColl>
  </f>
  <fs>
    <f name="cat">
```

```

    <symbol value="pronoun"/>
  </f>
  <f name="kind">
    <symbol value="rel"/>
  </f>
  <f name="num">
    <symbol value="pl"/>
  </f>
  <f name="gender">
    <symbol value="masc"/>
  </f>
</fs>
</vColl>
</f>
</fs>

```

**<vDefault>** (value default) declares the default value to be supplied when a feature structure does not contain an instance of <f> for this name; if unconditional, it is specified as one (or, depending on the value of the *org* attribute of the enclosing <fDecl>) more <fs> elements or primitive values; if conditional, it is specified as one or more <if> elements; if no default is specified, or no condition matches, the value none is assumed. [18.11. Feature System Declaration]

*Module* iso-fs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))

*Contained by*

*iso-fs:* fDecl

*May contain*

*iso-fs:* binary default fs if numeric string symbol vAlt vColl vLabel vMerge vNot

*Declaration*

```

element vDefault { att.global.attributes, ( model.featureVal+ | if+ ) }

```

*Example*

```

<fDecl name="INV">
  <fDescr>inverted sentence</fDescr>
  <vRange>
    <vAlt>
      <binary value="true"/>
      <binary value="false"/>
    </vAlt>
  </vRange>
  <vDefault>
    <binary value="false"/>
  </vDefault>
</fDecl>

```

*Note* May contain a legal feature value, or a series of <if> elements.

**<vLabel>** (value label) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which appears at more than one point in a feature structure. [18.6. Re-entrant Feature Structures]

*Module* iso-fs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))

**@name** supplies a name identifying the sharing point.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* data.word

*Member of* model.featureVal.single

*Contained by*

*iso-fs:* f fvLib if vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel vMerge vNot vRange

*May contain*

*iso-fs:* binary default fs numeric string symbol vAlt vColl vLabel vMerge vNot

*Declaration*

```
element vLabel
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute name { data.word },
  model.featureVal?
}
```

*Example*

```
<fs>
  <f name="nominal">
    <fs>
      <f name="nm-num">
        <vLabel name="L1">
          <symbol value="singular"/>
        </vLabel>
      </f>
    </fs>
  <!-- other nominal features -->
</f>
<f name="verbal">
  <fs>
    <f name="vb-num">
      <vLabel name="L1"/>
    </f>
  </fs>
  <!-- other verbal features -->
</f>
</fs>
```

---

**<vMerge>** (merged collection of values) represents a feature value which is the result of merging together the feature values contained by its children, using the organization specified by the *org* attribute. [18.8.3. Collection of Values]

*Module* iso-fs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

**@org** indicates the organization of the resulting merged values as set, bag or list.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Legal values are:* **set** indicates that the resulting values are organized  
 as a set.

**bag** indicates that the resulting values are organized as a bag  
 (multiset).

**list** indicates that the resulting values are organized as a list.

*Member of* model.featureVal.complex

*Contained by*

*iso-fs:* f fvLib if vAlt vDefault vLabel vMerge vNot vRange

*May contain*

*iso-fs:* binary default fs numeric string symbol vAlt vColl vLabel vMerge vNot

*Declaration*

```

element vMerge
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute org { "set" | "bag" | "list" }?,
  model.featureVal+
}

```

*Example*

```

<vMerge org="list">
  <vColl org="set">
    <symbol value="masculine"/>
    <symbol value="neuter"/>
    <symbol value="feminine"/>
  </vColl>
  <symbol value="indeterminate"/>
</vMerge>

```

This example returns a list, concatenating the indeterminate value with the set of values masculine, neuter and feminine.

---

**<vNot>** (value negation) represents a feature value which is the negation of its content.  
 [18.8.2. Negation]

*Module* iso-fs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.featureVal.complex

*Contained by*

*iso-fs:* f fvLib if vAlt vDefault vLabel vMerge vNot vRange

*May contain*

*iso-fs:* binary default fs numeric string symbol vAlt vColl vLabel vMerge vNot

*Declaration*

```
element vNot { att.global.attributes, ( model.featureVal ) }
```

*Example*

```
<vNot>
  <symbol value="masculine"/>
</vNot>
```

*Example*

```
<f name="mode">
  <vNot>
    <vAlt>
      <symbol value="infinitive"/>
      <symbol value="participle"/>
    </vAlt>
  </vNot>
</f>
```

---

**<vRange>** (value range) defines the range of allowed values for a feature, in the form of an <fs>, <vAlt>, or primitive value; for the value of an <f> to be valid, it must be subsumed by the specified range; if the <f> contains multiple values (as sanctioned by the *org* attribute), then each value must be subsumed by the <vRange>. [18.11. Feature System Declaration]

*Module* iso-fs

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))

*Contained by*

*iso-fs:* fDecl

*May contain*

*iso-fs:* binary default fs numeric string symbol vAlt vColl vLabel vMerge vNot

*Declaration*

```
element vRange { att.global.attributes, model.featureVal }
```

*Example*

```
<fDecl name="INV">
  <fDescr>inverted sentence</fDescr>
  <vRange>
    <vAlt>
      <binary value="true"/>
      <binary value="false"/>
    </vAlt>
  </vRange>
  <vDefault>
    <binary value="false"/>
  </vDefault>
</fDecl>
```

*Note* May contain any legal feature-value specification.

**<val>** (value) contains a single attribute value. [22. Documentation Elements 22.4.5. Attribute List Specification]

*Module tagdocs*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.phrase.xml

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor  
 email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure  
 meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs  
 said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
 preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder  
 geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage  
 typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
 settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain* Character data only

*Declaration*

<code>element val { att.global.attributes, text }</code>
--

*Example*

```
<val>unknown</val>
```

---

**<valDesc>** (value description) specifies any semantic or syntactic constraint on the value that an attribute may take, additional to the information carried by the `<datatype>` element. [22.4.5. Attribute List Specification]

*Module tagdocs*

*Attributes* `Attributes` `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.rendition` (`@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`)) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`)) (`att.global.responsibility` (`@cert`, `@resp`)) `att.translatable` (`@versionDate`) `att.combinable` (`@mode`) (`att.deprecated` (`@validUntil`))

*Contained by*

*tagdocs:* `attDef`

*May contain*

*analysis:* `interp` `interpGrp` `span` `spanGrp`

*certainty:* `certainty` `precision` `respons`

*core:* `abbr` `address` `cb` `choice` `date` `distinct` `email` `emph` `expan` `foreign` `gap` `gb` `gloss` `hi` `index` `lb` `measure` `measureGrp` `mentioned` `milestone` `name` `note` `num` `pb` `ptr` `ref` `rs` `soCalled` `term` `time` `title`

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* `correspDesc` `listener` `reader` `readingExpRef`

*dictionaries:* `lang`

*figures:* `figure` `notatedMusic`

*header:* `idno`

*iso-fs:* `fLib` `fs` `fvLib`

*linking:* `alt` `altGrp` `anchor` `join` `joinGrp` `link` `linkGrp` `timeline`

*msdescription:* `catchwords` `depth` `dim` `dimensions` `height` `heraldry` `locus` `locusGrp` `material` `objectType` `origDate` `origPlace` `secFol` `signatures` `stamp` `watermark` `width`

*namesdates:* `addName` `affiliation` `bloc` `climate` `country` `district` `forename` `genName` `geo` `geogFeat` `geogName` `location` `nameLink` `offset` `orgName` `persName` `placeName` `population` `region` `roleName` `settlement` `state` `surname` `terrain` `trait`

*spoken:* `incident` `kinesic` `pause` `shift` `vocal` `writing`

*tagdocs:* `att` `code` `gi` `ident` `tag` `val`

*textcrit:* `witDetail`

*transcr:* `addSpan` `am` `damageSpan` `delSpan` `ex` `fw` `listTranspose` `metamark` `space` `subst` `substJoin`

*Declaration*

```
element valDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.translatable.attributes,
  att.combinable.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

*Example*

```
<valDesc>must point to another <gi>align</gi>
element logically preceding this one.</valDesc>
```



**<valItem>** documents a single value in a predefined list of values. [22.4.5. Attribute List Specification]

*Module tagdocs*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) att.combinable ( @mode) (att.deprecated  
 ( @validUntil))

**@ident** specifies the value concerned.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* data.text

*Contained by docs:* valList

*May contain*

*core:* desc gloss

*tagdocs:* altIdent equiv

*Declaration*

```
element valItem
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.combinable.attributes,
  attribute ident { data.text },
  ( model.descLike | model.glossLike ) *
}
```

*Example*

```
<valItem ident="dub">
  <altIdent xml:lang="fr">dou</altIdent>
  <equiv name="unknown"/>
  <gloss>dubious</gloss>
  <desc>used when the application of this element is doubtful or uncertain</desc>
</valItem>
```

**<valList>** (value list) contains one or more <valItem> elements defining possible values. [22.4.5. Attribute List Specification]

*Module tagdocs*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
 (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) att.combinable ( @mode) (att.deprecated  
 ( @validUntil))

**@type** specifies the extensibility of the list of values specified.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Legal values are:* **closed** only the values specified are permitted.

**semi** (semi-open) all the values specified should be supported, but other values are legal and software should have appropriate fallback processing for them.

**open** the values specified are sample values only.[Default]

*Contained by:* attDef content elementSpec macroSpec

*May contain*

*tagdocs:* valItem

*Declaration*

```
element valList
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.combinable.attributes,
  attribute type { "closed" | "semi" | "open" }?,
  valItem*
}
```

*Example*

```
<valList type="closed">
  <valItem ident="req">
    <gloss>required</gloss>
  </valItem>
  <valItem ident="rec">
    <gloss>recommended</gloss>
  </valItem>
  <valItem ident="opt">
    <gloss>optional</gloss>
  </valItem>
</valList>
```

---

**<value>** contains a single value for some property, attribute, or other analysis. [5.2.1. Character Properties]

*Module* gaiji

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Contained by*

*gaiji:* charProp

*May contain*

*gaiji:* g

*Declaration*

```
element value { att.global.attributes, macro.xtext }
```

*Example*

```
<value>unknown</value>
```

---

<variantEncoding/> declares the method used to encode text-critical variants.

[12.1.1. The Apparatus Entry]

*Module* textcrit

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

**@method** indicates which method is used to encode the apparatus of variants.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Legal values are:* **location-referenced** apparatus uses line numbers or other canonical reference scheme referenced in a base text.

**double-end-point** apparatus indicates the precise locations of the beginning and ending of each lemma relative to a base text.

**parallel-segmentation** alternate readings of a passage are given in parallel in the text; no notion of a base text is necessary.

*Note* The value 'parallel-segmentation' requires in-line encoding of the apparatus.

**@location** indicates whether the apparatus appears within the running text or external to it.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Schematron* <sch:rule context="tei:variantEncoding">  
  <sch:assert test="(@location != 'external') or (@method !=  
  'parallel-segmentation')"> The @location value "external" is  
  inconsistent with the parallel-segmentation method of apparatus  
  markup.</sch:assert></sch:rule>

*Legal values are:* **internal** apparatus appears within the running text.

**external** apparatus appears outside the base text.

*Note* The value 'external' is inconsistent with the parallel-segmentation method of apparatus markup.

*Member of* model.encodingDescPart

*Contained by*

*header:* encodingDesc

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element variantEncoding
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute method
  {
    "location-referenced" | "double-end-point" | "parallel-segmentation"
  },
  attribute location { "internal" | "external" }
}>>
tei:constraintSpec
[
  ident = "variantEncodingLocation"
  scheme = "isoschematron"
```

```

        " "
        "" The @location value "external" is inconsistent with the parallel-segmentation m
    ],
    empty
}

```

*Example*

```

<variantEncoding location="external"
  method="location-referenced"/>

```

---

**<view>** describes the visual context of some part of a screen play in terms of what the spectator sees, generally independent of any dialogue. [7.3.1. Technical Information 7.3. Other Types of Performance Text]

*Module* drama

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.stageLike*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l lg meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

*spoken:* writing

*textcrit:* lem rdg witness

*textstructure:* argument body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*drama:* camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* biblFull idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait  
*nets:* eTree forest graph listForest tree  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift u vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure:* floatingText  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```
element view { att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara }
```

### Example

```

<view>
  <name>Max</name> joins his daughter
  at the window. <hi>Rain</hi> sprays his
  face--
</view>
<view>
  <camera>Max's POV</camera> He sees occasional
  windows open, and just across from his apartment
  house, a <hi>man</hi> opens the front door of
  a brownstone--
</view>

```

### Example

```

<div type="shot">
  <view>BBC World symbol</view>
  <sp>
    <speaker>Voice Over</speaker>
    <p>Monty Python's Flying Circus tonight comes to you live
      from the Grillomat Snack Bar, Paignton.</p>
  </sp>
</div>
<div type="shot">
  <view>Interior of a nasty snack bar. Customers around, preferably
    real people. Linkman sitting at one of the plastic tables.</view>
  <sp>
    <speaker>Linkman</speaker>
  </sp>
</div>

```

```
<p>Hello to you live from the Grillomat Snack Bar.
</p>
</sp>
</div>
```

*Note* A view is a particular form of stage direction.

---

**<vocal>** marks any vocalized but not necessarily lexical phenomenon, for example voiced pauses, non-lexical backchannels, etc. [8.3.3. Vocal, Kinesic, Incident]

*Module* spoken

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.timed (@start, @end) (att.duration (att.duration.w3c (@dur)) (att.duration.iso (@dur-iso)) ) att.ascribed (@who) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

**@iterated** indicates whether or not the phenomenon is repeated.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.xTruthValue

*Default* false

*Note* The value true indicates that the vocal effect is repeated several times rather than just occurring once.

*Member of* model.global.spoken

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith

floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence  
 roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
 front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
 surfaceGrp surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*core:* desc

*Declaration*

```

element vocal
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.timed.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute iterated { data.xTruthValue }?,
  model.descLike*
}

```

*Example*

```

<vocal dur="PT12S">
  <desc>whistles</desc>
</vocal>
<vocal iterated="true">
  <desc>whistles intermittently</desc>
</vocal>

```

<w> (word) represents a grammatical (not necessarily orthographic) word. [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]

*Module analysis*

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
 (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
 @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
 (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.segLike (@function) (att.metrical  
 (@met, @real, @rhyme)) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable  
 (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@lemma provides a lemma for the word, such as an uninflected dictionary entry form.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.text

@lemmaRef provides a pointer to a definition of the lemma for the word, for example in an online lexicon.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

*Member of* model.segLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor  
email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure  
mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic  
soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit  
forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality occupation offset  
orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex  
socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

*verse:* rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c interp interpGrp m pc span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add cb choice corr del expan gap gb hi index lb milestone note orig pb reg sic  
unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc

*figures:* figure notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme



*Declaration*

```

element w
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute lemma { data.text }?,
  attribute lemmaRef { data.pointer }?,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | seg      | w      | m      | c      | pc      | model.global      | model.lPar
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<w lemma="hit"
  lemmaRef="http://www.example.com/lexicon/
hitvb.xml" type="verb">hitt<m type="suffix">ing</m>
</w>

```

**<watermark>** contains a word or phrase describing a watermark or similar device.  
[10.3.3. Watermarks and Stamps]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.pPart.msdesc*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor  
email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure  
meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs  
said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph  
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder  
geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage  
typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition  
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout  
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric  
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith  
 floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality  
 occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName  
 settlement sex socecStatus surname  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness  
*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus  
*verse:* metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val  
*textcrit:* app witDetail  
*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse:* caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

element watermark { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }

## Example

```

<support>
  <p>
    <material>Rag paper</material> with <watermark>anchor</watermark> watermark</p>
  </support>

```

---

**<when/>** indicates a point in time either relative to other elements in the same timeline tag, or absolutely. [16.5.2. Placing Synchronous Events in Time]

*Module linking*

*Attributes* *Attributes* att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*)  
 (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic  
 (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))  
 (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

*@absolute* supplies an absolute value for the time.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.temporal.w3c`

*Note* This attribute should always be specified on a <when/> element which serves as the target for the *origin* attribute of a <timeLine>.

*@unit* specifies the unit of time in which the *interval* value is expressed, if this is not inherited from the parent <timeline>.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.enumerated`

*Suggested values include:* **d** (days)

**h** (hours)

**min** (minutes)

**s** (seconds)

**ms** (milliseconds)

*@interval* specifies a time interval either as a number or as one of the keywords defined by the datatype data.interval

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.interval`

*@since* identifies the reference point for determining the time of the current <when/> element, which is obtained by adding the interval to the time of the reference point.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.pointer`

*Note* This attribute should point to another <when/> element in the same <timeline>. If no value is supplied, and the *absolute* attribute is also unspecified, then the reference point is understood to be the origin of the enclosing <timeline> tag.

*Contained linking:* timeline

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element when
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute absolute { data.temporal.w3c }?,
  attribute unit { "d" | "h" | "min" | "s" | "ms" | xsd:Name }?,
  attribute interval { data.interval }?,
  attribute since { data.pointer }?,
  empty
}
```

*Example*

```
<when interval="20" since="#w2" xml:id="TW3"/>
```

*Note* On this element, the global *xml:id* attribute must be supplied to specify an identifier for this point in time. The value used may be chosen freely provided that it is unique within the document and is a syntactically valid name. There is no requirement for values containing numbers to be in sequence.

---

**<width>** contains a measurement measured along the axis parallel to the bottom of the written surface, i.e. perpendicular to the spine of a book or codex. [10.3.4. Dimensions]

*Module* msdescription

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))

*Member of* model.dimLike model.measureLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl phr s span

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure measureGrp meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

*iso-fs:* fDescr fsDescr

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote dimensions explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* lem rdg wit witDetail witness

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*gaiji:* g

*Declaration*

```
element width { att.global.attributes, att.dimensions.attributes, macro.xtext }
```

*Example*

```
<width unit="in">4</width>
```

*Note* If used to specify the depth of a non text-bearing portion of some object, for example a monument, this element conventionally refers to the axis facing the observer, and perpendicular to that indicated by the ‘depth’ axis.

---

**<wit>** contains a list of one or more sigla of witnesses attesting a given reading, in a textual variation. [12.1.4. Witness Information]

*Module* textcrit

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition )) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select )) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.change ( @change ))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) att.rdgPart ( @wit )

*Member of* model.rdgPart

*Contained by*

*textcrit:* app lem rdg rdgGrp

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*gaiji:* g

*header:* idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element wit { att.global.attributes, att.rdgPart.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

*Example*

```
<rdg wit="#El #Hg">Experience</rdg>
<wit>Ellesmere, Hengwryt</wit>
```

*Note* This element represents the same information as that provided by the *wit* attribute of the reading; it may be used to record the exact form of the sigla given in the source edition, when that is of interest.

---

**<witDetail>** (witness detail) gives further information about a particular witness, or witnesses, to a particular reading. [12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses]

*Module* textcrit

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*)  
(att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic  
(*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))  
(att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.placement (*@place*) att.source (*@source*)  
att.pointing (*@targetLang*, *@target*, *@evaluate*)

**@wit** (witnesses) indicates the sigil or sigla identifying the witness or witnesses to which the detail refers.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of **data.pointer** separated by whitespace

**@type** describes the type of information given about the witness.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Member of* model.noteLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope biblStruct cit citedRange corr  
date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi  
imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned monogr name note num orig p  
pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage  
street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale  
preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom  
hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg  
xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue  
 role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view  
*figures:* cell figure table  
*gaiji:* char glyph  
*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote  
 language licence notesStmnt principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote  
*linking:* ab seg  
*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions adminInfo catchwords collation colophon  
 condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit  
 layout material msItem msItemStruct musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace  
 origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates  
 watermark  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc climate country death district education  
 event faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location  
 nameLink nationality occupation offset org orgName persName person personGrp  
 place placeName population region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus  
 state surname terrain trait  
*nets:* graph  
*spoken:* u writing  
*tagdocs:* eg valDesc  
*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail  
*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText  
 front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer  
*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface  
 surfaceGrp surplus zone  
*verse:* metDecl metSym rhyme  
*May contain*  
*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w  
*certainty:* certainty precision respons  
*core:* abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan  
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned  
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  
*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef  
*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar  
*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic  
*gaiji:* g  
*header:* idno  
*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib  
*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName location nameLink offset orgName persName placeName  
 population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  
*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs:* att code gi ident specDesc specList tag val

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

*verse:* caesura rhyme

*Declaration*

```
element witDetail
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.source.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  attribute wit { list { data.pointer+ } },
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example*

```
<app type="substantive">
  <rdgGrp type="subvariants">
    <lem wit="#El #HG" xml:id="W026x">Experience</lem>
    <rdg wit="#Ha4">Experiens</rdg>
  </rdgGrp>
</app>
<witDetail resp="#PR" target="#W026x"
  type="presentation" wit="#El">Ornamental capital.</witDetail>
```

*Note* The <witDetail> element should be regarded as a specialized type of <note> element; it is synonymous with <note type='witnessDetail'>, but differs in the omission of some attributes seldom applicable to notes within critical apparatus, and in the provision of the *wit* attribute, which permits an application to extract all annotation concerning a particular witness or witnesses from the apparatus. It also differs in that the location of a <witDetail> element is not significant and may not be used to imply the point of attachment for the annotation; this must be explicitly given by means of the *target* attribute.

---

**<witEnd/>** (fragmented witness end) indicates the end, or suspension, of the text of a fragmentary witness. [12.1.5. Fragmentary Witnesses]

*Module* textcrit

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
(@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.rdgPart (@wit)

*Member of* model.rdgPart

*Contained by*

*textcrit:* lem rdg

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element witEnd { att.global.attributes, att.rdgPart.attributes, empty }
```

*Example*



```
<app>
  <lem wit="#El #Hg">Experience</lem>
  <rdg wit="#Ha4">Ex<g ref="#per"/>
    <witEnd/>
  </rdg>
</app>
```

**<witStart/>** (fragmented witness start) indicates the beginning, or resumption, of the text of a fragmentary witness. [12.1.5. Fragmentary Witnesses]

*Module* textcrit

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.rdgPart (@wit)

*Member of* model.rdgPart

*Contained by*

*textcrit:* lem rdg

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element witStart { att.global.attributes, att.rdgPart.attributes, empty }
```

*Example*

```
<app>
  <lem wit="#El #Hg">Auctoritee</lem>
  <rdg wit="#La #Ra2">auctorite</rdg>
  <rdg wit="#X">
    <witStart/>auctorite</rdg>
</app>
```

**<witness>** contains either a description of a single witness referred to within the critical apparatus, or a list of witnesses which is to be referred to by a single sigil. [12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses]

*Module* textcrit

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.sortable (@sortKey)

*Contained by*

*textcrit:* listWit

*May contain*

*core:* abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref rs said soCalled stage term time title

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* table

*header:* biblFull idno

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specGrp specGrpRef tag val

*textcrit:* listApp listWit

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* am ex subst

*Declaration*

```

element witness
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  macro.limitedContent}

```

*Example*

```

<listWit>
  <witness xml:id="EL">Ellesmere, Huntingdon Library 26.C.9</witness>
  <witness xml:id="HG">Hengwrt, National Library of Wales,
    Aberystwyth, Peniarth 392D</witness>
  <witness xml:id="RA2">Bodleian Library Rawlinson Poetic 149
    (see further <ptr target="http://www.examples.com/MSdescs#MSRP149"/></witness>
</listWit>

```

*Note* The content of the <witness> element may give bibliographic information about the witness or witness group, or it may be empty.

---

**<writing>** contains a passage of written text revealed to participants in the course of a spoken text. [8.3.4. Writing]

*Module* spoken

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition ( @rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp,  
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic  
( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.change ( @change))  
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) att.ascribed ( @who) att.typed ( @type,  
@subtype) att.timed ( @start, @end) (att.duration (att.duration.w3c ( @dur))  
(att.duration.iso ( @dur-iso)) ) att.source ( @source)

@gradual indicates whether the writing is revealed all at once or gradually.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.xTruthValue

*Note* The value true indicates the writing is revealed gradually; the value false that the writing is revealed all at once.

*Member of* model.global.spoken

*Contained by*

*analysis:* cl m phr s span w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

*corpus:* activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* readingExpRef

*dictionaries:* case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

*drama:* actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

*linking:* ab seg

*msdescription:* accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

*namesdates:* addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname

*nets:* graph

*spoken:* u writing

*tagdocs:* eg valDesc

*textcrit:* app lem rdg wit witDetail

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*transcr:* damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

*verse:* metSym rhyme

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji*: g  
*header*: biblFull idno  
*iso-fs*: fLib fs fvLib  
*linking*: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  
*msdescription*: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width  
*namesdates*: addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
surname terrain trait  
*spoken*: incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing  
*tagdocs*: att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val  
*textcrit*: app listApp listWit witDetail  
*textstructure*: floatingText  
*transcr*: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo  
*verse*: caesura rhyme  
*Declaration*

```

element writing
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.timed.attributes,
  att.source.attributes,
  attribute gradual { data.xTruthValue }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

## Example

```

<!-- ... --><l>man in a coonskin cap</l>
<writing>coonskin</writing>
<l>in a pig pen</l>
<writing>pig pen</writing>
<l>wants eleven dollar bills</l>
<writing>20 dollar bills</writing>
<l>you only got ten</l>
<writing>10</writing>
<!-- ... -->

```

*Note* The <writing> element will usually be short and most simply transcribed as a character string; the content model also allows a sequence of paragraphs and paragraph-level elements, in case the writing has enough internal structure to warrant such markup. In either case the usual phrase-level tags for written text are available.

---

<xr> (cross-reference phrase) contains a phrase, sentence, or icon referring the reader to some other location in this or another text. [9.3.5.3. Cross-References to Other Entries]

*Module* dictionaries

*Attributes* *Attributes* att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*)  
 (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*,  
*@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic  
 (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))  
 (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.lexicographic (*@expand*, *@norm*, *@split*,  
*@value*, *@orig*, *@location*, *@mergedIn*, *@opt*) (att.datcat (*@datcat*, *@valueDatcat*))

**@type** indicates the type of cross reference, using any convenient typology.

*Status* Recommended

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Sample values include:* **syn** (synonym) cross reference for synonym  
 information

**etym** (etymological) etymological information

**cf** (compare or consult) related or similar term

**illus** (illustration) illustration of an object

*Member of* model.entryPart model.entryPart.top

*Contained by*

*core:* cit

*dictionaries:* dictScrap entry entryFree etym hom re sense

*namesdates:* nym

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc  
 distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl  
 measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote  
 ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc listener reader readingExpRef textread

*dictionaries:* lang lbl oRef oVar pRef pVar usg

*drama:* camera caption castList move sound tech view

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic table

*gaiji:* g

*header:* biblFull idno

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*msdescription:* catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material  
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

*namesdates:* addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo  
 geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink  
 offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state  
 surname terrain trait

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*tagdocs:* att classSpec code constraintSpec eg egXML elementSpec gi ident listRef  
 macroSpec moduleSpec specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList tag val

*textcrit:* app listApp listWit witDetail

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose  
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element xr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter      | usg      | lbl      | model.global
  )
}
```

Example

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>lavage</orth>
  </form>
  <etym>[Fr. <mentioned>laver</mentioned>; L. <mentioned>lavare</mentioned>, to
wash;
  <xr>see <ref>lather</ref>
  </xr>]. </etym>
</entry>
```

Example

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>lawful</orth>
  </form>
  <xr type="syn">SYN. see <ref>legal</ref>
  </xr>
</entry>
```

*Note* May contain character data and phrase-level elements; usually contains a <ref> or a <ptr/> element. This element encloses both the actual indication of the location referred to, which may be tagged using the <ref> or <ptr/> elements, and any accompanying material which gives more information about why the reader is being referred there.

**<zone>** defines any two-dimensional area within a <surface> element. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles 11.2.2. Embedded Transcription]

Module transcr

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.coordinated (@start, @ulx, @uly, @lrx, @lry, @points) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

**@rotate** indicates the amount by which this zone has been rotated clockwise, with respect to the normal orientation of the parent <surface> element as implied by the dimensions given in the <msDesc> element or by the coordinates of the <surface> itself. The orientation is expressed in arc degrees.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.count

*Default* 0

*Member of* model.linePart

*Contained by*

*transcr:* line surface zone

*May contain*

*analysis:* c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

*certainty:* certainty precision respons

*core:* add binaryObject cb choice corr del gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone  
note orig pb reg sic unclear

*derived-module-tei\_readingExp:* correspDesc

*figures:* figure formula notatedMusic

*iso-fs:* fLib fs fvLib

*linking:* alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

*spoken:* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*textcrit:* app witDetail

*transcr:* addSpan damage damageSpan delSpan fw handShift line listTranspose  
metamark mod redo restore retrace space substJoin supplied surface surplus undo  
zone

*Declaration*

```

element zone
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.coordinated.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute rotate { data.count }?,
  ( text | model.graphicLike | model.global | surface | model.linePart ) *
}

```

*Example*

```

<surface lrx="0" lry="0" ulx="14.54"
  uly="16.14">
  <graphic url="stone.jpg"/>
  <zone points="4.6,6.3 5.25,5.85 6.2,6.6 8.19222,7.4125 9.89222,6.5875
10.9422,6.1375 11.4422,6.7125 8.21722,8.3125 6.2,7.65"/>
</surface>

```

This example defines a non-rectangular zone: see the illustration in section PH-surfzone.

*Example*

```

<facsimile>
  <surface lrx="400" lry="280" ulx="50"
    uly="20">
    <zone lrx="500" lry="321" ulx="0" uly="0">
      <graphic url="graphic.png "/>
    </zone>
  </surface>
</facsimile>

```

This example defines a zone which has been defined as larger than its parent surface in order to match the dimensions of the graphic it contains.

*Note* The position of every zone for a given surface is always defined by reference to the coordinate system defined for that surface. A graphic element contained by a zone represents the whole of the zone.

A zone may be of any shape. The attribute *points* may be used to define a polygonal zone, using the coordinate system defined by its parent surface.

## 2 Model classes

---

**model.addrPart** groups elements such as names or postal codes which may appear as part of a postal address. [3.5.2. Addresses]

*Module* tei

*Used by* address

*Members* model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName]  
model.offsetLike[geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart[addName forename genName  
nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[bloc  
country district geogName placeName region settlement] climate location population  
state terrain trait] idno lang listener reader rs] addrLine postBox postCode street

---

**model.addressLike** groups elements used to represent a postal or email address. [1. The TEI Infrastructure]

*Module* tei

*Used by* location model.correspActionPart model.pPart.data

*Members* address affiliation email

---

**model.applicationLike** groups elements used to record application-specific information about a document in its header.

*Module* tei

*Used by* appInfo

*Members* application

---

**model.availabilityPart** groups elements such as licences and paragraphs of text which may appear as part of an availability statement [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

*Module* tei

*Used by* availability

*Members* licence

---

**model.biblLike** groups elements containing a bibliographic description. [3.11. Bibliographic Citations and References]

*Module* tei

*Used by* broadcast cit climate event listBibl location model.inter model.msItemPart  
model.personPart org place population relatedItem scriptStmt sourceDesc state  
taxonomy terrain trait

*Members* bibl biblFull biblStruct listBibl msDesc textread

---



**model.biblPart** groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description. [3.11. Bibliographic Citations and References]

*Module* tei

*Used by* bibl

*Members* model.imprintPart[biblScope distributor pubPlace publisher] model.respLike [author editor funder meeting principal respStmt sponsor] availability bibl citedRange edition extent listRelation msIdentifier relatedItem series textLang

---

**model.castItemPart** groups component elements of an entry in a cast list, such as dramatic role or actor's name.

*Module* tei

*Used by* castItem

*Members* actor role roleDesc

---

**model.catDescPart** groups component elements of the TEI header Category Description.

*Module* tei

*Used by* catDesc

*Members* textDesc

---

**model.certLike** groups elements which are used to indicate uncertainty or precision of other elements.

*Module* tei

*Used by* certainty gap interp join precision respons space substJoin

*Members* certainty precision respons

---

**model.choicePart** groups elements (other than <choice> itself) which can be used within a <choice> alternation. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes]

*Module* tei

*Used by* choice

*Members* abbr am corr ex expan orig reg seg sic unclear

---

**model.common** groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* tei

*Used by* argument body castList div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph epilogue figure performance postscript prologue set

*Members* model.divPart[model.divPart.spoken[u] model.lLike[l] model.pLike[ab p] eTree forest graph lg listForest schemaSpec sp spGrp tree] model.entryLike[entry entryFree superEntry] model.inter[model.biblLike[bibl biblFull biblStruct listBibl msDesc textread] model.egLike[eg egXML] model.labelLike[desc label] model.listLike[list listApp listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listWit table] model.oddDecl

[classSpec constraintSpec elementSpec listRef macroSpec moduleSpec specGrp specGrpRef] model.qLike[model.quoteLike[cit quote] floatingText q said] model.stageLike[camera caption move sound stage tech view] castList]

*Note* This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions.

---

**model.contentPart** groups elements which may appear as part of the content element. [22.4.4.1. Defining Content Models]

*Module* tagdocs

*Used by* alternate content sequence

*Members* alternate classRef elementRef macroRef sequence textNode

---

**model.correspActionPart** groups elements which define the parts (usually names, dates and places) of one action related to the correspondence.

*Module* tei

*Used by* correspAction

*Members* model.addressLike[address affiliation email] model.dateLike[date time] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName] model.offsetLike[geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart[addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[bloc country district geogName placeName region settlement] climate location population state terrain trait] idno lang listener reader rs] note

---

**model.correspContextPart** groups elements which may appear as part of the correspContext element

*Module* tei

*Used by* correspContext

*Members* model.pLike[ab p] model.ptrLike[ptr ref] note

---

**model.correspDescPart** groups together metadata elements for describing correspondence

*Module* tei

*Used by* correspDesc

*Members* correspAction correspContext note

---

**model.dateLike** groups elements containing temporal expressions. [3.5.4. Dates and Times 13.3.6. Dates and Times]

*Module* tei

*Used by* imprint model.correspActionPart model.pPart.data model.recordingPart setting

*Members* date time

---

**model.descLike** groups elements which contain a description of their function.

*Module* tei

*Used by* attDef category certainty char classSpec constraintSpec elementSpec gap glyph  
graphic incident interp interpGrp join kinesic macroSpec media moduleSpec  
precision respons schemaSpec space substJoin taxonomy valItem vocal

*Members* desc

---

**model.dimLike** groups elements which describe a measurement forming part of the  
physical dimensions of some object.

*Module* tei

*Used by* dimensions

*Members* depth height width

---

**model.div1Like** groups top-level structural divisions.

*Module* tei

*Used by* back body front

*Members* div1

---

**model.div2Like** groups second-level structural divisions.

*Module* tei

*Used by* div1

*Members* div2

---

**model.div3Like** groups third-level structural divisions.

*Module* tei

*Used by* div2

*Members* div3

---

**model.div4Like** groups fourth-level structural divisions.

*Module* tei

*Used by* div3

*Members* div4

---

**model.div5Like** groups fifth-level structural divisions.

*Module* tei

*Used by* div4

*Members* div5

---

**model.div6Like** groups sixth-level structural divisions.

*Module* tei  
*Used by* div5  
*Members* div6

---

**model.div7Like** groups seventh-level structural divisions.

*Module* tei  
*Used by* div6  
*Members* div7

---

**model.divBottom** groups elements appearing at the end of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

*Module* tei  
*Used by* body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epilogue figure front group lg list performance prologue table  
*Members* model.divBottomPart[closer postscript signed trailer] model.divWrapper [argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph meeting salute]

---

**model.divBottomPart** groups elements which can occur only at the end of a text division. [4.6. Title Pages]

*Module* tei  
*Used by* back model.divBottom postscript  
*Members* closer postscript signed trailer

---

**model.divGenLike** groups elements used to represent a structural division which is generated rather than explicitly present in the source.

*Module* tei  
*Used by* body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6  
*Members* divGen

---

**model.divLike** groups elements used to represent un-numbered generic structural divisions.

*Module* tei  
*Used by* back body div front  
*Members* div

---

**model.divPart** groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* tei  
*Used by* macro.specialPara model.common specGrp  
*Members* model.divPart.spoken[u] model.lLike[l] model.pLike[ab p] eTree forest graph lg listForest schemaSpec sp spGrp tree

*Note* Note that this element class does not include members of the **model.inter** class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items.

---

**model.divPart.spoken** groups elements structurally analogous to paragraphs within spoken texts. [8.1. General Considerations and Overview]

*Module* spoken

*Used by* model.divPart

*Members* u

*Note* Spoken texts may be structured in many ways; elements in this class are typically larger units such as turns or utterances.

---

**model.divTop** groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

*Module* tei

*Used by* body castList div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epilogue group lg list performance prologue

*Members* model.divTopPart[model.headLike[head] opener signed] model.divWrapper [argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph meeting salute]

---

**model.divTopPart** groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division. [4.6. Title Pages]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.divTop postscript

*Members* model.headLike[head] opener signed

---

**model.divWrapper** groups elements which can appear at either top or bottom of a textual division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.divBottom model.divTop

*Members* argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph meeting salute

---

**model.editorialDeclPart** groups elements which may be used inside <editorialDecl> and appear multiple times.

*Module* tei

*Used by* editorialDecl

*Members* correction hyphenation interpretation normalization punctuation quotation segmentation stdVals

---

**model.egLike** groups elements containing examples or illustrations. [22.1.1. Phrase Level Terms]

*Module* tei

*Used by* cit model.inter

*Members* eg egXML

---

**model.emphLike** groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase

*Members* code distinct emph foreign gloss ident mentioned soCalled term title

---

**model.encodingDescPart** groups elements which may be used inside <encodingDesc> and appear multiple times.

*Module* tei

*Used by* encodingDesc

*Members* appInfo charDecl classDecl editorialDecl fsdDecl geoDecl listPrefixDef metDecl projectDesc refsDecl samplingDecl schemaSpec styleDefDecl tagsDecl variantEncoding

---

**model.entryLike** groups elements structurally analogous to paragraphs within dictionaries. [9.1. Dictionary Body and Overall Structure 1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* dictionaries

*Used by* model.common

*Members* entry entryFree superEntry

---

**model.entryPart** groups non-morphological elements appearing within a dictionary entry. [9.1. Dictionary Body and Overall Structure]

*Module* tei

*Used by* cit dictScrap entryFree nym

*Members* colloc def etym form gramGrp hom hyph lbl orth pos pron re sense subc superEntry syll usg xr

---

**model.entryPart.top** groups high level elements within a structured dictionary entry [9.2. The Structure of Dictionary Entries]

*Module* tei

*Used by* entry hom re sense

*Members* cit def dictScrap etym form gramGrp re usg xr

*Note* Members of this class typically contain related parts of a dictionary entry which form a coherent subdivision, for example a particular sense, homonym, etc.

---

**model.featureVal** groups elements which represent feature values in feature structures.

*Module* tei

*Used by* f fvLib if vAlt vDefault vLabel vMerge vNot vRange

*Members* model.featureVal.complex[fs vColl vMerge vNot] model.featureVal.single[binary default numeric string symbol vAlt vLabel]

---

**model.featureVal.complex** groups elements which express complex feature values in feature structures.

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.featureVal

*Members* fs vColl vMerge vNot

---

**model.featureVal.single** group elements used to represent atomic feature values in feature structures.

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.featureVal vColl

*Members* binary default numeric string symbol vAlt vLabel

---

**model.formPart** groups elements allowed within a <form> element in a dictionary. [9.3.1. Information on Written and Spoken Forms]

*Module* dictionaries

*Used by* form

*Members* model.gramPart[model.morphLike[case gen gram iType mood number per tns] colloc gramGrp lbl pos subc usg] form hyph orth pron stress syll

---

**model.frontPart** groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front or back matter. [7.1. Front and Back Matter ]

*Module* tei

*Used by* back front

*Members* model.frontPart.drama[castList epilogue performance prologue set] divGen titlePage

---

**model.frontPart.drama** groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front or back matter of performance texts only. [7.1. Front and Back Matter ]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.frontPart

*Members* castList epilogue performance prologue set

---

**model.gLike** groups elements used to represent individual non-Unicode characters or glyphs.

*Module* tei

*Used by* am bibl byline castItem closer date dateline dictScrap docImprint entryFree etym f form gramGrp head idno interp lem line m macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara macro.xtext measureGrp oVar opener origDate pVar pc rdg re s sense series time trailer u w xr

*Members* g

---

**model.global** groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* tei

*Used by* address app argument back bibl body byline castGroup castItem castList cit closer date dateline dictScrap div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docImprint docTitle entry entryFree epigraph epilogue etym figure floatingText form front gramGrp graph group head hom imprint lem lg line list m macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.phraseSeq.limited macro.specialPara msItem opener origDate performance person personGrp postscript prologue rdg re s sense series set sourceDoc sp spGrp surface surfaceGrp table text time titlePage trailer u w xr zone

*Members* model.global.edit[addSpan damageSpan delSpan gap space] model.global.meta[alt altGrp certainty fLib fs fvLib index interp interpGrp join joinGrp link linkGrp listTranspose precision respons span spanGrp substJoin timeline] model.global.spoken[incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing] model.milestoneLike[anchor cb fw gb lb milestone pb] model.noteLike[note witDetail] correspDesc figure metamark notatedMusic

---

**model.global.edit** groups globally available elements which perform a specifically editorial function. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.global

*Members* addSpan damageSpan delSpan gap space

---

**model.global.meta** groups globally available elements which describe the status of other elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.global

*Members* alt altGrp certainty fLib fs fvLib index interp interpGrp join joinGrp link linkGrp listTranspose precision respons span spanGrp substJoin timeline

*Note* Elements in this class are typically used to hold groups of links or of abstract interpretations, or by provide indications of certainty etc. It may find be convenient to localize all metadata elements, for example to contain them within the same divison as the elements that they relate to; or to locate them all to a division of their own. They may however appear at any point in a TEI text.

---



**model.global.spoken** groups elements which may appear globally within spoken texts. [8.1. General Considerations and Overview]

*Module* spoken

*Used by* model.global

*Members* incident kinesic pause shift vocal writing

*Note* This class groups elements which can appear anywhere within transcribed speech.

---

**model.glossLike** groups elements which provide an alternative name, explanation, or description for any markup construct.

*Module* tei

*Used by* attDef category classSpec constraintSpec elementSpec joinGrp macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec taxonomy vallItem

*Members* altIdent equiv gloss

---

**model.gramPart** groups elements allowed within a <gramGrp> element in a dictionary. [9.3.2. Grammatical Information]

*Module* dictionaries

*Used by* gramGrp model.formPart

*Members* model.morphLike[case gen gram iType mood number per tns] colloc gramGrp lbl pos subc usg

---

**model.graphicLike** groups elements containing images, formulae, and similar objects. [3.9. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components]

*Module* tei

*Used by* char facsimile figure formula glyph model.phrase sourceDoc surface table zone

*Members* binaryObject formula graphic media

---

**model.headLike** groups elements used to provide a title or heading at the start of a text division.

*Module* tei

*Used by* argument castGroup climate divGen event figure listApp listBibl listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation listWit model.divTopPart msDesc msPart org place population set spGrp state table terrain trait

*Members* head

---

**model.hiLike** groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct but to which no specific function can be attributed. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]

*Module* tei

*Used by* formula model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase model.linePart w

*Members* hi

---

**model.highlighted** groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct.  
[3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]

*Module* tei

*Used by* bibl model.phrase

*Members* model.emphLike[code distinct emph foreign gloss ident mentioned soCalled term title] model.hiLike[hi]

---

**model.imprintPart** groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints.  
[3.11. Bibliographic Citations and References]

*Module* tei

*Used by* imprint model.biblPart

*Members* biblScope distributor pubPlace publisher

---

**model.inter** groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* tei

*Used by* dictScrap entryFree etym form gramGrp head lem macro.limitedContent macro.paraContent macro.specialPara model.common rdg trailer xr

*Members* model.biblLike[bibl biblFull biblStruct listBibl msDesc textread] model.egLike[eg egXML] model.labelLike[desc label] model.listLike[list listApp listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listWit table] model.oddDecl[classSpec constraintSpec elementSpec listRef macroSpec moduleSpec specGrp specGrpRef] model.qLike [model.quoteLike[cit quote] floatingText q said] model.stageLike[camera caption move sound stage tech view] castList

---

**model.lLike** groups elements representing metrical components such as verse lines.

*Module* tei

*Used by* head lg model.divPart sp trailer

*Members* l

---

**model.lPart** groups phrase-level elements which may appear within verse only. [6.2. Components of the Verse Line]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.phrase w

*Members* caesura rhyme

---

**model.labelLike** groups elements used to gloss or explain other parts of a document.

*Module* tei

*Used by* application climate event lg location model.inter notatedMusic org place population state surface terrain trait

*Members* desc label

---

**model.limitedPhrase** groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* tei

*Used by* catDesc creation macro.limitedContent macro.phraseSeq.limited

*Members* model.emphLike[code distinct emph foreign gloss ident mentioned soCalled term title] model.hiLike[hi] model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[address affiliation email] model.dateLike[date time] model.measureLike[depth dim geo height measure measureGrp num width] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName] model.offsetLike[geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart[addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart[bloc country district geogName placeName region settlement] climate location population state terrain trait] idno lang listener reader rs] readingExpRef] model.pPart.editorial[abbr am choice ex expan subst] model.pPart.msdesc[catchwords dimensions heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark] model.phrase.xml[att gi tag val] model.ptrLike[ptr ref]

---

**model.linePart** groups transcriptional elements which appear within lines or zones of a source-oriented transcription within a <sourceDoc> element.

*Module* tei

*Used by* line zone

*Members* model.hiLike[hi] model.pPart.transcriptional[add app corr damage del handShift mod orig redo reg restore retrace sic supplied surplus unclear undo] model.segLike[c cl m pc phr s seg w] choice line zone

---

**model.listLike** groups list-like elements. [3.7. Lists]

*Module* tei

*Used by* abstract back model.inter sourceDesc sp

*Members* list listApp listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listWit table

---

**model.measureLike** groups elements which denote a number, a quantity, a measurement, or similar piece of text that conveys some numerical meaning. [3.5.3. Numbers and Measures]

*Module* tei

*Used by* location measureGrp model.pPart.data

*Members* depth dim geo height measure measureGrp num width

---

**model.milestoneLike** groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems. [1.3. The TEI Class System 3.10.3. Milestone Elements]

*Module* tei

*Used by* listBibl model.global org subst

*Members* anchor cb fw gb lb milestone pb

---

**model.morphLike** groups elements which provide morphological information within a dictionary entry. [9.3. Top-level Constituents of Entries]

*Module* dictionaries

*Used by* dictScrap entryFree etym model.gramPart

*Members* case gen gram iType mood number per tns

---

**model.msItemPart** groups elements which can appear within a manuscript item description.

*Module* tei

*Used by* msItem

*Members* model.biblLike[bibl biblFull biblStruct listBibl msDesc textread]  
model.msQuoteLike[colophon explicit finalRubric incipit rubric title]  
model.quoteLike[cit quote] model.respLike[author editor funder meeting principal  
respStmt sponsor] decoNote filiation idno msItem msItemStruct textLang

---

**model.msQuoteLike** groups elements which represent passages such as titles quoted from a manuscript as a part of its description.

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.msItemPart

*Members* colophon explicit finalRubric incipit rubric title

---

**model.nameLike** groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization.

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.addrPart model.correspActionPart model.pPart.data org

*Members* model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName] model.offsetLike[geogFeat  
offset] model.persNamePart[addName forename genName nameLink roleName  
surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[bloc country district  
geogName placeName region settlement] climate location population state terrain  
trait] idno lang listener reader rs

*Note* A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc.

---

**model.nameLike.agent** groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [3.5. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.nameLike respStmt setting

*Members* name orgName persName

*Note* This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations.

---

**model.noteLike** groups globally-available note-like elements. [3.8. Notes, Annotation, and Indexing]

*Module* tei

*Used by* adminInfo biblStruct char climate event glyph location metDecl model.global monogr msItemStruct notesStmt org place population state terrain trait

*Members* note witDetail

---

**model.oddDecl** groups elements which generate declarations in some markup language in ODD documents.

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.inter schemaSpec specGrp

*Members* classSpec constraintSpec elementSpec listRef macroSpec moduleSpec specGrp specGrpRef

---

**model.oddRef** groups elements which reference declarations in some markup language in ODD documents.

*Module* tei

*Used by* schemaSpec specGrp

*Members* classRef elementRef macroRef moduleRef

---

**model.offsetLike** groups elements which can appear only as part of a place name. [13.2.3. Place Names]

*Module* tei

*Used by* location model.nameLike

*Members* geogFeat offset

---

**model.orgPart** groups elements which form part of the description of an organization.

*Module* tei

*Used by* org

*Members* listOrg listPerson listPlace

---

**model.pLike** groups paragraph-like elements.

*Module* tei

*Used by* abstract application availability back binding bindingDesc broadcast cRefPattern calendar climate correction correspAction correspDesc custodialHist decoDesc editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc equipment event exemplum front handDesc history hyphenation interpretation langKnowledge layoutDesc listRelation metDecl model.correspContextPart model.divPart msContents msDesc msItem msItemStruct msPart normalization nym objectDesc org particDesc person personGrp physDesc place population prefixDef projectDesc publicationStmt punctuation quotation recordHist recording recordingStmt refsDecl remarks samplingDecl scriptDesc

scriptStmt seal sealDesc segmentation seriesStmt setting settingDesc sourceDesc sp  
state stdVals styleDefDecl supportDesc terrain trait typeDesc

*Members* ab p

---

**model.pLike.front** groups paragraph-like elements which can occur as direct constituents of front matter. [4.6. Title Pages]

*Module* tei

*Used by* back front

*Members* argument byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph  
head titlePart

---

**model.pPart.data** groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data. [3.5. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]

*Module* tei

*Used by* bibl model.limitedPhrase model.phrase

*Members* model.addressLike[address affiliation email] model.dateLike[date time]  
model.measureLike[depth dim geo height measure measureGrp num width]  
model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName] model.offsetLike  
[geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart[addName forename genName nameLink  
roleName surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[bloc country district  
geogName placeName region settlement] climate location population state terrain  
trait] idno lang listener reader rs] readingExpRef

---

**model.pPart.edit** groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes]

*Module* tei

*Used by* bibl model.phrase pc w

*Members* model.pPart.editorial[abbr am choice ex expan subst]  
model.pPart.transcriptional[add app corr damage del handShift mod orig redo reg  
restore retrace sic supplied surplus unclear undo]

---

**model.pPart.editorial** groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial interventions that may be useful both in transcribing and in authoring. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.limitedPhrase model.pPart.edit

*Members* abbr am choice ex expan subst

---

**model.pPart.msdesc** groups phrase-level elements used in manuscript description. [10. Manuscript Description]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.limitedPhrase model.phrase

*Members* catchwords dimensions heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate  
origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark

---

**model.pPart.transcriptional** groups phrase-level elements used for editorial transcription of pre-existing source materials. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes]

*Module* tei

*Used by* am model.linePart model.pPart.edit

*Members* add app corr damage del handShift mod orig redo reg restore retrace sic  
supplied surplus unclear undo

---

**model.persEventLike** groups elements describing specific events in a person's history, for example birth, marriage, or appointment.

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.personPart

*Members* birth death event listEvent

*Note* These are not characteristics of an individual, but often cause an individual to gain such characteristics, or to enter a new state.

---

**model.persNamePart** groups elements which form part of a personal name.  
[13.2.1. Personal Names]

*Module* namesdates

*Used by* model.nameLike

*Members* addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname

---

**model.persStateLike** groups elements describing changeable characteristics of a person which have a definite duration, for example occupation, residence, or name.

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.personPart

*Members* affiliation age education faith floruit langKnowledge nationality occupation  
persName residence sex socecStatus state trait

*Note* These characteristics of an individual are typically a consequence of their own action or that of others.

---

**model.personLike** groups elements which provide information about people and their relationships.

*Module* tei

*Used by* listPerson org particDesc

*Members* addressee listener org person personGrp reader sender textread

---

**model.personPart** groups elements which form part of the description of a person.  
[15.2.2. The Participant Description]

*Module* tei

*Used by* person personGrp

*Members* model.biblLike[bibl biblFull biblStruct listBibl msDesc textread]  
model.persEventLike[birth death event listEvent] model.persStateLike[affiliation age  
education faith floruit langKnowledge nationality occupation persName residence sex  
socecStatus state trait] idno

---

**model.phrase** groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or  
phrases. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* tei

*Used by* byline castItem closer date dateline dictScrap docImprint entryFree etym form  
gramGrp head lem macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara opener  
origDate rdg re sense time trailer u xr

*Members* model.graphicLike[binaryObject formula graphic media] model.highlighted  
[model.emphLike[code distinct emph foreign gloss ident mentioned soCalled term  
title] model.hiLike[hi]] model.lPart[caesura rhyme] model.pPart.data  
[model.addressLike[address affiliation email] model.dateLike[date time]  
model.measureLike[depth dim geo height measure measureGrp num width]  
model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName] model.offsetLike  
[geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart[addName forename genName nameLink  
roleName surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[bloc country district  
geogName placeName region settlement] climate location population state terrain  
trait] idno lang listener reader rs] readingExpRef] model.pPart.edit  
[model.pPart.editorial[abbr am choice ex expan subst] model.pPart.transcriptional  
[add app corr damage del handShift mod orig redo reg restore retrace sic supplied  
surplus unclear undo]] model.pPart.msdesc[catchwords dimensions heraldry locus  
locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp  
watermark] model.phrase.xml[att gi tag val] model.ptrLike[ptr ref]  
model.ptrLike.form[oRef oVar pRef pVar] model.segLike[c cl m pc phr s seg w]  
model.specDescLike[specDesc specList]

*Note* This class of elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc.

---

**model.phrase.xml** groups phrase-level elements used to encode XML constructs such  
as element names, attribute names, and attribute values [22. Documentation  
Elements]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.limitedPhrase model.phrase

*Members* att gi tag val

---

**model.physDescPart** groups specialized elements forming part of the physical  
description of a manuscript or similar written source.

*Module* tei

*Used by* physDesc



*Members* accMat additions bindingDesc decoDesc handDesc musicNotation objectDesc  
scriptDesc sealDesc typeDesc

---

**model.placeEventLike** groups elements which describe events at or affecting a place.

*Module* tei

*Used by* place

*Members* event

---

**model.placeLike** groups elements used to provide information about places and their relationships.

*Module* tei

*Used by* listPlace org place settingDesc

*Members* place

---

**model.placeNamePart** groups elements which form part of a place name. [13.2.3. Place Names]

*Module* tei

*Used by* altIdentifier location model.placeStateLike msIdentifier

*Members* bloc country district geogName placeName region settlement

---

**model.placeStateLike** groups elements which describe changing states of a place.

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.nameLike place

*Members* model.placeNamePart[bloc country district geogName placeName region  
settlement] climate location population state terrain trait

---

**model.profileDescPart** groups elements which may be used inside <profileDesc> and appear multiple times.

*Module* tei

*Used by* profileDesc

*Members* abstract calendarDesc correspDesc creation handNotes langUsage listTranspose  
origLanguage particDesc settingDesc textClass textDesc

---

**model.ptrLike** groups elements used for purposes of location and reference. [3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References]

*Module* tei

*Used by* analytic application bibl biblStruct cit eLeaf eTree entry  
model.correspContextPart model.limitedPhrase model.phrase monogr notatedMusic  
relatedItem series

*Members* ptr ref

---

**model.ptrLike.form** groups elements used for purposes of location of particular orthographic or pronunciation forms within a dictionary entry. [9. Dictionaries]

*Module* dictionaries

*Used by* model.phrase

*Members* oRef oVar pRef pVar

---

**model.publicationStmtPart.agency** groups the child elements of a <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header that indicate an authorising agent. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

*Module* tei

*Used by* publicationStmt

*Members* authority distributor publisher

*Note* The ‘agency’ child elements, while not required, are required if one of the ‘detail’ child elements is to be used. It is not valid to have a ‘detail’ child element without a preceding ‘agency’ child element. See also **model.publicationStmtPart.detail**.

---

**model.publicationStmtPart.detail** groups the agency-specific child elements of the <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

*Module* tei

*Used by* publicationStmt

*Members* address availability date idno pubPlace

*Note* A ‘detail’ child element may not occur unless an ‘agency’ child element precedes it. See also **model.publicationStmtPart.agency**.

---

**model.qLike** groups elements related to highlighting which can appear either within or between chunk-level elements. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]

*Module* tei

*Used by* cit model.inter sp

*Members* model.quoteLike[cit quote] floatingText q said

---

**model.quoteLike** groups elements used to directly contain quotations.

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.msItemPart model.qLike

*Members* cit quote

---

**model.rdgLike** groups elements which contain a single reading, other than the lemma, within a textual variation. [12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses]

*Module* textcrit

*Used by* app rdgGrp

*Members* rdg

*Note* This class allows for variants of the <rdg> element to be easily created via TEI customizations.

---

**model.rdgPart** groups elements which mark the beginning or ending of a fragmentary manuscript or other witness. [12.1.5. Fragmentary Witnesses]

*Module* textcrit

*Used by* lem rdg

*Members* lacunaEnd lacunaStart wit witEnd witStart

*Note* These elements may appear anywhere within the elements <lem> and <rdg>, and also within any of their constituent elements.

---

**model.recordingPart** groups elements used to describe details of an audio or video recording. [8.2. Documenting the Source of Transcribed Speech]

*Module* spoken

*Used by* recording

*Members* model.dateLike[date time] broadcast equipment media respStmt

---

**model.resourceLike** groups non-textual elements which may appear together with a header and a text to constitute a TEI document. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* tei

*Used by* TEI teiCorpus

*Members* facsimile fsdDecl sourceDoc

---

**model.respLike** groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element.

*Module* tei

*Used by* editionStmt model.biblPart model.msItemPart titleStmt

*Members* author editor funder meeting principal respStmt sponsor

---

**model.segLike** groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]

*Module* tei

*Used by* bibl model.linePart model.phrase

*Members* c cl m pc phr s seg w

*Note* The principles on which segmentation is carried out, and any special codes or attribute values used, should be defined explicitly in the <segmentation> element of the <encodingDesc> within the associated TEI header.

---

**model.settingPart** groups elements used to describe the setting of a linguistic interaction.

*Module* tei

*Used by* setting

*Members* activity locale

---

**model.sourceDescPart** groups elements which may be used inside <sourceDesc> and appear multiple times.

*Module* tei

*Used by* sourceDesc

*Members* recordingStmt scriptStmt

---

**model.specDescLike** groups elements for referring to specification elements. [22. Documentation Elements]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.phrase

*Members* specDesc specList

---

**model.stageLike** groups elements containing stage directions or similar things defined by the module for performance texts. [7.3. Other Types of Performance Text]

*Module* tei

*Used by* lg model.inter sp spGrp

*Members* camera caption move sound stage tech view

*Note* Stage directions are members of class *inter*: that is, they can appear between or within component-level elements.

---

**model.teiHeaderPart** groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI header.

*Module* tei

*Used by* teiHeader

*Members* encodingDesc profileDesc readingExpDesc

---

**model.textDescPart** groups elements used to categorize a text for example in terms of its situational parameters.

*Module* tei

*Used by* textDesc

*Members* channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction preparedness

---

**model.titlepagePart** groups elements which can occur as direct constituents of a

---

title page, such as <docTitle>, <docAuthor>, <docImprint>, or <epigraph>. [4.6. Title Pages]

*Module* tei

*Used by* msItem titlePage

*Members* argument binaryObject byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph graphic imprimatur titlePart

### 3 Attribute classes

---

**att.ascribed** provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual. [3.3.3. Quotation 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts]

*Module* tei

*Members* change incident kinesic move pause q said setting shift sp spGrp stage u vocal writing

*Attributes* Attributes

**@who** indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

In the following example from Hamlet, speeches (<sp>) in the body of the play are linked to <castItem> elements in the <castList> using the *who* attribute. **<castItem type="role">**

```
<role xml:id="Barnardo">Bernardo</role>
</castItem>
<castItem type="role">
  <role xml:id="Francisco">Francisco</role>
  <roleDesc>a soldier</roleDesc>
</castItem>
<!-- ... -->
<sp who="#Barnardo">
  <speaker>Bernardo</speaker>
  <l n="1">Who's there?</l>
</sp>
<sp who="#Francisco">
  <speaker>Francisco</speaker>
  <l n="2">Nay, answer me: stand, and unfold yourself.</l>
</sp>
```

*Note* For transcribed speech, this will typically identify a participant or participant group; in other contexts, it will point to any identified <person> element.

---

**att.breaking** provides an attribute to indicate whether or not the element concerned is considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace. [3.10.3. Milestone Elements]

*Module* tei

*Members* cb gb lb milestone pb

*Attributes* Attributes

**@break** indicates whether or not the element bearing this attribute should be

considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.

*Status* Recommended

*Datatype* `data.enumerated`

*Sample values include* **yes** the element bearing this attribute is

considered to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace

**no** the element bearing this attribute is considered not to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace

**maybe** the encoding does not take any position on this issue.

In the following lines from the ‘Dream of the Rood’, linebreaks occur in the middle of the words *lādost* and *reord-berendum*. **<ab>**  
 ...epesa tome iu icpæs ƶeporden ƶita heardoft .  
 leodum la**<lb break="no"/>** dōst ærƶan ichim lifes  
 ƶeƶ rihtne ƶerymde reord be**<lb break="no"/>**  
 rendum hƶæt me ƶaƶeƶeorðode ƶuldres ealdor ofer...  
**</ab>**

---

**att.cReferencing** provides an attribute which may be used to supply a *canonical reference* as a means of identifying the target of a pointer.

*Module* tei

*Members* gloss ptr ref term

*Attributes* Attributes

**@cRef** (canonical reference) specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying a canonical reference expressed using the scheme defined in a **<refsDecl>** element in the TEI header

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.text`

*Note* The value of *cRef* should be constructed so that when the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section 16.2.5. Canonical References) is applied to it the result is a valid URI reference to the intended targetThe **<refsDecl>** to use may be indicated with the *decls* attribute.

Currently these Guidelines only provide for a single canonical reference to be encoded on any given **<ptr/>** element.

---

**att.canonical** provides attributes which can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced.

*Module* tei

*Members* att.naming[att.personal[addName forename genName name orgName persName placeName reader roleName surname] affiliation author birth bloc climate collection country death district editor education event geogFeat geogName institution nationality occupation offset origPlace population pubPlace reader region repository residence rs settlement socecStatus state terrain trait] correspDesc docAuthor docTitle faith funder material meeting objectType principal reader relation resp respStmt sponsor term title

*Attributes* Attributes

**@key** provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) being named, using a coded value of some kind.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.text`

```
<author>
  <name key="name 427308"
    type="organisation">[New Zealand Parliament, Legislative
Council]</name>
</author>
<author>
  <name key="Hugo, Victor (1802-1885)"
    ref="http://www.idref.fr/026927608">Victor Hugo</name>
</author>
```

*Note* The value may be a unique identifier from a database, or any other externally-defined string identifying the referent. No particular syntax is proposed for the values of the key attribute, since its form will depend entirely on practice within a given project. For the same reason, this attribute is not recommended in data interchange, since there is no way of ensuring that the values used by one project are distinct from those used by another. In such a situation, a preferable approach for magic tokens which follows standard practice on the Web is to use a *ref* attribute whose value is a tag URI as defined in RFC 4151.

**@ref** (reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

```
<name ref="http://viaf.org/viaf/109557338"
  type="person">Seamus Heaney</name>
```

*Note* The value must point directly to one or more XML elements or other resources by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied the implication is that the name identifies several distinct entities.

---

**att.citing** provides attributes for specifying the specific part of a bibliographic item being cited. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes]

*Module* tei

*Members* biblScope citedRange

*Attributes* Attributes

**@unit** identifies the unit of information conveyed by the element, e.g. columns, pages, volume.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.enumerated`

*Suggested values include:* **volume** the element contains a volume number.

**issue** the element contains an issue number, or volume and issue numbers.

**page** the element contains a page number or page range.

**line** the element contains a line number or line range.

**chapter** the element contains a chapter indication (number and/or title)

**part** the element identifies a part of a book or collection.

**column** the element identifies a column.

**@from** specifies the starting point of the range of units indicated by the *unit* attribute.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.word

**@to** specifies the end-point of the range of units indicated by the *unit* attribute.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.word

---

**att.combinable** provides attributes indicating how multiple references to the same object in a schema should be combined

*Module* tagdocs

*Members* att.identified[attDef classSpec constraintSpec elementSpec macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec] valDesc valItem valList

*Attributes* Attributes att.deprecated (*@validUntil*)

**@mode** specifies the effect of this declaration on its parent object.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Legal values are:* **add** this declaration is added to the current definitions[Default]

**delete** if present already, the whole of the declaration for this object is removed from the current setup

**change** this declaration changes the declaration of the same name in the current definition

**replace** this declaration replaces the declaration of the same name in the current definition

*Note* An ODD processor should handle the values for *mode* as follows:

**add** the object should be created (processing any children in add mode); raise an error if an object with the same identifier already exists

**replace** use this object in preference to any existing object with the same identifier, and ignore any children of that object; process any new children in replace mode

**delete** do not process this object or any existing object with the same identifier; raise an error if any new children supplied

**change** process this object, and process its children, and those of any existing object with the same identifier, in change mode

---

**att.coordinated** elements which can be positioned within a two dimensional coordinate system.

*Module* transcr

*Members* line surface zone

*Attributes* Attributes



**@start** indicates the element within a transcription of the text containing at least the start of the writing represented by this zone or surface.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

**@ulx** gives the x coordinate value for the upper left corner of a rectangular space.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.numeric

**@uly** gives the y coordinate value for the upper left corner of a rectangular space.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.numeric

**@lrx** gives the x coordinate value for the lower right corner of a rectangular space.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.numeric

**@lry** gives the y coordinate value for the lower right corner of a rectangular space.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.numeric

**@points** identifies a two dimensional area within the bounding box specified by the other attributes by means of a series of pairs of numbers, each of which gives the x,y coordinates of a point on a line enclosing the area.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 3– occurrences of data.point separated by whitespace

---

**att.damaged** provides attributes describing the nature of any physical damage affecting a reading. [11.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text 1.3.1. Attribute Classes]

*Module* tei

*Members* damage damageSpan

*Attributes* Attributes att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*)  
(att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))

**@hand** in the case of damage (deliberate defacement, inking out, etc.) assignable to a distinct hand, signifies the hand responsible for the damage by pointing to one of the hand identifiers declared in the document header (see section PHDH).

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

**@agent** categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Sample values include:* **rubbing** damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges

**mildew** damage results from mildew on the leaf surface

**smoke** damage results from smoke

**@degree** provides a coded representation of the degree of damage, either as a number between 0 (undamaged) and 1 (very extensively damaged), or as one of the codes high, medium, low, or unknown. The <damage> element with the *degree* attribute should only be used where the text may be read

with some confidence; text supplied from other sources should be tagged as `<supplied>`.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype*

<code>data.probability</code>   <code>data.certainty</code>
---

*Note* The `<damage>` element is appropriate where it is desired to record the fact of damage although this has not affected the readability of the text, for example a weathered inscription. Where the damage has rendered the text more or less illegible either the `<unclear>` tag (for partial illegibility) or the `<gap>` tag (for complete illegibility, with no text supplied) should be used, with the information concerning the damage given in the attribute values of these tags. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of the use of these tags in particular circumstances.

**@group** assigns an arbitrary number to each stretch of damage regarded as forming part of the same physical phenomenon.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype*

<code>data.count</code>
-------------------------

---

**att.datable** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events. [3.5.4. Dates and Times 13.3.6. Dates and Times]

*Module* `tei`

*Members* acquisition affiliation age application binding birth bloc change climate country creation custEvent date death district education event faith floruit geogFeat geogName langKnowledge langKnown licence listener location name nationality occupation offset orgName origDate origPlace origin persName placeName population precision provenance reader region relation residence resp seal settlement sex socecStatus stamp state terrain textread time trait

*Attributes* Attributes `att.datable.w3c` (`@when`, `@notBefore`, `@notAfter`, `@from`, `@to`)  
`att.datable.iso` (`@when-iso`, `@notBefore-iso`, `@notAfter-iso`, `@from-iso`, `@to-iso`)  
`att.datable.custom` (`@when-custom`, `@notBefore-custom`, `@notAfter-custom`, `@from-custom`, `@to-custom`, `@datingPoint`, `@datingMethod`)

**@calendar** indicates the system or calendar to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype*

<code>data.pointer</code>
---------------------------

*Schematron* `<sch:rule context="tei:*[@calendar]">  
 <sch:assert test="string-length(.) gt 0">@calendar indicates the  
 system or calendar to which the date represented by the content of  
 this element belongs, but this <sch:name/> element has no textual  
 content.</sch:assert></sch:rule>  
 He was born on <date calendar="#Gregorian">Feb. 22,  
 1732</date>  
 (<date calendar="#Julian"  
 when="1732-02-22"> Feb. 11, 1731/32, 0.S.</date>).`

**@period** supplies a pointer to some location defining a named period of time within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.pointer`

*Note* This ‘superclass’ provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the `att.dataable.w3c` class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the `att.dataable.iso` and `att.dataable.custom` classes. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes.

**att.dataable.custom** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events to a custom dating system (i.e. other than the Gregorian used by W3 and ISO). [13.3.6. Dates and Times]

*Module* namesdates

*Members* att.dataable[acquisition affiliation age application binding birth bloc change climate country creation custEvent date death district education event faith floruit geogFeat geogName langKnowledge langKnown licence listener location name nationality occupation offset orgName origDate origPlace origin persName placeName population precision provenance reader region relation residence resp seal settlement sex socecStatus stamp state terrain textread time trait] listener reader textread

*Attributes* Attributes

**@when-custom** supplies the value of a date or time in some custom standard form.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

The following are examples of custom date or time formats that are *not* valid ISO or W3C format normalizations, normalized to a different dating system `<p>Alhazen died in Cairo on the`  
`<date when="1040-03-06"`

`when-custom="431-06-12"> 12th day of Jumada t-Tania, 430`  
`AH`

`</date>.</p>`

`<p>The current world will end at the`

`<date when="2012-12-21"`

`when-custom="13.0.0.0.0">end of B'ak'tun 13</date>.</p>`

`<p>The Battle of Meggidu`

`(<date when-custom="Thutmose_III:23">23rd year of reign of`  
`Thutmose III</date>).</p>`

`<p>Esidorus bixit in pace annos LXX plus minus sub`

`<date when-custom="Ind:4-10-11">die XI mensis Octobris`

`indictione IIII</date>`

`</p>`Not all custom date formulations will have Gregorian equivalents. The *when-custom* attribute and other custom dating are not constrained to a datatype by the TEI, but individual projects are recommended to regularize and document their dating formats.

**@notBefore-custom** specifies the earliest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

**@notAfter-custom** specifies the latest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

**@from-custom** indicates the starting point of the period in some custom standard form.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

```
<event datingMethod="#julian"
  from-custom="1666-09-02"
  to-custom="1666-09-05"
  xml:id="FIRE1">
  <head>The Great Fire of London</head>
  <p>The Great Fire of London burned through a large part
    of the city of London.</p>
</event>
```

**@to-custom** indicates the ending point of the period in some custom standard form.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

**@datingPoint** supplies a pointer to some location defining a named point in time with reference to which the datable item is understood to have occurred

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.pointer`

**@datingMethod** supplies a pointer to a `<calendar>` element or other means of interpreting the values of the custom dating attributes.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.pointer`

```
Contayning the Originall, Antiquity, Increafe, Moderne
eftate, and defcription of that Citie, written in the yeare
<date calendar="#julian"
  datingMethod="#julian"
  when-custom="1598">1598</date>. by Iohn Stow
Citizen of London.
```

*Note* Here the *calendar* attribute points to a `<calendar>` element for the Julian calendar, specifying that the text content of the `<date>` element is a Julian date, and the *datingMethod* attribute also points to the Julian calendar to indicate that the content of the *when-custom* attribute value is Julian too.

---

**att.datable.iso** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events using the ISO 8601 standard. [3.5.4. Dates and Times 13.3.6. Dates and Times]

*Module* namesdates

*Members* att.datable[acquisition affiliation age application binding birth bloc change climate country creation custEvent date death district education event faith floruit geogFeat geogName langKnowledge langKnown licence listener location name nationality occupation offset orgName origDate origPlace origin persName placeName population precision provenance reader region relation residence resp seal settlement sex socecStatus stamp state terrain textread time trait] listener reader

*Attributes* Attributes

**@when-iso** supplies the value of a date or time in a standard form.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.temporal.iso`

The following are examples of ISO date, time, and date & time formats that are *not* valid W3C format normalizations.

`<date when-iso="1996-09-24T07:25+00">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date>`

`<date when-iso="1996-09-24T03:25-04">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date>`

`<time when-iso="1999-01-04T20:42-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</time>`

`<time when-iso="1999-W01-1T20,70-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</time>`

`<date when-iso="2006-05-18T10:03">a few minutes after ten in the morning on Thu 18 May</date>`

`<time when-iso="03:00">3 A.M.</time>`

`<time when-iso="14">around two</time>`

`<time when-iso="15,5">half past three</time>` All of the examples of the *when* attribute in the `att.datable.w3c` class are also valid with respect to this attribute.

He likes to be punctual. I said `<q>`

`<time when-iso="12">around noon</time>`

`</q>`, and he showed up at `<time when-iso="12:00:00">12`

`0'clock</time>` on the dot. The second occurrence of `<time>`

could have been encoded with the *when* attribute, as `12:00:00` is a valid time with respect to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition* specification. The first occurrence

could not.

**@notBefore-iso** specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form,

e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.temporal.iso`

**@notAfter-iso** specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form,

e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.temporal.iso`

**@from-iso** indicates the starting point of the period in standard form.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.temporal.iso`

**@to-iso** indicates the ending point of the period in standard form.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.temporal.iso`

*Note* The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by ISO 8601, using the Gregorian calendar.

*Note* If both *when-iso* and *dur-iso* are specified, the values should be interpreted as indicating a span of time by its starting time (or date) and duration. That is,

```
<date dur-iso="P8D" when-iso="2007-06-01"/>
```

indicates the same time period as

```
<date when-iso="2007-06-01/P8D"/>
```

In providing a ‘regularized’ form, no claim is made that the form in the source text is incorrect; the regularized form is simply that chosen as the main form for purposes of unifying variant forms under a single heading.

**att.datable.w3c** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events conforming to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*.  
[3.5.4. Dates and Times 13.3.6. Dates and Times]

*Module* tei

*Members* att.datable[acquisition affiliation age application binding birth bloc change climate country creation custEvent date death district education event faith floruit geogFeat geogName langKnowledge langKnown licence listener location name nationality occupation offset orgName origDate origPlace origin persName placeName population precision provenance reader region relation residence resp seal settlement sex socecStatus stamp state terrain textread time trait] listener reader

*Attributes* Attributes

**@when** supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g.

yyyy-mm-dd.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.temporal.w3c

Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats. **<p>**

**<date when="1945-10-24">24 Oct 45</date>**

**<date when="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date>**

**<time when="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8 pm</time>**

**<time when="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</time>**

**<date when="1962-10">October of 1962</date>**

**<date when="--06-12">June 12th</date>**

**<date when="--01">the first of the month</date>**

**<date when="--08">August</date>**

**<date when="2006">MMVI</date>**

**<date when="0056">AD 56</date>**

**<date when="-0056">56 BC</date>**

**</p>**

This list begins in

the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the Sunday after

Pentecost, in that year the **<date calendar="#Julian"**

**when="1632-06-06">27th of May (old style)</date>**.

**<opener>**

**<dateline>**

**<placeName>Dorchester, Village,</placeName>**

**<date when="1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</date>**

**</dateline>**

**<salute>To**

**Mrs. Cornell,</salute> Sunday**

**<time when="12:00:00">noon.</time>**

**</opener>**

**@notBefore** specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g.

yyyy-mm-dd.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.temporal.w3c

**@notAfter** specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g.

yyyy-mm-dd.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.temporal.w3c

**@from** indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g.

yyyy-mm-dd.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.temporal.w3c`

**@to** indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.temporal.w3c`

#### Example

```
<date from="1863-05-28" to="1863-06-01">28 May through 1 June 1863</date>
```

*Note* The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*, using the Gregorian calendar. The most commonly-encountered format for the date portion of a temporal attribute is **yyyy-mm-dd**, but **yyyy**, **--mm**, **---dd**, **yyyy-mm**, or **--mm-dd** may also be used. For the time part, the form **hh:mm:ss** is used.

Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value 0000 to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value -0001 should be used.

**att.datcat** provides the *dcr:datacat* and *dcr:ValueDatacat* attributes which are used to align XML elements or attributes with the appropriate Data Categories (DCs) defined by the ISO 12620:2009 standard and stored in the Web repository called ISOcat at <http://www.isocat.org/>. [9.5.2. Lexical View 18.3. Other Atomic Feature Values]

*Module* tei

*Members* att.lexicographic[case colloc def entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number oRef oVar orth pRef pVar per pos pron re sense subc syll tns usg xr] att.segLike[c cl m pc phr s seg w] binary f fs numeric string symbol

*Attributes* Attributes

**@datcat** contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the given element with the appropriate Data Category (or categories) in ISOcat.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

**@valueDatcat** contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the content of the given element or the value of the given attribute with the appropriate simple Data Category (or categories) in ISOcat.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

*Example* In this example *dcr:datcat* relates the feature name to the data category "partOfSpeech" and *dcr:valueDatcat* the feature value to the data category "commonNoun". Both these data categories reside in the ISOcat DCR at [www.isocat.org](http://www.isocat.org/), which is the DCR used by ISO TC37 and hosted by its registration authority, the MPI for Psycholinguistics in Nijmegen.

```
<fs
  xmlns:dc="http://www.isocat.org/ns/dcr">
  <f dcr:datcat="http://www.isocat.org/datcat/DC-1345"
    dcr:valueDatcat="http://www.isocat.org/datcat/
```

```
DC-1256" fVal="#commonNoun" name="POS"/>
</fs>
```

*Note* ISO 12620:2009 is a standard describing the data model and procedures for a Data Category Registry (DCR). Data categories are defined as elementary descriptors in a linguistic structure. In the DCR data model each data category gets assigned a unique Persistent Identifier (PID), i.e., an URI. Linguistic resources or preferably their schemas that make use of data categories from a DCR should refer to them using this PID. For XML-based resources, like TEI documents, ISO 12620:2009 normative Annex A gives a small Data Category Reference XML vocabulary (also available online at <http://www.isocat.org/12620/>), which provides two attributes, *dcr:datcat* and *dcr:valueDatcat*.

---

**att.declarable** provides attributes for those elements in the TEI header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose *decls* attribute. [15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text]

*Module* tei

*Members* availability bibl biblFull biblStruct broadcast correction correspDesc editorialDecl equipment geoDecl hyphenation interpretation langUsage listApp listBibl listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace metDecl normalization particDesc projectDesc punctuation quotation recording refsDecl samplingDecl scriptStmt segmentation settingDesc sourceDesc stdVals styleDefDecl textClass textDesc

*Attributes* Attributes

**@default** indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.truthValue

*Legal values are:* **true** This element is selected if its parent is selected

**false** This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected.[Default]

*Note* The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text. Only one element of a particular type may have a *default* attribute with a value of true.

---

**att.declaring** provides attributes for elements which may be independently associated with a particular declarable element within the header, thus overriding the inherited default for that element. [15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text]

*Module* tei

*Members* ab back body div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 facsimile floatingText front geo gloss graphic group lg media msDesc p ptr ref sourceDoc surface surfaceGrp term text u

*Attributes* Attributes

**@decls** identifies one or more *declarable elements* within the header, which are understood to apply to the element bearing this attribute and its content.

*Status* Optional



*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

*Note* The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text.

---

**att.deprecated** provides attributes indicating how a deprecated feature will be treated in future releases.

*Module* tagdocs

*Members* att.combinable[att.identified[attDef classSpec constraintSpec elementSpec macroSpec moduleSpec schemaSpec] valDesc valItem valList]

*Attributes* Attributes

**@validUntil** provides a date before which the construct being defined will not be removed.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `xsd:date`

*Schematron*

```
<sch:rule context="tei:*[@validUntil]">
  <sch:assert test="@validUntil cast as xs:date ge current-date()">
    <sch:value-of select="if (@ident) then concat('The ',@ident) else
concat('This ',local-name(.),' of ',ancestor::tei:*[@ident][1]/
@ident)"/> construct is outdated (as of
    <sch:value-of select="@validUntil"/>); ODD processors may ignore
it, and its use is no longer supported</sch:assert>
    <sch:assert role="nonfatal" test="@validUntil cast as xs:date ge
(current-date() + (60*xs:dayTimeDuration('P1D')))">
      <sch:value-of select="if (@ident) then concat('The ',@ident) else
concat('This ',local-name(.),' of ',ancestor::tei:*[@ident][1]/
@ident)"/> construct becomes outdated on
    <sch:value-of select="@validUntil"/> </sch:assert></sch:rule>
```

*Note* The value of this attribute should represent a date (in standard **yyyy-mm-dd** format) which is later than the date on which the attribute is added to an ODD. Technically, this attribute asserts only the intent to leave a construct in future releases of the markup language being defined up to at least the specified date, and makes no assertion about what happens past that date. In practice, the expectation is that the construct will be removed from future releases of the markup language being defined sometime shortly after the *validUntil* date. An ODD processor will typically not process a specification element which has a *validUntil* date that is in the past. An ODD processor will typically warn users about constructs which have a *validUntil* date that is in the future. E.g., the documentation for such a construct might include the phrase *warning: deprecated* in red.

---

**att.dimensions** provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.

*Module* tei

*Members* att.damaged[damage damageSpan] att.editLike[att.transcriptional[add addSpan del delSpan mod redo restore retrace subst substJoin undo] affiliation age am birth

climate corr date death education event ex expan faith floruit gap geogFeat  
geogName langKnowledge langKnown listener location name nationality occupation  
offset org orgName origDate origPlace origin persName person place placeName  
population reader reg relation residence sex socecStatus state supplied surplus  
terrain textread time trait unclear] depth dim dimensions height listener reader  
space textread width

*Attributes* Attributes att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)

**@unit** names the unit used for the measurement

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.enumerated`

*Suggested values include:* **cm** (centimetres)

**mm** (millimetres)

**in** (inches)

**lines** lines of text

**chars** (characters) characters of text

**@quantity** specifies the length in the units specified

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.numeric`

**@extent** indicates the size of the object concerned using a project-specific vocabulary combining quantity and units in a single string of words.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.text`

**<gap extent="5 words"/>**

**<height extent="half the page"/>**

**@precision** characterizes the precision of the values specified by the other attributes.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.certainty`

**@scope** where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the applicability of this measurement.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.enumerated`

*Sample values include:* **all** measurement applies to all instances.

**most** measurement applies to most of the instances inspected.

**range** measurement applies to only the specified range of instances.

---

**att.divLike** provides attributes common to all elements which behave in the same way as divisions. [4. Default Text Structure]

*Module* tei

*Members* div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 lg

*Attributes* Attributes att.metrical (@met, @real, @rhyme) att.fragmentable (@part)

**@org** (organization) specifies how the content of the division is organized.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.enumerated`

*Legal values are:* **composite** no claim is made about the sequence in

which the immediate contents of this division are to be processed, or their inter-relationships.

**uniform** the immediate contents of this element are regarded as forming a logical unit, to be processed in sequence.[Default]

**@sample** indicates whether this division is a sample of the original source and if so, from which part.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Legal values are:* **initial** division lacks material present at end in source.

**medial** division lacks material at start and end.

**final** division lacks material at start.

**unknown** position of sampled material within original unknown.

**complete** division is not a sample.[Default]

---

**att.docStatus** provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document.

*Module* tei

*Members* bibl biblFull biblStruct change revisionDesc

*Attributes* Attributes

**@status** describes the status of a document either currently or, when associated with a dated element, at the time indicated.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Sample values include:* **approved**

**candidate**

**cleared**

**deprecated**

**draft** [Default]

**embargoed**

**expired**

**frozen**

**galley**

**proposed**

**published**

**recommendation**

**submitted**

**unfinished**

**withdrawn**

*Example*

```
<revisionDesc status="published">
  <change status="published"
    when="2010-10-21"/>
  <change status="cleared" when="2010-10-02"/>
  <change status="embargoed"
    when="2010-08-02"/>
  <change status="frozen" when="2010-05-01"
```

```
who="#MSM"/>
<change status="draft" when="2010-03-01"
who="#LB"/>
</revisionDesc>
```

---

**att.duration** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events.

*Module* spoken

*Members* att.timed[binaryObject incident kinesic media pause u vocal writing] date gap recording time

*Attributes* Attributes att.duration.w3c (@dur) att.duration.iso (@dur-iso)

*Note* This ‘superclass’ provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the **att.duration.w3c** class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the **att.duration.iso** class. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes is rarely needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes.

---

**att.duration.iso** provides attributes for recording normalized temporal durations.  
[3.5.4. Dates and Times 13.3.6. Dates and Times]

*Module* tei

*Members* att.duration[att.timed[binaryObject incident kinesic media pause u vocal writing] date gap recording time]

*Attributes* Attributes

@dur-iso (duration) indicates the length of this element in time.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.duration.iso

*Note* If both *when* and *dur* or *dur-iso* are specified, the values should be interpreted as indicating a span of time by its starting time (or date) and duration. In order to represent a time range by a duration and its ending time the *when-iso* attribute must be used. In providing a ‘regularized’ form, no claim is made that the form in the source text is incorrect; the regularized form is simply that chosen as the main form for purposes of unifying variant forms under a single heading.

---

**att.duration.w3c** provides attributes for recording normalized temporal durations.  
[3.5.4. Dates and Times 13.3.6. Dates and Times]

*Module* tei

*Members* att.duration[att.timed[binaryObject incident kinesic media pause u vocal writing] date gap recording time]

*Attributes* Attributes

@dur (duration) indicates the length of this element in time.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.duration.w3c

*Note* If both *when* and *dur* are specified, the values should be interpreted as indicating a span of time by its starting time (or date) and duration. In order to represent a time range by a duration and its ending time the *when-iso* attribute must be used. In providing a ‘regularized’ form, no claim is made that the form in the source text is incorrect; the regularized form is simply that chosen as the main form for purposes of unifying variant forms under a single heading.

---

**att.editLike** provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes 10.3.1. Origination 13.3.2. The Person Element 11.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work]

*Module* tei

*Members* att.transcriptional[add addSpan del delSpan mod redo restore retrace subst substJoin undo] affiliation age am birth climate corr date death education event ex expan faith floruit gap geogFeat geogName langKnowledge langKnown listener location name nationality occupation offset org orgName origDate origPlace origin persName person place placeName population reader reg relation residence sex socecStatus state supplied surplus terrain textread time trait unclear

*Attributes* Attributes att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.source (@source)

**@evidence** indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.enumerated` separated by whitespace

*Suggested values include:* **internal** there is internal evidence to support the intervention.

**external** there is external evidence to support the intervention.

**conjecture** the intervention or interpretation has been made by the editor, cataloguer, or scholar on the basis of their expertise.

**@instant** indicates whether this is an instant revision or not.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.xTruthValue`

*Default* false

*Note* The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial intervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manuscripts etc.

*Note* Each pointer on the *source* (if present) corresponding to a witness or witness group should reference a bibliographic citation such as a <witness>, <msDesc>, or <bibl> element, or another external bibliographic citation, documenting the source concerned.

---

**att.edition** provides attributes identifying the source edition from which some encoded feature derives.

*Module* tei

*Members* cb lb milestone pb refState

#### *Attributes* Attributes

**@ed** (edition) supplies a sigil or other arbitrary identifier for the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

**@edRef** (edition reference) provides a pointer to the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

#### *Example*

```
<l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the Fruit</l>
<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>
<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our woe,</l>
```

#### *Example*

```
<listBibl>
  <bibl xml:id="stapledon1937">
    <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>,
    <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Methuen</publisher>, <date>1937</date>
  </bibl>
  <bibl xml:id="stapledon1968">
    <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>,
    <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Dover</publisher>, <date>1968</date>
  </bibl>
</listBibl>
<!-- .... -->
<p>Looking into the future aeons from the supreme moment of
the cosmos, I saw the populations still with all their
strength maintaining the<pb edRef="#stapledon1968" n="411"/>essentials of their
ancient culture,
still living their personal lives in zest and endless
novelty of action, ... I saw myself still
preserving, though with increasing difficulty, my lucid
con-<pb edRef="#stapledon1937" n="291"/>sciousness;</p>
```

---

**att.enjamb** (enjambement) groups elements bearing the *enjamb* attribute. [6.2.

Components of the Verse Line]

*Module* verse

*Members* 1

#### *Attributes* Attributes

**@enjamb** (enjambement) indicates that the end of a verse line is marked by enjambement.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.enumerated`

*Sample values include:* **no** the line is end-stopped

**yes** the line in question runs on into the next

**weak** the line is weakly enjambed

**strong** the line is strongly enjambed

*Note* The usual practice will be to give the value ‘yes’ to this attribute when enjambement is being marked, or the values ‘weak’ and

‘strong’ if degrees of enjambement are of interest; if no value is given, however, the attribute does not default to a value of ‘no’; this allows the attribute to be omitted entirely when enjambement is not of particular interest.

---

**att.entryLike** groups the different styles of dictionary entries. [9.1. Dictionary Body and Overall Structure 9.2. The Structure of Dictionary Entries]

*Module* dictionaries

*Members* entry entryFree superEntry

*Attributes* Attributes

**@type** indicates type of entry, in dictionaries with multiple types.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Suggested values include:* **main** a main entry (default).[Default]

**hom** (homograph) groups information relating to one homograph within an entry.

**xref** (cross reference) a reduced entry whose only function is to point to another main entry (e.g. for forms of an irregular verb or for variant spellings: *was* pointing to *be*, or *esthete* to *aesthete*).

**affix** an entry for a prefix, infix, or suffix.

**abbr** (abbreviation) an entry for an abbreviation.

**supplemental** a supplemental entry (for use in dictionaries which issue supplements to their main work in which they include updated information about entries).

**foreign** an entry for a foreign word in a monolingual dictionary.

*Note* The global *n* attribute may be used to encode the homograph numbers attached to entries for homographs.

---

**att.fragmentable** groups structural elements which may be fragmented, usually as a consequence of some overlapping hierarchy.

*Module* tei

*Members* att.divLike[div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 lg] att.segLike[c cl m pc phr s seg w] ab l p

*Attributes* Attributes

**@part** specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way, typically by some other overlapping structure: for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas, a paragraph which is split across a page division, a verse line which is divided between two speakers.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Legal values are:* **Y** (yes) the element is fragmented in some (unspecified) respect

**N** (no) either the element is not fragmented, or no claim is made as to its completeness.[Default]

**I** (initial) this is the initial part of a fragmented element

**M** (medial) this is a medial part of a fragmented element

**F** (final) this is the final part of a fragmented element

*Note* The values I, M, or F should be used only where it is clear how the element may be reconstituted.

---

**att.global** provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme.

[1.3.1.1. Global Attributes]

*Module* tei

*Members* TEI ab abbr abstract accMat acquisition activity actor add addName addSpan additional additions addrLine address adminInfo affiliation age alt altGrp altIdent altIdentifier alternate am analytic anchor app appInfo application arc argument att attDef attList attRef author authority availability back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct bicond binary binaryObject binding bindingDesc birth bloc body broadcast byline c cRefPattern caesura calendar calendarDesc camera caption case castGroup castItem castList catDesc catRef catchwords category cb cell change channel char charDecl charName charProp choice cit citedRange cl classCode classDecl classRef classSpec classes climate closer code collation collection colloc colophon cond condition constitution constraint constraintSpec content corr correction correspAction correspContext correspDesc country creation custEvent custodialHist damage damageSpan datatype date dateline death decoDesc decoNote def default defaultVal del delSpan depth derivation desc dictScrap dim dimensions distinct distributor district div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain eLeaf eTree edition editionStmnt editor editorialDecl education eg egXML elementRef elementSpec email emotion emph encodingDesc entry entryFree epigraph epilogue equipment equiv etym event ex exemplum expan experienceType explicit extent f fDecl fDescr fLib facsimile factuality faith figDesc figure fileDesc filiation finalRubric floatingText floruit foliation foreign forename forest form formula front fs fsConstraints fsDecl fsDescr fsdDecl fsdLink funder fvLib fw g gap gb gen genName genre geo geoDecl geogFeat geogName gi gloss glyph glyphName gram gramGrp graph graphic group handDesc handNote handNotes handShift head headItem headLabel height heraldry hi history hom hyph hyphenation iNode iType ident idno if iff imprimatur imprint incident incipit index institution interaction interp interpGrp interpretation item join joinGrp keywords kinesic l label lacunaEnd lacunaStart lang langKnowledge langKnown langUsage language layout layoutDesc lb lbl leaf lem lg licence line link linkGrp list listApp listBibl listChange listEvent listForest listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listPrefixDef listRef listRelation listTranspose listWit listener listenerStatus localName locale location locus locusGrp m macroRef macroSpec mapping material measure measureGrp media meeting memberOf mentioned metDecl metSym metamark milestone mod moduleRef moduleSpec monogr mood move msContents msDesc msIdentifier msItem msItemStruct msName msPart musicNotation name nameLink namespace nationality node normalization notatedMusic note notesStmnt num number numeric nym oRef oVar objectDesc objectType occupation offset opener org orgName orig origDate origLanguage origPlace origin orth p pRef pVar particDesc pause pb pc per performance persName person personGrp phr physDesc place placeName population pos postBox postCode postscript precision prefixDef preparedness principal profileDesc projectDesc prologue pron provenance ptr pubPlace publicationStmnt publisher punctuation purpose q quotation quote rdg



rdgGrp re reader readerStatus readingExp readingExpDesc readingExpRef  
 recordHist recording recordingStmt redo ref refState refsDecl reg region relatedItem  
 relation remarks rendition repository residence resp respStmt respons restore retrace  
 revisionDesc rhyme role roleDesc roleName root row rs rubric s said salute  
 samplingDecl schemaSpec scriptDesc scriptNote scriptStmt seal sealDesc secFol seg  
 segmentation sense sequence series seriesStmt set setting settingDesc settlement sex  
 shift sic signatures signed soCalled socecStatus sound source sourceDesc sourceDoc  
 sp spGrp span spanGrp speaker specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList sponsor  
 stage stamp state stdVals street stress string styleDefDecl subc subst substJoin  
 summary superEntry supplied support supportDesc surface surfaceGrp surname  
 surplus surrogates syll symbol table tag tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy tech teiCorpus  
 teiHeader term terrain text textClass textDesc textLang textNode textread then  
 time timeline title titlePage titlePart titleStmt tns trailer trait transpose tree triangle  
 typeDesc typeNote u unclear undo unicodeName usg vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel  
 vMerge vNot vRange val valDesc valItem valList value variantEncoding view vocal  
 w watermark when width wit witDetail witEnd witStart witness writing xr zone  
*Attributes* Attributes att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking  
 (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)  
 att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change)  
 att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)

**@xml:id** (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **xsd:ID**

*Note* The *xml:id* attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section 3.10. Reference Systems.

**@n** (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.text**

*Note* The value of this attribute is always understood to be a single token, even if it contains space or other punctuation characters, and need not be composed of numbers only. It is typically used to specify the numbering of chapters, sections, list items, etc.; it may also be used in the specification of a standard reference system for the text.

**@xml:lang** (language) indicates the language of the element content using a ‘tag’ generated according to BCP 47.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.language**

**<p>** ... The consequences of  
 this rapid depopulation were the loss of the last  
**<foreign xml:lang="rap">ariki</foreign>** or chief  
 (Routledge 1920:205,210) and their connections to  
 ancestral territorial organization.**</p>**

*Note* The *xml:lang* value will be inherited from the immediately enclosing element, or from its parent, and so on up the document hierarchy. It is generally good practice to specify *xml:lang* at the highest appropriate level, noticing that a different default may be needed for the *teiHeader* from that needed for the associated resource element or elements, and that a single TEI document may contain texts in many

languages. The authoritative list of registered language subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at <http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry>. For a good general overview of the construction of language tags, see <http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/>, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see <http://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags>. The value used must conform with BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a `<language>` element with a matching value for its *ident* attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their (IETF) Internet Engineering Task Force definitions.

`@xml:base` provides a base URI reference with which applications can resolve relative URI references into absolute URI references.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.pointer`

```
<div type="bibl">
  <head>Bibliography</head>
  <listBibl xml:base="http://www.lib.ucdavis.edu/BWRP/
Works/">
    <bibl>
      <author>
        <name>Landon, Letitia Elizabeth</name>
      </author>
      <ref target="LandLVowOf.sgm">
        <title>The Vow of the Peacock</title>
      </ref>
    </bibl>
    <bibl>
      <author>
        <name>Compton, Margaret Clephane</name>
      </author>
      <ref target="NortMIrene.sgm">
        <title>Irene, a Poem in Six Cantos</title>
      </ref>
    </bibl>
    <bibl>
      <author>
        <name>Taylor, Jane</name>
      </author>
      <ref target="TaylJEssay.sgm">
        <title>Essays in Rhyme on Morals and Manners</title>
      </ref>
    </bibl>
  </listBibl>
</div>
```

`@xml:space` signals an intention about how white space should be managed by applications.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.enumerated`

*Legal values are:* **default** signals that the application's default white-space processing modes are acceptable

**preserve** indicates the intent that applications preserve all white space

*Note* The XML specification provides further guidance on the use of this attribute. Note that many parsers may not handle xml:space correctly.

**att.global.analytic** provides additional global attributes for associating specific analyses or interpretations with appropriate portions of a text. [17.3. Spans and Interpretations]

*Module analysis*

*Members* att.global[TEI ab abbr abstract accMat acquisition activity actor add addName addSpan additional additions addrLine address adminInfo affiliation age alt altGrp altIdent altIdentifier alternate am analytic anchor app appInfo application arc argument att attDef attList attRef author authority availability back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct bicond binary binaryObject binding bindingDesc birth bloc body broadcast byline c cRefPattern caesura calendar calendarDesc camera caption case castGroup castItem castList catDesc catRef catchwords category cb cell change channel char charDecl charName charProp choice cit citedRange cl classCode classDecl classRef classSpec classes climate closer code collation collection colloc colophon cond condition constitution constraint constraintSpec content corr correction correspAction correspContext correspDesc country creation custEvent custodialHist damage damageSpan datatype date dateline death decoDesc decoNote def default defaultVal del delSpan depth derivation desc dictScrap dim dimensions distinct distributor district div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain eLeaf eTree edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl education eg egXML elementRef elementSpec email emotion emph encodingDesc entry entryFree epigraph epilogue equipment equiv etym event ex exemplum expan experienceType explicit extent f fDecl fDescr fLib facsimile factuality faith figDesc figure fileDesc filiation finalRubric floatingText floruit foliation foreign forename forest form formula front fs fsConstraints fsDecl fsDescr fsdDecl fsdLink funder fvLib fw g gap gb gen genName genre geo geoDecl geogFeat geogName gi gloss glyph glyphName gram gramGrp graph graphic group handDesc handNote handNotes handShift head headItem headLabel height heraldry hi history hom hyph hyphenation iNode iType ident idno if iff imprimatur imprint incident incipit index institution interaction interp interpGrp interpretation item join joinGrp keywords kinesic l label lacunaEnd lacunaStart lang langKnowledge langKnown langUsage language layout layoutDesc lb lbl leaf lem lg licence line link linkGrp list listApp listBibl listChange listEvent listForest listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listPrefixDef listRef listRelation listTranspose listWit listener listenerStatus localName locale location locus locusGrp m macroRef macroSpec mapping material measure measureGrp media meeting memberOf mentioned metDecl metSym metamark milestone mod moduleRef moduleSpec monogr mood move msContents msDesc msIdentifier msItem msItemStruct msName msPart musicNotation name nameLink namespace nationality node normalization notatedMusic note notesStmt num number numeric nym oRef oVar objectDesc objectType occupation offset opener org orgName orig origDate origLanguage origPlace origin orth p pRef pVar particDesc pause pb pc per performance persName person personGrp phr physDesc place placeName population pos postBox postCode postscript precision prefixDef preparedness principal profileDesc projectDesc prologue pron provenance ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher punctuation purpose q quotation quote rdg rdgGrp re reader readerStatus readingExp readingExpDesc readingExpRef

recordHist recording recordingStmt redo ref refState refsDecl reg region relatedItem  
 relation remarks rendition repository residence resp respStmt respons restore retrace  
 revisionDesc rhyme role roleDesc roleName root row rs rubric s said salute  
 samplingDecl schemaSpec scriptDesc scriptNote scriptStmt seal sealDesc secFol seg  
 segmentation sense sequence series seriesStmt set setting settingDesc settlement sex  
 shift sic signatures signed soCalled socecStatus sound source sourceDesc sourceDoc  
 sp spGrp span spanGrp speaker specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList sponsor  
 stage stamp state stdVals street stress string styleDefDecl subc subst substJoin  
 summary superEntry supplied support supportDesc surface surfaceGrp surname  
 surplus surrogates syll symbol table tag tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy tech teiCorpus  
 teiHeader term terrain text textClass textDesc textLang textNode textread then  
 time timeline title titlePage titlePart titleStmt tns trailer trait transpose tree  
 triangle typeDesc typeNote u unclear undo unicodeName usg vAlt vColl vDefault  
 vLabel vMerge vNot vRange val valDesc valItem valList value variantEncoding view  
 vocal w watermark when width wit witDetail witEnd witStart witness writing xr  
 zone] listener reader readerStatus textread

*Attributes* Attributes

**@ana** (analysis) indicates one or more elements containing interpretations of the element on which the *ana* attribute appears.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

*Note* When multiple values are given, they may reflect either multiple divergent interpretations of an ambiguous text, or multiple mutually consistent interpretations of the same passage in different contexts.

---

**att.global.change** supplies the *change* attribute, allowing its member elements to specify one or more states or revision campaigns with which they are associated.

*Module* transcr

*Members* att.global[TEI ab abbr abstract accMat acquisition activity actor add addName  
 addSpan additional additions addrLine address adminInfo affiliation age alt altGrp  
 altIdent altIdentifier alternate am analytic anchor app appInfo application arc  
 argument att attDef attList attRef author authority availability back bibl biblFull  
 biblScope biblStruct bicond binary binaryObject binding bindingDesc birth bloc  
 body broadcast byline c cRefPattern caesura calendar calendarDesc camera caption  
 case castGroup castItem castList catDesc catRef catchwords category cb cell change  
 channel char charDecl charName charProp choice cit citedRange cl classCode  
 classDecl classRef classSpec classes climate closer code collation collection colloc  
 colophon cond condition constitution constraint constraintSpec content corr  
 correction correspAction correspContext correspDesc country creation custEvent  
 custodialHist damage damageSpan datatype date dateline death decoDesc decoNote  
 def default defaultVal del delSpan depth derivation desc dictScrap dim dimensions  
 distinct distributor district div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 divGen docAuthor  
 docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain eLeaf eTree edition editionStmt  
 editor editorialDecl education eg egXML elementRef elementSpec email emotion  
 emph encodingDesc entry entryFree epigraph epilogue equipment equiv etym event  
 ex exemplum expan experienceType explicit extent f fDecl fDescr fLib facsimile  
 factuality faith figDesc figure fileDesc filiation finalRubric floatingText floruit  
 foliation foreign forename forest form formula front fs fsConstraints fsDecl fsDescr  
 fsdDecl fsdLink funder fvLib fw g gap gb gen genName genre geo geoDecl geogFeat

geogName gi gloss glyph glyphName gram gramGrp graph graphic group handDesc  
handNote handNotes handShift head headItem headLabel height heraldry hi history  
hom hyph hyphenation iNode iType ident idno if iff imprimatur imprint incident  
incipit index institution interaction interp interpGrp interpretation item join joinGrp  
keywords kinesic l label lacunaEnd lacunaStart lang langKnowledge langKnown  
langUsage language layout layoutDesc lb lbl leaf lem lg licence line link linkGrp list  
listApp listBibl listChange listEvent listForest listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace  
listPrefixDef listRef listRelation listTranspose listWit listener listenerStatus  
localName locale location locus locusGrp m macroRef macroSpec mapping material  
measure measureGrp media meeting memberOf mentioned metDecl metSym  
metamark milestone mod moduleRef moduleSpec monogr mood move msContents  
msDesc msIdentifier msItem msItemStruct msName msPart musicNotation name  
nameLink namespace nationality node normalization notatedMusic note notesStmt  
num number numeric nym oRef oVar objectDesc objectType occupation offset  
opener org orgName orig origDate origLanguage origPlace origin orth p pRef pVar  
particDesc pause pb pc per performance persName person personGrp phr physDesc  
place placeName population pos postBox postCode postscript precision prefixDef  
preparedness principal profileDesc projectDesc prologue pron provenance ptr  
pubPlace publicationStmt publisher punctuation purpose q quotation quote rdg  
rdgGrp re reader readerStatus readingExp readingExpDesc readingExpRef  
recordHist recording recordingStmt redo ref refState refsDecl reg region relatedItem  
relation remarks rendition repository residence resp respStmt respons restore retrace  
revisionDesc rhyme role roleDesc roleName root row rs rubric s said salute  
samplingDecl schemaSpec scriptDesc scriptNote scriptStmt seal sealDesc secFol seg  
segmentation sense sequence series seriesStmt set setting settingDesc settlement sex  
shift sic signatures signed soCalled socecStatus sound source sourceDesc sourceDoc  
sp spGrp span spanGrp speaker specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList sponsor  
stage stamp state stdVals street stress string styleDefDecl subc subst substJoin  
summary superEntry supplied support supportDesc surface surfaceGrp surname  
surplus surrogates syll symbol table tag tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy tech teiCorpus  
teiHeader term terrain text textClass textDesc textLang textNode textread then  
time timeline title titlePage titlePart titleStmt tns trailer trait transpose tree  
triangle typeDesc typeNote u unclear undo unicodeName usg vAlt vColl vDefault  
vLabel vMerge vNot vRange val valDesc valItem valList value variantEncoding view  
vocal w watermark when width wit witDetail witEnd witStart witness writing xr  
zone] listener reader readerStatus textread

#### *Attributes* Attributes

**@change** points to one or more <change> elements documenting a state or  
revision campaign to which the element bearing this attribute and its  
children have been assigned by the encoder.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

---

**att.global.facs** groups elements corresponding with all or part of an image, because  
they contain an alternative representation of it, typically but not necessarily a  
transcription of it. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles]

*Module* transcr

*Members* att.global[TEI ab abbr abstract accMat acquisition activity actor add addName  
addSpan additional additions addrLine address adminInfo affiliation age alt altGrp

altIdent altIdentifier alternate am analytic anchor app appInfo application arc  
argument att attDef attList attRef author authority availability back bibl biblFull  
biblScope biblStruct bicond binary binaryObject binding bindingDesc birth bloc  
body broadcast byline c cRefPattern caesura calendar calendarDesc camera caption  
case castGroup castItem castList catDesc catRef catchwords category cb cell change  
channel char charDecl charName charProp choice cit citedRange cl classCode  
classDecl classRef classSpec classes climate closer code collation collection colloc  
colophon cond condition constitution constraint constraintSpec content corr  
correction correspAction correspContext correspDesc country creation custEvent  
custodialHist damage damageSpan datatype date dateline death decoDesc decoNote  
def default defaultVal del delSpan depth derivation desc dictScrap dim dimensions  
distinct distributor district div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 divGen docAuthor  
docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain eLeaf eTree edition editionStmt  
editor editorialDecl education eg egXML elementRef elementSpec email emotion  
emph encodingDesc entry entryFree epigraph epilogue equipment equiv etym event  
ex exemplum expan experienceType explicit extent f fDecl fDescr fLib facsimile  
factuality faith figDesc figure fileDesc filiation finalRubric floatingText floruit  
foliation foreign forename forest form formula front fs fsConstraints fsDecl fsDescr  
fsdDecl fsdLink funder fvLib fw g gap gb gen genName genre geo geoDecl geogFeat  
geogName gi gloss glyph glyphName gram gramGrp graph graphic group handDesc  
handNote handNotes handShift head headItem headLabel height heraldry hi history  
hom hyph hyphenation iNode iType ident idno if iff imprimatur imprint incident  
incipit index institution interaction interp interpGrp interpretation item join joinGrp  
keywords kinesic l label lacunaEnd lacunaStart lang langKnowledge langKnown  
langUsage language layout layoutDesc lb lbl leaf lem lg licence line link linkGrp list  
listApp listBibl listChange listEvent listForest listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace  
listPrefixDef listRef listRelation listTranspose listWit listener listenerStatus  
localName locale location locus locusGrp m macroRef macroSpec mapping material  
measure measureGrp media meeting memberOf mentioned metDecl metSym  
metamark milestone mod moduleRef moduleSpec monogr mood move msContents  
msDesc msIdentifier msItem msItemStruct msName msPart musicNotation name  
nameLink namespace nationality node normalization notatedMusic note notesStmt  
num number numeric nym oRef oVar objectDesc objectType occupation offset  
opener org orgName orig origDate origLanguage origPlace origin orth p pRef pVar  
particDesc pause pb pc per performance persName person personGrp phr physDesc  
place placeName population pos postBox postCode postscript precision prefixDef  
preparedness principal profileDesc projectDesc prologue pron provenance ptr  
pubPlace publicationStmt publisher punctuation purpose q quotation quote rdg  
rdgGrp re reader readerStatus readingExp readingExpDesc readingExpRef  
recordHist recording recordingStmt redo ref refState refsDecl reg region relatedItem  
relation remarks rendition repository residence resp respStmt respons restore retrace  
revisionDesc rhyme role roleDesc roleName root row rs rubric s said salute  
samplingDecl schemaSpec scriptDesc scriptNote scriptStmt seal sealDesc secFol seg  
segmentation sense sequence series seriesStmt set setting settingDesc settlement sex  
shift sic signatures signed soCalled socecStatus sound source sourceDesc sourceDoc  
sp spGrp span spanGrp speaker specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList sponsor  
stage stamp state stdVals street stress string styleDefDecl subc subst substJoin  
summary superEntry supplied support supportDesc surface surfaceGrp surname  
surplus surrogates syll symbol table tag tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy tech teiCorpus  
teiHeader term terrain text textClass textDesc textLang textNode textread then  
time timeline title titlePage titlePart titleStmt tns trailer trait transpose tree

triangle typeDesc typeNote u unclear undo unicodeName usg vAlt vColl vDefault  
vLabel vMerge vNot vRange val valDesc valItem valList value variantEncoding view  
vocal w watermark when width wit witDetail witEnd witStart witness writing xr  
zone] listener reader readerStatus textread

*Attributes* Attributes

**@facs** (facsimile) points to all or part of an image which corresponds with the  
content of the element.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of **data.pointer** separated by whitespace

---

**att.global.linking** defines a set of attributes for hypertextual linking. [16. Linking,  
Segmentation, and Alignment]

*Module* linking

*Members* att.global[TEI ab abbr abstract accMat acquisition activity actor add addName  
addSpan additional additions addrLine address adminInfo affiliation age alt altGrp  
altIdent altIdentifier alternate am analytic anchor app appInfo application arc  
argument att attDef attList attRef author authority availability back bibl biblFull  
biblScope biblStruct bicond binary binaryObject binding bindingDesc birth bloc  
body broadcast byline c cRefPattern caesura calendar calendarDesc camera caption  
case castGroup castItem castList catDesc catRef catchwords category cb cell change  
channel char charDecl charName charProp choice cit citedRange cl classCode  
classDecl classRef classSpec classes climate closer code collation collection colloc  
colophon cond condition constitution constraint constraintSpec content corr  
correction correspAction correspContext correspDesc country creation custEvent  
custodialHist damage damageSpan datatype date dateline death decoDesc decoNote  
def default defaultVal del delSpan depth derivation desc dictScrap dim dimensions  
distinct distributor district div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 divGen docAuthor  
docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain eLeaf eTree edition editionStmnt  
editor editorialDecl education eg egXML elementRef elementSpec email emotion  
emph encodingDesc entry entryFree epigraph epilogue equipment equiv etym event  
ex exemplum expan experienceType explicit extent f fDecl fDescr fLib facsimile  
factuality faith figDesc figure fileDesc filiation finalRubric floatingText floruit  
foliation foreign forename forest form formula front fs fsConstraints fsDecl fsDescr  
fsdDecl fsdLink funder fvLib fw g gap gb gen genName genre geo geoDecl geogFeat  
geogName gi gloss glyph glyphName gram gramGrp graph graphic group handDesc  
handNote handNotes handShift head headItem headLabel height heraldry hi history  
hom hyph hyphenation iNode iType ident idno if iff imprimatur imprint incident  
incipit index institution interaction interp interpGrp interpretation item join joinGrp  
keywords kinesic l label lacunaEnd lacunaStart lang langKnowledge langKnown  
langUsage language layout layoutDesc lb lbl leaf lem lg licence line link linkGrp list  
listApp listBibl listChange listEvent listForest listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace  
listPrefixDef listRef listRelation listTranspose listWit listener listenerStatus  
localName locale location locus locusGrp m macroRef macroSpec mapping material  
measure measureGrp media meeting memberOf mentioned metDecl metSym  
metamark milestone mod moduleRef moduleSpec monogr mood move msContents  
msDesc msIdentifier msItem msItemStruct msName msPart musicNotation name  
nameLink namespace nationality node normalization notatedMusic note notesStmnt  
num number numeric nym oRef oVar objectDesc objectType occupation offset  
opener org orgName orig origDate origLanguage origPlace origin orth p pRef pVar

particDesc pause pb pc per performance persName person personGrp phr physDesc  
 place placeName population pos postBox postCode postscript precision prefixDef  
 preparedness principal profileDesc projectDesc prologue pron provenance ptr  
 pubPlace publicationStmt publisher punctuation purpose q quotation quote rdg  
 rdgGrp re reader readerStatus readingExp readingExpDesc readingExpRef  
 recordHist recording recordingStmt redo ref refState refsDecl reg region relatedItem  
 relation remarks rendition repository residence resp respStmt respons restore retrace  
 revisionDesc rhyme role roleDesc roleName root row rs rubric s said salute  
 samplingDecl schemaSpec scriptDesc scriptNote scriptStmt seal sealDesc secFol seg  
 segmentation sense sequence series seriesStmt set setting settingDesc settlement sex  
 shift sic signatures signed soCalled socecStatus sound source sourceDesc sourceDoc  
 sp spGrp span spanGrp speaker specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList sponsor  
 stage stamp state stdVals street stress string styleDefDecl subc subst substJoin  
 summary superEntry supplied support supportDesc surface surfaceGrp surname  
 surplus surrogates syll symbol table tag tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy tech teiCorpus  
 teiHeader term terrain text textClass textDesc textLang textNode textread then  
 time timeline title titlePage titlePart titleStmt tns trailer trait transpose tree  
 triangle typeDesc typeNote u unclear undo unicodeName usg vAlt vColl vDefault  
 vLabel vMerge vNot vRange val valDesc valItem valList value variantEncoding view  
 vocal w watermark when width wit witDetail witEnd witStart witness writing xr  
 zone] listener reader readerStatus textread

*Attributes* Attributes

**@corresp** (corresponds) points to elements that correspond to the current element in some way.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

```

<group>
  <text xml:id="t1-g1-t1"
    xml:lang="mi">
    <body xml:id="t1-g1-t1-body1">
      <div type="chapter">
        <head>He Whakamaramatanga mo te Ture Hoko, Riihi hoki, i
nga Whenua Maori, 1876.</head>
        <p>...</p>
      </div>
    </body>
  </text>
  <text xml:id="t1-g1-t2"
    xml:lang="en">
    <body corresp="#t1-g1-t1-body1"
      xml:id="t1-g1-t2-body1">
      <div type="chapter">
        <head>An Act to regulate the Sale, Letting, and Disposal
of Native Lands, 1876.</head>
        <p>...</p>
      </div>
    </body>
  </text>
</group>

```

In this example a `<group>` contains two `<text>`s, each containing the same document in a different language. The correspondence is indicated using *corresp*. The language is indicated using *xml:lang*, whose value is inherited; both the tag with the *corresp* and the tag pointed to by the *corresp* inherit the value from their immediate parent.

```
<!-- In a placeography --><place corresp="#LOND2 #GENI1"
```



```

    xml:id="LOND1">
      <placeName>London</placeName>
      <desc>The city of London...</desc>
    </place>
    <!-- In a literary personography -->
    <person corresp="#LOND1 #GENI1"
      xml:id="LOND2">
      <persName type="lit">London</persName>
      <note>
        <p>Allegorical character representing the city of
      <ref target="LOND1.xml">London</ref>.
        </p>
      </note>
    </person>
    <person corresp="#LOND1 #LOND2"
      xml:id="GENI1">
      <persName type="lit">London's Genius</persName>
      <note>
        <p>Personification of London's genius. Appears as an
          allegorical character in mayoral shows.
        </p>
      </note>
    </person>
  In this example, a <place> element containing
  information about the city of London is linked with two
  <person> elements in a literary personography. This
  correspondence represents a slightly looser relationship
  than the one in the preceding example; there is no sense in
  which an allegorical character could be substituted for the
  physical city, or vice versa, but there is obviously a
  correspondence between them.

```

**@synch** (synchronous) points to elements that are synchronous with the current element.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

**@sameAs** points to an element that is the same as the current element.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.pointer`

**@copyOf** points to an element of which the current element is a copy.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.pointer`

*Note* Any content of the current element should be ignored. Its true content is that of the element being pointed at.

**@next** points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.pointer`

**@prev** (previous) points to the previous element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.pointer`

**@exclude** points to elements that are in exclusive alternation with the current element.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

**@select** selects one or more alternants; if one alternant is selected, the ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as resolved. If more than one alternant is selected, the degree of ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as reduced by the number of alternants not selected.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

*Note* This attribute should be placed on an element which is superordinate to all of the alternants from which the selection is being made.

---

**att.global.rendition** provides rendering attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [1.3.1.1.3. Rendition Indicators]

*Module* `tei`

*Members* `att.global`[`TEI` `ab` `abbr` `abstract` `accMat` `acquisition` `activity` `actor` `add` `addName` `addSpan` `additional` `additions` `addrLine` `address` `adminInfo` `affiliation` `age` `alt` `altGrp` `altIdent` `altIdentifier` `alternate` `am` `analytic` `anchor` `app` `appInfo` `application` `arc` `argument` `att` `attDef` `attList` `attRef` `author` `authority` `availability` `back` `bibl` `biblFull` `biblScope` `biblStruct` `bicond` `binary` `binaryObject` `binding` `bindingDesc` `birth` `bloc` `body` `broadcast` `byline` `c` `cRefPattern` `caesura` `calendar` `calendarDesc` `camera` `caption` `case` `castGroup` `castItem` `castList` `catDesc` `catRef` `catchwords` `category` `cb` `cell` `change` `channel` `char` `charDecl` `charName` `charProp` `choice` `cit` `citedRange` `cl` `classCode` `classDecl` `classRef` `classSpec` `classes` `climate` `closer` `code` `collation` `collection` `colloc` `colophon` `cond` `condition` `constitution` `constraint` `constraintSpec` `content` `corr` `correction` `correspAction` `correspContext` `correspDesc` `country` `creation` `custEvent` `custodialHist` `damage` `damageSpan` `datatype` `date` `dateline` `death` `decoDesc` `decoNote` `def` `default` `defaultVal` `del` `delSpan` `depth` `derivation` `desc` `dictScrap` `dim` `dimensions` `distinct` `distributor` `district` `div` `div1` `div2` `div3` `div4` `div5` `div6` `div7` `divGen` `docAuthor` `docDate` `docEdition` `docImprint` `docTitle` `domain` `eLeaf` `eTree` `edition` `editionStmnt` `editor` `editorialDecl` `education` `eg` `egXML` `elementRef` `elementSpec` `email` `emotion` `emph` `encodingDesc` `entry` `entryFree` `epigraph` `epilogue` `equipment` `equiv` `etym` `event` `ex` `exemplum` `expan` `experienceType` `explicit` `extent` `f` `fDecl` `fDescr` `fLib` `facsimile` `factuality` `faith` `figDesc` `figure` `fileDesc` `filiation` `finalRubric` `floatingText` `floruit` `foliation` `foreign` `forename` `forest` `form` `formula` `front` `fs` `fsConstraints` `fsDecl` `fsDescr` `fsdDecl` `fsdLink` `funder` `fvLib` `fw` `g` `gap` `gb` `gen` `genName` `genre` `geo` `geoDecl` `geogFeat` `geogName` `gi` `gloss` `glyph` `glyphName` `gram` `gramGrp` `graph` `graphic` `group` `handDesc` `handNote` `handNotes` `handShift` `head` `headItem` `headLabel` `height` `heraldry` `hi` `history` `hom` `hyph` `hyphenation` `iNode` `iType` `ident` `idno` `if` `iff` `imprimatur` `imprint` `incident` `incipit` `index` `institution` `interaction` `interp` `interpGrp` `interpretation` `item` `join` `joinGrp` `keywords` `kinesic` `l` `label` `lacunaEnd` `lacunaStart` `lang` `langKnowledge` `langKnown` `langUsage` `language` `layout` `layoutDesc` `lb` `lbl` `leaf` `lem` `lg` `licence` `line` `link` `linkGrp` `list` `listApp` `listBibl` `listChange` `listEvent` `listForest` `listNym` `listOrg` `listPerson` `listPlace` `listPrefixDef` `listRef` `listRelation` `listTranspose` `listWit` `listener` `listenerStatus` `localName` `locale` `location` `locus` `locusGrp` `m` `macroRef` `macroSpec` `mapping` `material` `measure` `measureGrp` `media` `meeting` `memberOf` `mentioned` `metDecl` `metSym` `metamark` `milestone` `mod` `moduleRef` `moduleSpec` `monogr` `mood` `move` `msContents` `msDesc` `msIdentifier` `msItem` `msItemStruct` `msName` `msPart` `musicNotation` `name` `nameLink` `namespace` `nationality` `node` `normalization` `notatedMusic` `note` `notesStmnt` `num` `number` `numeric` `nym` `oRef` `oVar` `objectDesc` `objectType` `occupation` `offset` `opener` `org` `orgName` `orig` `origDate` `origLanguage` `origPlace` `origin` `orth` `p` `pRef` `pVar`]

particDesc pause pb pc per performance persName person personGrp phr physDesc  
 place placeName population pos postBox postCode postscript precision prefixDef  
 preparedness principal profileDesc projectDesc prologue pron provenance ptr  
 pubPlace publicationStmt publisher punctuation purpose q quotation quote rdg  
 rdgGrp re reader readerStatus readingExp readingExpDesc readingExpRef  
 recordHist recording recordingStmt redo ref refState refsDecl reg region relatedItem  
 relation remarks rendition repository residence resp respStmt respons restore retrace  
 revisionDesc rhyme role roleDesc roleName root row rs rubric s said salute  
 samplingDecl schemaSpec scriptDesc scriptNote scriptStmt seal sealDesc secFol seg  
 segmentation sense sequence series seriesStmt set setting settingDesc settlement sex  
 shift sic signatures signed soCalled socecStatus sound source sourceDesc sourceDoc  
 sp spGrp span spanGrp speaker specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList sponsor  
 stage stamp state stdVals street stress string styleDefDecl subc subst substJoin  
 summary superEntry supplied support supportDesc surface surfaceGrp surname  
 surplus surrogates syll symbol table tag tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy tech teiCorpus  
 teiHeader term terrain text textClass textDesc textLang textNode textread then  
 time timeline title titlePage titlePart titleStmt tns trailer trait transpose tree  
 triangle typeDesc typeNote u unclear undo unicodeName usg vAlt vColl vDefault  
 vLabel vMerge vNot vRange val valDesc valItem valList value variantEncoding view  
 vocal w watermark when width wit witDetail witEnd witStart witness writing xr  
 zone] listener reader readerStatus textread

#### Attributes Attributes

**@rend** (rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

```
<head rend="align(center) case(allcaps)">
  <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle,
  <lb/>On Her <lb/>
  <hi rend="case(mixed)">New Blazing-World</hi>.
</head>
```

*Note* These Guidelines make no binding recommendations for the values of the *rend* attribute; the characteristics of visual presentation vary too much from text to text and the decision to record or ignore individual characteristics varies too much from project to project. Some potentially useful conventions are noted from time to time at appropriate points in the Guidelines. The values of the *rend* attribute are a set of sequence-indeterminate individual tokens separated by whitespace.

**@style** contains an expression in some formal style definition language which defines the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.text`

```
<head style="text-align: center; font-variant: small-caps">
  <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On
  Her
  <lb/>
  <hi style="font-variant: normal">New Blazing-World</hi>.
</head>
```

*Note* Unlike the attribute values of *rend*, which uses whitespace as a separator, the *style* attribute may contain whitespace. This attribute is intended for recording inline stylistic information concerning the source, not any particular output. The formal language in which values for this

attribute are expressed may be specified using the `<styleDefDecl>` element in the TEI header.

**@rendition** points to a description of the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

```
<head rendition="#ac #sc">
  <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On
Her
<lb/>
  <hi rendition="#normal">New Blazing-World</hi>.
</head>
<!-- elsewhere... -->
<rendition scheme="css"
  xml:id="sc">font-variant: small-caps</rendition>
<rendition scheme="css"
  xml:id="normal">font-variant: normal</rendition>
<rendition scheme="css"
  xml:id="ac">text-align: center</rendition>
```

*Note* The *rendition* attribute is used in a very similar way to the *class* attribute defined for XHTML but with the important distinction that its function is to describe the appearance of the source text, not necessarily to determine how that text should be presented on screen or paper. Where both *rendition* and *rend* are supplied, the latter is understood to override or complement the former. Each URI provided should indicate a `<rendition>` element defining the intended rendition in terms of some appropriate style language, as indicated by the *scheme* attribute.

---

**att.global.responsibility** provides attributes indicating the agency responsible for some aspect of the text, the markup or something asserted by the markup, and the degree of certainty associated with it. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes 11.3.2.2. Hand, Responsibility, and Certainty Attributes 17.3. Spans and Interpretations 13.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents]

*Module* tei

*Members* att.global[TEI ab abbr abstract accMat acquisition activity actor add addName addSpan additional additions addrLine address adminInfo affiliation age alt altGrp altIdent altIdentifier alternate am analytic anchor app appInfo application arc argument att attDef attList attRef author authority availability back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct bicond binary binaryObject binding bindingDesc birth bloc body broadcast byline c cRefPattern caesura calendar calendarDesc camera caption case castGroup castItem castList catDesc catRef catchwords category cb cell change channel char charDecl charName charProp choice cit citedRange cl classCode classDecl classRef classSpec classes climate closer code collation collection colloc colophon cond condition constitution constraint constraintSpec content corr correction correspAction correspContext correspDesc country creation custEvent custodialHist damage damageSpan datatype date dateline death decoDesc decoNote def default defaultVal del delSpan depth derivation desc dictScrap dim dimensions distinct distributor district div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain eLeaf eTree edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl education eg egXML elementRef elementSpec email emotion emph encodingDesc entry entryFree epigraph epilogue equipment equiv etym event

ex exemplum expan experienceType explicit extent f fDecl fDescr fLib facsimile  
factuality faith figDesc figure fileDesc filiation finalRubric floatingText floruit  
foliation foreign forename forest form formula front fs fsConstraints fsDecl fsDescr  
fsdDecl fsdLink funder fvLib fw g gap gb gen genName genre geo geoDecl geogFeat  
geogName gi gloss glyph glyphName gram gramGrp graph graphic group handDesc  
handNote handNotes handShift head headItem headLabel height heraldry hi history  
hom hyph hyphenation iNode iType ident idno if iff imprimatur imprint incident  
incipit index institution interaction interp interpGrp interpretation item join joinGrp  
keywords kinesic l label lacunaEnd lacunaStart lang langKnowledge langKnown  
langUsage language layout layoutDesc lb lbl leaf lem lg licence line link linkGrp list  
listApp listBibl listChange listEvent listForest listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace  
listPrefixDef listRef listRelation listTranspose listWit listener listenerStatus  
localName locale location locus locusGrp m macroRef macroSpec mapping material  
measure measureGrp media meeting memberOf mentioned metDecl metSym  
metamark milestone mod moduleRef moduleSpec monogr mood move msContents  
msDesc msIdentifier msItem msItemStruct msName msPart musicNotation name  
nameLink namespace nationality node normalization notatedMusic note notesStmt  
num number numeric nym oRef oVar objectDesc objectType occupation offset  
opener org orgName orig origDate origLanguage origPlace origin orth p pRef pVar  
particDesc pause pb pc per performance persName person personGrp phr physDesc  
place placeName population pos postBox postCode postscript precision prefixDef  
preparedness principal profileDesc projectDesc prologue pron provenance ptr  
pubPlace publicationStmt publisher punctuation purpose q quotation quote rdg  
rdgGrp re reader readerStatus readingExp readingExpDesc readingExpRef  
recordHist recording recordingStmt redo ref refState refsDecl reg region relatedItem  
relation remarks rendition repository residence resp respStmt respons restore retrace  
revisionDesc rhyme role roleDesc roleName root row rs rubric s said salute  
samplingDecl schemaSpec scriptDesc scriptNote scriptStmt seal sealDesc secFol seg  
segmentation sense sequence series seriesStmt set setting settingDesc settlement sex  
shift sic signatures signed soCalled socecStatus sound source sourceDesc sourceDoc  
sp spGrp span spanGrp speaker specDesc specGrp specGrpRef specList sponsor  
stage stamp state stdVals street stress string styleDefDecl subc subst substJoin  
summary superEntry supplied support supportDesc surface surfaceGrp surname  
surplus surrogates syll symbol table tag tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy tech teiCorpus  
teiHeader term terrain text textClass textDesc textLang textNode textread then  
time timeline title titlePage titlePart titleStmt tns trailer trait transpose tree  
triangle typeDesc typeNote u unclear undo unicodeName usg vAlt vColl vDefault  
vLabel vMerge vNot vRange val valDesc valItem valList value variantEncoding view  
vocal w watermark when width wit witDetail witEnd witStart witness writing xr  
zone] listener reader readerStatus textread

#### *Attributes* Attributes

**@cert** (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.certainty

**@resp** (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

*Note* Note that a simple *resp* pointing to a person or organization is

likely to be somewhat ambiguous with regard to the nature of the responsibility. For this reason, we recommend that *resp* be used to point not to an agent (<person> or <org>) but to a <respStmt>, <author>, <editor> or similar element which clarifies the exact role played by the agent. Pointing to multiple <respStmt>s allows the encoder to specify clearly each of the roles played in part of a TEI file (creating, transcribing, encoding, editing, proofing etc.).

*Example*

```
Blessed are the
<choice>
  <sic>placemakers</sic>
  <corr cert="high" resp="#editor">peacemakers</corr>
</choice>: for they shall be called the children of God.
```

*Example*

```
<!-- in the <text> ... --><lg>
<!-- ... -->
  <l>Punkes, Panders, bafe extortionizing
    sla<choice>
      <sic>n</sic>
      <corr resp="#JENS1_transcriber">u</corr>
    </choice>es,</l>
<!-- ... -->
</lg>
<!-- in the <teiHeader> ... -->
<!-- ... -->
<respStmt xml:id="JENS1_transcriber">
  <resp when="2014">Transcriber</resp>
  <name>Janelle Jenstad</name>
</respStmt>
```

---

**att.handFeatures** provides attributes describing aspects of the hand in which a manuscript is written. [11.3.2.1. Document Hands]

*Module* tei

*Members* handNote handShift scriptNote typeNote

*Attributes* Attributes

**@scribe** gives a name or other identifier for the scribe believed to be responsible for this hand.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.name

**@scribeRef** points to a full description of the scribe concerned, typically supplied by a <person> element elsewhere in the description.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

**@script** characterizes the particular script or writing style used by this hand, for example *secretary*, *copperplate*, *Chancery*, *Italian*, etc.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of data.name separated by whitespace

**@scriptRef** points to a full description of the script or writing style used by this hand, typically supplied by a <scriptNote> element elsewhere in the description.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace  
**@medium** describes the tint or type of ink, e.g. *brown*, or other writing medium,  
e.g. *pencil*  
*Status* Optional  
*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.enumerated` separated by  
whitespace  
**@scope** specifies how widely this hand is used in the manuscript.  
*Status* Optional  
*Datatype* `data.enumerated`  
*Legal values are:* **sole** only this hand is used throughout the manuscript  
**major** this hand is used through most of the manuscript  
**minor** this hand is used occasionally in the manuscript  
*Note* Usually either *script* or *scriptRef*, and similarly, either *scribe* or *scribeRef*, will be  
supplied.

---

**att.identified** provides the identifying attribute for elements which can be subsequently  
referenced by means of a *key* attribute.

*Module* tagdocs

*Members* attDef classSpec constraintSpec elementSpec macroSpec moduleSpec  
schemaSpec

*Attributes* Attributes att.combinable (*@mode*) (att.deprecated (*@validUntil*))

**@ident** supplies the identifier by which this element may be referenced.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* `data.name`

**@predeclare** says whether this object should be predeclared in the *tei*  
infrastructure module.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.truthValue`

*Default* false

**@module** supplies a name for the module in which this object is to be declared.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.xmlName`

**@status** indicates the current status of the object identified with respect to the  
current version of the TEI Guidelines.

*Deprecated* will be removed on 2015-06-19

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.enumerated`

*Legal values are:* **deprecated** the item is not recommended for use,  
and may be withdrawn at a future release.

**unstable** the item is new and still under review.

**changed** the item has changed significantly since the preceding  
version.

**stable** the item has not recently changed and is not expected to do  
so except for correction of any errors.[Default]

*Schematron* <s:rule context="tei:elementSpec[@module]|tei:classSpec[@module]"

```

tei:macroSpec[@module]"> <s:assert test=" (not(ancestor::tei:schemaSpec |
ancestor::tei:TEI | ancestor::tei:teiCorpus)) or (not(@module) or (not(//
tei:moduleSpec) and not(//tei:moduleRef)) or (//tei:moduleSpec[@ident = current
()/@module]) or (//tei:moduleRef[@key = current()/@module])) "> Specification
<s:value-of select="@ident"/>: the value of the module attribute
("<s:value-of select="@module"/>") should correspond to an existing module, via a
moduleSpec or moduleRef</s:assert></s:rule>

```

---

**att.internetMedia** provides attributes for specifying the type of a computer resource using a standard taxonomy.

*Module* tei

*Members* att.media[binaryObject graphic] equiv ptr ref

*Attributes* Attributes

**@mimeType** (MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet mail extension (MIME) media type  
*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of **data.word** separated by whitespace

*Example* In this example *mimeType* is used to indicate that the URL points to a TEI XML file encoded in UTF-8.

```

<ref mimeType="application/tei+xml; charset=UTF-8"
target="http://sourceforge.net/p/tei/code/HEAD/tree/trunk/P5/Source/
guidelines-en.xml"/>

```

*Note* This attribute class provides an attribute for describing a computer resource, typically available over the internet, using a value taken from a standard taxonomy. At present only a single taxonomy is supported, the Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) Media Type system. This typology of media types is defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force in RFC 2046. The list of types is maintained by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA). The *mimeType* attribute must have a value taken from this list.

---

**att.interpLike** provides attributes for elements which represent a formal analysis or interpretation. [17.2. Global Attributes for Simple Analyses]

*Module* tei

*Members* interp interpGrp span spanGrp

*Attributes* Attributes att.source (*@source*)

**@type** indicates what kind of phenomenon is being noted in the passage.

*Status* Recommended

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Sample values include:* **image** identifies an image in the passage.

**character** identifies a character associated with the passage.

**theme** identifies a theme in the passage.

**allusion** identifies an allusion to another text.

**@inst** (instances) points to instances of the analysis or interpretation represented by the current element.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of **data.pointer** separated by whitespace



*Note* The current element should be an analytic one. The element pointed at should be a textual one.

---

**att.lexicographic** defines a set of global attributes available on elements in the base tag set for dictionaries. [9.2. The Structure of Dictionary Entries]

*Module* dictionaries

*Members* case colloc def entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number oRef oVar orth pRef pVar per pos pron re sense subc syll tns usg xr

*Attributes* Attributes att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)

**@expand** gives an expanded form of information presented more concisely in the dictionary

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* text

```
<gramGrp>
  <pos>n</pos>
</gramGrp>
```

**@norm** (normalized) gives a normalized form of information given by the source text in a non-normalized form

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.text

```
<gramGrp>
  <pos norm="noun">n</pos>
</gramGrp>
```

**@split** gives the list of split values for a merged form

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.text

**@value** gives a value which lacks any realization in the printed source text.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.text

**@orig** (original) gives the original string or is the empty string when the element does not appear in the source text.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.text

**@location** indicates an <anchor/> element typically elsewhere in the document, but possibly in another document, which is the original location of this component.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

**@mergedIn** gives a reference to another element, where the original appears as a merged form.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

**@opt** (optional) indicates whether the element is optional or not

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.truthValue

*Default* false

**att.measurement** provides attributes to represent a regularized or normalized measurement.

*Module* `tei`

*Members* `measure measureGrp`

*Attributes* `Attributes`

**@unit** indicates the units used for the measurement, usually using the standard symbol for the desired units.

*Status* `Optional`

*Datatype* `data.enumerated`

*Suggested values include:* **m** (metre) SI base unit of length

**kg** (kilogram) SI base unit of mass

**s** (second) SI base unit of time

**Hz** (hertz) SI unit of frequency

**Pa** (pascal) SI unit of pressure or stress

**Ω** (ohm) SI unit of electric resistance

**L** (litre) 1 dm<sup>3</sup>

**t** (tonne) 10<sup>3</sup> kg

**ha** (hectare) 1 hm<sup>2</sup>

**Å** (ångström) 10<sup>-10</sup> m

**mL** (millilitre)

**cm** (centimetre)

**dB** (decibel) see remarks, below

**kbit** (kilobit) 10<sup>3</sup> or 1000 bits

**Kibit** (kibibit) 2<sup>10</sup> or 1024 bits

**kB** (kilobyte) 10<sup>3</sup> or 1000 bytes

**KiB** (kibibyte) 2<sup>10</sup> or 1024 bytes

**MB** (megabyte) 10<sup>6</sup> or 1 000 000 bytes

**MiB** (mebibyte) 2<sup>20</sup> or 1 048 576 bytes

*Note* If the measurement being represented is not expressed in a particular unit, but rather is a number of discrete items, the unit count should be used, or the *unit* attribute may be left unspecified. Wherever appropriate, a recognized SI unit name should be used (see further

<http://www.bipm.org/en/publications/si-brochure/>;  
<http://physics.nist.gov/cuu/Units/>). The list above is indicative rather than exhaustive.

**@quantity** specifies the number of the specified units that comprise the measurement

*Status* `Optional`

*Datatype* `data.numeric`

**@commodity** indicates the substance that is being measured

*Status* `Optional`

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

*Note* In general, when the commodity is made of discrete entities, the

plural form should be used, even when the measurement is of only one of them.

*Note* This attribute class provides a triplet of attributes that may be used either to regularize the values of the measurement being encoded, or to normalize them with respect to a standard measurement system.

```
<l>So weren't you gonna buy <measure commodity="ice cream"
  quantity="0.5" unit="gal">half
  a gallon</measure>, baby</l>
<l>So won't you go and buy <measure commodity="ice cream"
  quantity="1.893" unit="L">half
  a gallon</measure>, baby?</l>
```

*Note* The unit should normally be named using the standard abbreviation for an SI unit (see further <http://www.bipm.org/en/publications/si-brochure/>; <http://physics.nist.gov/cuu/Units/>). However, encoders may also specify measurements using informally defined units such as lines or characters.

---

**att.media** provides attributes for specifying display and related properties of external media.

*Module* `tei`

*Members* `binaryObject graphic`

*Attributes* `Attributes att.internetMedia (@mimeType)`

**@width** Where the media are displayed, indicates the display width

*Status* `Optional`

*Datatype* `data.outputMeasurement`

**@height** Where the media are displayed, indicates the display height

*Status* `Optional`

*Datatype* `data.outputMeasurement`

**@scale** Where the media are displayed, indicates a scale factor to be applied when generating the desired display size

*Status* `Optional`

*Datatype* `data.numeric`

---

**att.metrical** defines a set of attributes which certain elements may use to represent metrical information. [6.4. Rhyme and Metrical Analysis]

*Module* `verse`

*Members* `att.divLike[div div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 lg] att.segLike[c cl m pc phr s seg w] l`

*Attributes* `Attributes`

**@met** (metrical structure, conventional) contains a user-specified encoding for the conventional metrical structure of the element.

*Status* `Recommended`

*Datatype* `token`

*Note* The pattern may be specified by means of either a standard term for the kind of metrical unit (e.g. *hexameter*) or an encoded representation for the metrical pattern (e.g. *+---+--+---*). In either case, the notation used should be documented by a `<metDecl>` element within the `<encodingDesc>` of the associated

header. Where this attribute is not specified, the metrical pattern for the element concerned is understood to be inherited from its parent.

**@real** (metrical structure, realized) contains a user-specified encoding for the actual realization of the conventional metrical structure applicable to the element.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* token

*Note* The pattern may be specified by means of either a standard term for the kind of metrical unit (e.g. *hexameter*) or an encoded representation for the metrical pattern (e.g. *+---+---+---+---*). In either case, the notation used should be documented by a `<metDecl>` element within the `<encodingDesc>` of the associated header. Where this attribute is not specified, the metrical realization for the element concerned is understood to be identical to that specified or implied for the *met* attribute.

**@rhyme** (rhyme scheme) specifies the rhyme scheme applicable to a group of verse lines.

*Status* Recommended

*Datatype* token

*Note* By default, the rhyme scheme is expressed as a string of alphabetic characters each corresponding with a rhyming line. Any non-rhyming lines should be represented by a hyphen or an X. Alternative notations may be defined as for *met* by use of the `<metDecl>` element in the TEI header. When the default notation is used, it does not make sense to specify this attribute on any unit smaller than a line. Nor does the default notation provide any way to record internal rhyme, or to specify non-conventional rhyming practice. These extensions would require user-defined alternative notations.

---

**att.milestoneUnit** provides an attribute to indicate the type of section which is changing at a specific milestone. [3.10.3. Milestone Elements 2.3.6.3. Milestone Method 2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration]

*Module* core

*Members* milestone refState

*Attributes* Attributes

**@unit** provides a conventional name for the kind of section changing at this milestone.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Suggested values include:* **page** physical page breaks (synonymous with the `<pb/>` element).

**column** column breaks.

**line** line breaks (synonymous with the `<lb/>` element).

**book** any units termed book, liber, etc.

**poem** individual poems in a collection.

**canto** cantos or other major sections of a poem.

**speaker** changes of speaker or narrator.

**stanza** stanzas within a poem, book, or canto.

**act** acts within a play.

**scene** scenes within a play or act.

**section** sections of any kind.

**absent** passages not present in the reference edition.

**unnumbered** passages present in the text, but not to be included  
as part of the reference.

```
<milestone ed="La"  
  n="23"  
  unit="Dreissiger"/>  
... <milestone ed="AV"  
  n="24"  
  unit="verse"/> ...
```

*Note* If the milestone marks the beginning of a piece of text not present in the reference edition, the special value *absent* may be used as the value of *unit*. The normal interpretation is that the reference edition does not contain the text which follows, until the next <milestone/> tag for the edition in question is encountered. In addition to the values suggested, other terms may be appropriate (e.g. *Stephanus* for the Stephanus numbers in Plato).

---

**att.msExcerpt** (manuscript excerpt) provides attributes used to describe excerpts from a manuscript placed in a description thereof. [10.6. Intellectual Content]

*Module* msdescription

*Members* explicit incipit msContents msItem msItemStruct quote

*Attributes* Attributes

**@defective** indicates whether the passage being quoted is defective, i.e. incomplete through loss or damage.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.xTruthValue

*Default* false

*Note* In the case of an incipit, indicates whether the incipit as given is defective, i.e. the first words of the text as preserved, as opposed to the first words of the work itself. In the case of an explicit, indicates whether the explicit as given is defective, i.e. the final words of the text as preserved, as opposed to what the closing words would have been had the text of the work been whole.

---

**att.namespaceable** provides an attribute indicating the target namespace for an object being created

*Module* tagdocs

*Members* elementSpec schemaSpec

*Attributes* Attributes

**@ns** (namespace) specifies the namespace to which this element belongs

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.namespace

*Default* <http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0>

**att.naming** provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc. [3.5.1. Referring Strings 13.3.5. Names and Nyms]

*Module* `tei`

*Members* `att.personal`[`addName` `forename` `genName` `name` `orgName` `persName` `placeName` `reader` `roleName` `surname`] `affiliation` `author` `birth` `bloc` `climate` `collection` `country` `death` `district` `editor` `education` `event` `geogFeat` `geogName` `institution` `nationality` `occupation` `offset` `origPlace` `population` `pubPlace` `reader` `region` `repository` `residence` `rs` `settlement` `socecStatus` `state` `terrain` `trait`

*Attributes* `Attributes att.canonical` (`@key`, `@ref`)

`@role` may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name in the form of a set of whitespace-separated values, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.enumerated` separated by whitespace

`@nymRef` (reference to the canonical name) provides a means of locating the canonical form (*nym*) of the names associated with the object named by the element bearing it.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

*Note* The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name is associated with several distinct canonical names.

---

**att.patternReplacement** provides attributes for regular-expression matching and replacement. [16.2.3. Using Abbreviated Pointers 2.3.6.3. Milestone Method 2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration 2.3.6.2. Search-and-Replace Method]

*Module* `header`

*Members* `cRefPattern` `prefixDef`

*Attributes* `Attributes`

`@matchPattern` specifies a regular expression against which the values of other attributes can be matched.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* `data.pattern`

*Note* The syntax used should follow that defined by W3C XPath syntax. Note that parenthesized groups are used not only for establishing order of precedence and atoms for quantification, but also for creating subpatterns to be referenced by the *replacementPattern* attribute.

`@replacementPattern` specifies a ‘replacement pattern’, that is, the skeleton of a relative or absolute URI containing references to groups in the *matchPattern* which, once subpattern substitution has been performed, complete the URI.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* `data.replacement`

*Note* The strings *\$1*, *\$2* etc. are references to the corresponding group in the regular expression specified by *matchPattern* (counting open parenthesis, left to right). Processors are expected to replace them with whatever matched the corresponding group in the regular expression. If a digit preceded by a dollar sign is needed in the actual replacement pattern (as opposed to being used as a back reference), the dollar sign must be written as *%24*.

---

**att.personal** (attributes for components of names usually, but not necessarily, personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a name usually, but not necessarily, a personal name. [13.2.1. Personal Names]

*Module* tei

*Members* addName forename genName name orgName persName placeName reader roleName surname

*Attributes* Attributes att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*))

**@full** indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Legal values are:* **yes** the name component is spelled out in full.  
[Default]

**abb** (abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated form.

**init** (initial letter) the name component is indicated only by one initial.

**@sort** specifies the sort order of the name component in relation to others within the name.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.count

---

**att.placement** provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears. [3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions 11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions]

*Module* tei

*Members* add addSpan figure fw label metamark notatedMusic note stage witDetail

*Attributes* Attributes

**@place** specifies where this item is placed

*Status* Recommended

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of data.enumerated separated by whitespace

*Suggested values include:* **below** below the line

**bottom** at the foot of the page

**margin** in the margin (left, right, or both)

**top** at the top of the page

**opposite** on the opposite, i.e. facing, page

**overleaf** on the other side of the leaf  
**above** above the line  
**end** at the end of e.g. chapter or volume.  
**inline** within the body of the text.  
**inspace** in a predefined space, for example left by an earlier scribe.  
`<add place="margin">[An addition written in the margin]`  
`</add>`  
`<add place="bottom opposite">[An addition written at the`  
`foot of the current page and also on the facing page]</add>`  
`<note place="bottom">Ibid, p.7</note>`

---

**att.pointing** defines a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references. [1.3.1.1.2. Language Indicators 3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References]

*Module* `tei`

*Members* `att.pointing.group[altGrp joinGrp linkGrp]` `calendar` `catRef` `citedRange` `gloss` `join` `licence` `link` `locus` `note` `oRef` `oVar` `pRef` `pVar` `ptr` `ref` `span` `substJoin` `term` `witDetail`

*Attributes* `Attributes`

**@targetLang** specifies the language of the content to be found at the destination referenced by *target*, using a ‘language tag’ generated according to BCP 47.

*Status* `Optional`

*Datatype* `data.language`

*Schematron* `<sch:rule context="tei:*[not(self::tei:schemaSpec)]`  
`[@targetLang]"> <sch:assert test="count(@target)">@targetLang`  
`can only be used if @target is specified.</sch:assert></sch:rule>`

```
<linkGrp xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1-linkGrp">
  <ptr target="pol/UDHR/text.xml#pol_txt_1-head"
    targetLang="pl"
    type="tuv"
    xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.1-ptr"/>
  <ptr target="sw/UDHR/text.xml#swh_txt_1-head"
    targetLang="sw"
    type="tuv"
    xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.2-ptr"/>
</linkGrp>
```

In the example above, the `<linkGrp>` combines pointers at parallel fragments of the *Universal Declaration of Human Rights*: one of them is in Polish, the other in Swahili.

*Note* The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with `x-` or contains `-x-`), a `<language>` element with a matching value for its *ident* attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their ( IETF) Internet Engineering Task Force definitions.

**@target** specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References

*Status* `Optional`

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

*Note* One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no



whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. `TEI%20Consortium`.

**@evaluate** specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.enumerated`

*Legal values are:* **all** if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a pointer.

**one** if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then its target (whether a pointer or not) is taken as the target of this pointer.

**none** no further evaluation of targets is carried out beyond that needed to find the element specified in the pointer's target.

*Note* If no value is given, the application program is responsible for deciding (possibly on the basis of user input) how far to trace a chain of pointers.

---

**att.pointing.group** defines a set of attributes common to all elements which enclose groups of pointer elements. [16. Linking, Segmentation, and Alignment]

*Module* tei

*Members* altGrp joinGrp linkGrp

*Attributes* Attributes att.pointing (*@targetLang*, *@target*, *@evaluate*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

**@domains** optionally specifies the identifiers of the elements within which all elements indicated by the contents of this element lie.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 2– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

*Note* If this attribute is supplied every element specified as a target must be contained within the element or elements named by it. An application may choose whether or not to report failures to satisfy this constraint as errors, but may not access an element of the right identifier but in the wrong context. If this attribute is not supplied, then target elements may appear anywhere within the target document.

**@targFunc** (target function) describes the function of each of the values of the *target* attribute of the enclosed `<link/>`, `<join>`, or `<alt/>` tags.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 2– occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

*Note* The number of separate values must match the number of values in the *target* attribute in the enclosed `<link/>`, `<join>`, or `<alt/>` tags (an intermediate `<ptr/>` element may be needed to accomplish this). It should also match the number of values in the *domains* attribute, of the current element, if one has been specified.

---

**att.ranging** provides attributes for describing numerical ranges.

*Module* tei

*Members* att.dimensions[att.damaged[damage damageSpan] att.editLike  
[att.transcriptional[add addSpan del delSpan mod redo restore retrace subst  
substJoin undo] affiliation age am birth climate corr date death education event ex  
expan faith floruit gap geogFeat geogName langKnowledge langKnown listener  
location name nationality occupation offset org orgName origDate origPlace origin  
persName person place placeName population reader reg relation residence sex  
socecStatus state supplied surplus terrain textread time trait unclear] depth dim  
dimensions height listener reader space textread width] listener num precision reader  
textread

*Attributes* Attributes

**@atLeast** gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.numeric`

**@atMost** gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.numeric`

**@min** where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range,  
supplies the minimum value observed.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.numeric`

**@max** where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range,  
supplies the maximum value observed.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.numeric`

**@confidence** specifies the degree of statistical confidence (between zero and one)  
that a value falls within the range specified by *min* and *max*, or the  
proportion of observed values that fall within that range.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.probability`

*Example*

```
The MS. was lost in transmission by mail from <del rend="overstrike">
<gap atLeast="1" atMost="2"
  extent="one or two letters" reason="illegible" unit="chars"/>
</del> Philadelphia to the Graphic office, New York.
```

---

**att.rdgPart** attributes for elements which mark the beginning or ending of a fragmentary  
manuscript or other witness. [12.1.5. Fragmentary Witnesses]

*Module* textcrit

*Members* lacunaEnd lacunaStart wit witEnd witStart

*Attributes* Attributes

**@wit** (witness or witnesses) contains a space-delimited list of one or more sigla  
indicating the witnesses to this reading beginning or ending at this point.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

*Note* These elements may appear anywhere within the elements <lem> and <rdg>, and also within any of their constituent elements.

---

**att.readFrom** groups specification elements which derive components from some external source.

*Module* tei

*Members* classRef elementRef macroRef moduleRef schemaSpec

*Attributes* Attributes

**@source** specifies the source from which declarations and definitions for the components of the object being defined may be obtained.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

*Note* The context indicated must provide a set of TEI-conformant specifications in a form directly usable by an ODD processor. By default, this will be the location of the current release of the TEI Guidelines. The source may be specified in the form of a private URI, for which the form recommended is **tei:x.y.z**, where **x.y.z** indicates the version number, e.g. **tei:1.5.1** for 1.5.1 release of TEI P5 or (as a special case) **tei:current** for whatever is the latest release.

---

**att.repeatable** supplies attributes for the elements which define component parts of a content model.

*Module* tagdocs

*Members* alternate classRef elementRef sequence

*Attributes* Attributes

**@context** supplies an XPath identifying a context within which this component of a content model must be found

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* text

**@minOccurs** (minimum number of occurrences) indicates the smallest number of times this component may occur.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.count

*Default* 1

**@maxOccurs** (maximum number of occurrences) indicates the largest number of times this component may occur.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.count | "unbounded"

*Default* 1

---

**att.resourced** provides attributes by which a resource (such as an externally held media file) may be located.

*Module* tei

*Members* graphic media

*Attributes* Attributes

**@url** (uniform resource locator) specifies the URL from which the media concerned may be obtained.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* data.pointer

---

**att.scoping** provides attributes for selecting particular elements within a document by means of XPath.

*Module* tei

*Members* certainty precision respons

*Attributes* Attributes

**@target** points at one or several elements or sets of elements by means of one or more data pointers, using the URI syntax.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

```
Elizabeth went
to <persName xml:id="ESSEX">Essex</persName>
<certainty degree="0.6"
  locus="name"
  target="#ESSEX"/>
```

*Note* If more than one identifier is given, the implication is that all elements (or nodesets) are intended. The *match* attribute may also be used as a means of identifying groups of elements.

**@match** supplies an arbitrary XPath expression using the syntax defined in XSLT2 which identifies a set of nodes, selected within the context identified by the *target* attribute if this is supplied, or within the context of the element bearing this attribute if it is not.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* text

```
<gap reason="cancelled">
  <certainty cert="low"
    locus="value"
    match="@reason"/>
</gap>
```

*Note* The expression of certainty applies to the nodeset identified by the value of the *target* attribute, possibly modified additionally by the value of the *match* attribute. If neither attribute is present, the expression of certainty applies to the context of the *<certainty>* element itself, i.e. its parent element. Note that the value of the *target* attribute may include an XPointer expression including an XPath expression (see 16.2.4. TEI XPointer Schemes).

---

**att.segLike** provides attributes for elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]

*Module* tei

*Members* c cl m pc phr s seg w

*Attributes* Attributes att.metrical (@met, @real, @rhyme) att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat) att.fragmentable (@part)

*@function* characterizes the function of the segment.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Note* Attribute values will often vary depending on the type of element to which they are attached. For example, a <cl>, may take values such as coordinate, subject, adverbial etc. For a <phr>, such values as subject, predicate etc. may be more appropriate. Such constraints will typically be implemented by a project-defined customization.

---

**att.sortable** provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content. [9.1. Dictionary Body and Overall Structure]

*Module* tei

*Members* bibl biblFull biblStruct correspAction entry entryFree event idno item list listApp listBibl listChange listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation listWit msDesc nym org person personGrp place relation superEntry term witness

*Attributes* Attributes

*@sortKey* supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.word**

David's other principal backer, Josiah  
 ha-Kohen <index indexName="NAMES">  
   <term sortKey="Azarya\_Josiah\_Kohen">Josiah ha-Kohen b.  
 Azarya</term>  
</index> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura was  
 David's own first  
 cousin.

*Note* The sort key is used to determine the sequence and grouping of entries in an index. It provides a sequence of characters which, when sorted with the other values, will produced the desired order; specifics of sort key construction are application-dependentDictionary order often differs from the collation sequence of machine-readable character sets; in English-language dictionaries, an entry for 4-*H* will often appear alphabetized under 'fourh', and *McCoy* may be alphabetized under 'maccoy', while *A1*, *A4*, and *A5* may all appear in numeric order 'alphabetized' between 'a-' and 'AA'. The sort key is required if the orthography of the dictionary entry does not suffice to determine its location.

---

**att.source** provides attributes for pointing to the source of a bibliographic reference. [3.3.3. Quotation 8.3.4. Writing]

*Module* tei

*Members* att.editLike[att.transcriptional[add addSpan del delSpan mod redo restore retrace subst substJoin undo] affiliation age am birth climate corr date death education event ex expan faith floruit gap geogFeat geogName langKnowledge

langKnown listener location name nationality occupation offset org orgName  
 origDate origPlace origin persName person place placeName population reader reg  
 relation residence sex socecStatus state supplied surplus terrain textread time trait  
 unclear] att.interpLike[interp interpGrp span spanGrp] att.textCritical[lem rdg  
 rdgGrp] abbr abstract egXML handShift listener note orig provenance q quote  
 reader respons rs seg sic space textread witDetail writing

*Attributes* Attributes

**@source** provides a pointer to the bibliographical source from which a quotation  
 or citation is drawn.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

*Example*

```
<p>
<!-- ... -->
As Willard McCarty (<bibl xml:id="mcc_2012">2012, p.2</bibl>)
tells us, <quote source="#mcc_2012">'Collaboration' is a
problematic and should be a contested term.</quote>
<!-- ... -->
</p>
```

*Example*

```
<p>
<!-- ... -->
<quote source="#chicago_15_ed">Grammatical theories
are in flux, and the more we learn, the less we
seem to know.</quote>
<!-- ... -->
</p>
<!-- ... -->
<bibl xml:id="chicago_15_ed">
<title level="m">The Chicago Manual of Style</title>,
<edition>15th edition</edition>.
<pubPlace>Chicago</pubPlace>:
<publisher>University of Chicago Press</publisher>
(<date>2003</date>),
<biblScope unit="page">p.147</biblScope>.
</bibl>
```

---

**att.spanning** provides attributes for elements which delimit a span of text by pointing  
 mechanisms rather than by enclosing it. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes]

*Module* tei

*Members* addSpan cb damageSpan delSpan gb index lb metamark milestone mod pb redo  
 retrace undo

*Attributes* Attributes

**@spanTo** indicates the end of a span initiated by the element bearing this  
 attribute.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.pointer`

*Schematron* The @spanTo attribute must point to an element following  
 the current element <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@spanTo]">  
 <sch:assert test="id(substring(@spanTo,2)) and following::\*  
 [@xml:id=substring(current()/@spanTo,2)]">The element indicated

by @spanTo (<sch:value-of select="@spanTo"/>) must follow the current element <sch:name/></sch:assert></sch:rule>

*Note* The span is defined as running in document order from the start of the content of the pointing element to the end of the content of the element pointed to by the *spanTo* attribute (if any). If no value is supplied for the attribute, the assumption is that the span is coextensive with the pointing element. If no content is present, the assumption is that the starting point of the span is immediately following the element itself.

---

**att.styleDef** groups elements which specify the name of a formal definition language used to provide formatting or rendition information.

*Module* *tei*

*Members* *rendition styleDefDecl*

*Attributes* *Attributes*

**@scheme** identifies the language used to describe the rendition.

*Status* *Optional*

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Legal values are:* **css** Cascading Stylesheet Language

**xslfo** Extensible Stylesheet Language Formatting Objects

**free** Informal free text description

**other** A user-defined rendition description language

*Note* If no value for the @scheme attribute is provided, then the default assumption should be that CSS is in use.

**@schemeVersion** supplies a version number for the style language provided in *scheme*.

*Status* *Optional*

*Datatype* **data.versionNumber**

*Schematron* <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@schemeVersion]">  
<sch:assert test="@scheme and not(@scheme = 'free')">  
@schemeVersion can only be used if @scheme is specified. </  
sch:assert></sch:rule>

*Note* If *schemeVersion* is used, then *scheme* should also appear, with a value other than free.

---

**att.tableDecoration** provides attributes used to decorate rows or cells of a table.  
[14. Tables, Formulæ, Graphics and Notated Music]

*Module* *tei*

*Members* *cell row*

*Attributes* *Attributes*

**@role** indicates the kind of information held in this cell or in each cell of this row.

*Status* *Optional*

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Suggested values include:* **label** labelling or descriptive information only.

**data** data values.[Default]

*Note* When this attribute is specified on a row, its value is the default for all cells in this row. When specified on a cell, its value overrides any default specified by the *role* attribute of the parent <row> element.

**@rows** indicates the number of rows occupied by this cell or row.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.count

*Default* 1

*Note* A value greater than one indicates that this cell spans several rows. Where several cells span multiple rows, it may be more convenient to use nested tables.

**@cols** (columns) indicates the number of columns occupied by this cell or row.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.count

*Default* 1

*Note* A value greater than one indicates that this cell or row spans several columns. Where an initial cell spans an entire row, it may be better treated as a heading.

---

**att.textCritical** defines a set of attributes common to all elements representing variant readings in text critical work. [12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses]

*Module* textcrit

*Members* lem rdg rdgGrp

*Attributes* Attributes att.source (*@source*)

**@type** classifies the reading according to some useful typology.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Sample values include:* **substantive** the reading offers a substantive variant.

**orthographic** the reading differs only orthographically, not in substance, from other readings.

**@cause** classifies the cause for the variant reading, according to any appropriate typology of possible origins.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Sample values include:* **homeoteleuton**

**homeoarchy**

**paleographicConfusion**

**haplography**

**dittography**

**falseEmendation**

**@varSeq** (variant sequence) provides a number indicating the position of this reading in a sequence, when there is reason to presume a sequence to the variants.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.count



*Note* Different variant sequences could be coded with distinct number trails: 1-2-3 for one sequence, 5-6-7 for another. More complex variant sequences, with (for example) multiple branchings from single readings, may be expressed through the <join> element.

**@hand** indicates the hand responsible for a particular reading in the witness.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

*Note* This attribute is only available within an apparatus gathering variant readings in the transcription of an individual witness. It may not occur in an apparatus gathering readings from different witnesses.

*Note* This element class defines attributes inherited by <rdg>, <lem>, and <rdgGrp>.

**att.timed** provides attributes common to those elements which have a duration in time, expressed either absolutely or by reference to an alignment map. [8.3.5. Temporal Information]

*Module* tei

*Members* binaryObject incident kinesic media pause u vocal writing

*Attributes* Attributes att.duration (att.duration.w3c (@dur)) (att.duration.iso (@dur-iso))

**@start** indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element begins.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

*Note* If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to follow the immediately preceding element at the same hierarchic level.

**@end** indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element ends.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

*Note* If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to precede the immediately following element at the same hierarchic level.

**att.transcriptional** provides attributes specific to elements encoding authorial or scribal intervention in a text when transcribing manuscript or similar sources. [11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions]

*Module* tei

*Members* add addSpan del delSpan mod redo restore retrace subst substJoin undo

*Attributes* Attributes att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.source (@source))

**@hand** indicates the hand of the agent which made the intervention.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

**@status** indicates the effect of the intervention, for example in the case of a deletion, strikeouts which include too much or too little text, or in the case

of an addition, an insertion which duplicates some of the text already present.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.enumerated`

*Sample values include:* **duplicate** all of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original, whether the duplication is word-for-word or less exact.

**duplicate-partial** part of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original

**excessStart** some text at the beginning of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.

**excessEnd** some text at the end of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.

**shortStart** some text at the beginning of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

**shortEnd** some text at the end of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

**partial** some text in the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

**unremarkable** the deletion is not faulty.[Default]

*Note* Status information on each deletion is needed rather rarely except in critical editions from authorial manuscripts; status information on additions is even less common. Marking a deletion or addition as faulty is inescapably an interpretive act; the usual test applied in practice is the linguistic acceptability of the text with and without the letters or words in question.

**@cause** documents the presumed cause for the intervention.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.enumerated`

*Legal values are:* **fix** repeated for the purpose of fixation

**unclear** repeated to clarify a previously illegible or badly written text or mark

**@seq** (sequence) assigns a sequence number related to the order in which the encoded features carrying this attribute are believed to have occurred.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.count`

---

**att.translatable** provides attributes used to indicate the status of a translatable portion of an ODD document.

*Module* `tei`

*Members* `desc` `exemplum` `gloss` `remarks` `valDesc`

*Attributes* `Attributes`

**@versionDate** specifies the date on which the source text was extracted and sent to the translator

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.temporal.w3c`

*Note* The *versionDate* attribute can be used to determine whether a translation might need to be revisited, by comparing the modification date on the containing file with the *versionDate* value on the translation. If the file has changed, changelogs can be checked to see whether the source text has been modified since the translation was made.

**att.typed** provides attributes which can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes 17.1.1. Words and Above 3.5.1. Referring Strings 3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References 3.5.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions 3.12.1. Core Tags for Verse 7.2.5. Speech Contents 4.1.1. Un-numbered Divisions 4.1.2. Numbered Divisions 4.2.1. Headings and Trailers 4.4. Virtual Divisions 13.3.2.3. Personal Relationships 11.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work 16.1.1. Pointers and Links 16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 12.2. Linking the Apparatus to the Text 22.4.4.2. RELAX NG Content Models 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts 23.3.1.4. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists]

*Module* `tei`

*Members* `att.pointing.group[altGrp joinGrp linkGrp]` `ab` `accMat` `add` `addName` `addSpan` `alt` `altIdent` `altIdentifier` `am` `anchor` `application` `bibl` `biblStruct` `binaryObject` `bloc` `c` `camera` `cb` `change` `charProp` `cit` `cl` `climate` `collection` `colloc` `constraintSpec` `corr` `correspDesc` `country` `custEvent` `damage` `damageSpan` `date` `decoNote` `del` `delSpan` `desc` `dim` `district` `div` `div1` `div2` `div3` `div4` `div5` `div6` `div7` `eLeaf` `eTree` `event` `exemplum` `explicit` `figure` `filiation` `finalRubric` `floatingText` `forename` `forest` `g` `gb` `genName` `geogFeat` `geogName` `gloss` `gramGrp` `group` `head` `ident` `incident` `incipit` `join` `kinesic` `label` `lb` `lg` `line` `link` `listApp` `listBibl` `listEvent` `listNym` `listOrg` `listPerson` `listPlace` `listRelation` `listener` `location` `m` `mapping` `measureGrp` `media` `milestone` `mod` `moduleSpec` `msDesc` `msName` `name` `nameLink` `notatedMusic` `note` `nym` `offset` `org` `orgName` `origDate` `origPlace` `pause` `pb` `pc` `persName` `phr` `place` `placeName` `population` `provenance` `ptr` `quote` `re` `reader` `ref` `reg` `region` `relatedItem` `relation` `restore` `rhyme` `roleName` `rs` `rubric` `s` `seal` `seg` `settlement` `spGrp` `space` `stamp` `state` `surface` `surfaceGrp` `surname` `term` `terrain` `text` `textread` `time` `trailer` `trait` `vocal` `w` `writing` `zone`

*Attributes* `Attributes`

**@type** characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

*Status* `Optional`

*Datatype* `data.enumerated`

```
<div type="verse">
  <head>Night in Tarras</head>
  <lg type="stanza">
    <l>At evening tramping on the hot white road</l>
    <l>...</l>
  </lg>
  <lg type="stanza">
    <l>A wind sprang up from nowhere as the sky</l>
    <l>...</l>
  </lg>
</div>
```

*Note* The *type* attribute is present on a number of elements, not all of which are members of `att.typed`, usually because these elements restrict the possible values for the attribute in a specific way.

**@subtype** provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.enumerated`

*Note* The *subtype* attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element additional to that provided by its *type* attribute.

*Schematron* `<sch:rule context="*[@subtype]"> <sch:assert test="@type">The <sch:name/> element should not be categorized in detail with @subtype unless also categorized in general with @type</sch:assert></sch:rule>`

*Note* When appropriate, values from an established typology should be used. Alternatively a typology may be defined in the associated TEI header. If values are to be taken from a project-specific list, this should be defined using the `<valList>` element in the project-specific schema description, as described in 23.3.1.4. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists .

---

**att.witnessed** supplies the attribute used to identify the witnesses supporting a particular reading in a critical apparatus. [12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses]

*Module* textcrit

*Members* lem rdg

*Attributes* Attributes

**@wit** (witness or witnesses) contains a space-delimited list of one or more pointers indicating the witnesses which attest to a given reading.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

*Note* If the apparatus contains readings only for a single witness, this attribute may be consistently omitted. This attribute may occur both within an apparatus gathering variant readings in the transcription of an individual witness and within an apparatus gathering readings from different witnesses. Additional descriptions or alternative versions of the sigla referenced may be supplied as the content of a child `<wit>` element.

## 4 Macros

---

**data.certainty** defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty.

*Module* tei

*Used by* Element:

- certainty/@cert
- precision/@precision
- purpose/@degree

*Declaration* `data.certainty = "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown"`

*Note* Certainty may be expressed by one of the predefined symbolic values high, medium, or low. The value unknown should be used in cases where the encoder does not wish to assert an opinion about the matter. For more precise indication, `data.probability` may be used instead or in addition.

**data.count** defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count.

*Module* tei

*Used by* Element:

- age/@value
- datatype/@minOccurs
- graph/@order
- graph/@size
- handDesc/@hands
- iNode/@outDegree
- layout/@columns
- layout/@ruledLines
- layout/@writtenLines
- node/@inDegree
- node/@outDegree
- node/@degree
- refState/@length
- root/@outDegree
- sense/@level
- table/@rows
- table/@cols
- tagUsage/@occurs
- tagUsage/@withId
- tree/@arity
- tree/@order
- zone/@rotate

*Declaration* **data.count** = xsd:nonNegativeInteger

*Note* Only positive integer values (including zero) are permitted

---

**data.duration.iso** defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using ISO 8601 standard formats

*Module* tei

*Used by*

*Declaration*

**data.duration.iso** = token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:\+\\-]+" }

*Example*

```
<time dur-iso="PT0,75H">three-quarters of an hour</time>
```

*Example*

```
<date dur-iso="P1,5D">a day and a half</date>
```

*Example*

```
<date dur-iso="P14D">a fortnight</date>
```

*Example*

```
<time dur-iso="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>
```

*Note* A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the last, which may have a decimal component (using either . or , as the decimal point; the latter is preferred). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first ‘time’ number-letter pair. For complete details, see ISO 8601 *Data elements and interchange formats — Information interchange — Representation of dates and times*.

---

**data.duration.w3c** defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using W3C datatypes.

*Module* tei

*Used by*

*Declaration* `data.duration.w3c = xsd:duration`

*Example*

```
<time dur="PT45M">forty-five minutes</time>
```

*Example*

```
<date dur="P1DT12H">a day and a half</date>
```

*Example*

```
<date dur="P7D">a week</date>
```

*Example*

```
<time dur="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>
```

*Note* A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the **S** number, which may have a decimal component (using . as the decimal point). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first ‘time’ number-letter pair. For complete details, see the W3C specification.

---

**data.enumerated** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities.

*Module* tei

*Used by* Element:

- abbr/@type
- alt/@mode
- altGrp/@mode

- app/@type
- att/@scheme
- attDef/@usage
- attList/@org
- availability/@status
- castItem/@type
- certainty/@locus
- channel/@mode
- classSpec/@type
- classSpec/@generate
- classes/@mode
- constitution/@type
- constraintSpec/@scheme
- correction/@status
- correction/@method
- correspAction/@type
- derivation/@type
- dimensions/@type
- distinct/@type
- divGen/@type
- domain/@type
- egXML/@valid
- factuality/@type
- form/@type
- formula/@notation
- fs/@type
- fsDecl/@type
- fsdLink/@type
- fw/@type
- gap/@agent
- geoDecl/@datum
- gi/@scheme
- gram/@type
- graph/@type
- hyphenation/@eol
- iType/@type
- idno/@type
- interaction/@type
- interaction/@active
- interaction/@passive

- join/@scope
- lbl/@type
- list/@type
- listForest/@type
- macroSpec/@type
- measure/@type
- memberOf/@mode
- metDecl/@type
- move/@type
- move/@where
- node/@type
- normalization/@method
- num/@type
- oRef/@type
- oVar/@type
- objectDesc/@form
- orth/@type
- orth/@extent
- pVar/@notation
- pc/@force
- pc/@unit
- person/@role
- person/@age
- personGrp/@role
- personGrp/@age
- preparedness/@type
- pron/@extent
- pron/@notation
- punctuation/@marks
- punctuation/@placement
- purpose/@type
- q/@type
- quotation/@marks
- recording/@type
- relation/@name
- rendition/@scope
- respons/@locus
- shift/@feature
- shift/@new
- sound/@type



- space/@dim
- stage/@type
- supportDesc/@material
- surface/@attachment
- tag/@type
- tag/@scheme
- tech/@type
- teiHeader/@type
- timeline/@unit
- title/@type
- title/@level
- titlePage/@type
- titlePart/@type
- tree/@ord
- u/@trans
- unclear/@agent
- usg/@type
- vColl/@org
- vMerge/@org
- valList/@type
- variantEncoding/@method
- variantEncoding/@location
- when/@unit
- witDetail/@type
- xr/@type

*Declaration* `data.enumerated = data.word`

*Note* Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word matching the pattern defined for this datatype: for example it cannot include whitespace but may begin with digits. Typically, the list of documented possibilities will be provided (or exemplified) by a value list in the associated attribute specification, expressed with a `<valList>` element.

---

**data.interval** defines attribute values used to express an interval value.

*Module* tei

*Used by* Element:

- timeline/@interval
- when/@interval

*Declaration*

```
data.interval =  
  xsd:float { minExclusive = "0" } | "regular" | "irregular" | "unknown"
```

*Note* Any value greater than zero or any one of the values regular, irregular, unknown.

---

**data.language** defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [6.1. Language Identification]

*Module* `tei`

*Used by* Element:

- `langKnowledge/@tags`
- `langKnown/@tag`
- `language/@ident`
- `schemaSpec/@targetLang`
- `schemaSpec/@docLang`
- `textLang/@mainLang`
- `textLang/@otherLangs`

*Declaration* `data.language = xsd:language | ""`

*Note* The values for this attribute are language ‘tags’ as defined in BCP 47. Currently BCP 47 comprises RFC 4646 and RFC 4647; over time, other IETF documents may succeed these as the best current practice. A ‘language tag’, per BCP 47, is assembled from a sequence of components or *subtags* separated by the hyphen character (-, U+002D). The tag is made of the following subtags, in the following order. Every subtag except the first is optional. If present, each occurs only once, except the fourth and fifth components (variant and extension), which are repeatable.

**language** The IANA-registered code for the language. This is almost always the same as the ISO 639 2-letter language code if there is one. The list of available registered language subtags can be found at <http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry>. It is recommended that this code be written in lower case.

**script** The ISO 15924 code for the script. These codes consist of 4 letters, and it is recommended they be written with an initial capital, the other three letters in lower case. The canonical list of codes is maintained by the Unicode Consortium, and is available at <http://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html>. The IETF recommends this code be omitted unless it is necessary to make a distinction you need.

**region** Either an ISO 3166 country code or a UN M.49 region code that is registered with IANA (not all such codes are registered, e.g. UN codes for economic groupings or codes for countries for which there is already an ISO 3166 2-letter code are not registered). The former consist of 2 letters, and it is recommended they be written in upper case. The list of codes can be found at [http://www.iso.org/iso/home/standards/country\\_codes/iso-3166-1\\_decoding\\_table.htm](http://www.iso.org/iso/home/standards/country_codes/iso-3166-1_decoding_table.htm). The latter consist of 3 digits; the list of codes can be found at <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm>.

**variant** An IANA-registered variation. These codes ‘are used to indicate additional, well-recognized variations that define a language or its dialects that are not covered by other available subtags’.

**extension** An extension has the format of a single letter followed by a hyphen followed by additional subtags. These exist to allow for future extension to BCP 47, but as of this writing no such extensions are in use.

**private use** An extension that uses the initial subtag of the single letter *x* (i.e., starts with **x-**) has no meaning except as negotiated among the parties involved. These should be used with great care, since they interfere with the interoperability that use of RFC 4646 is intended to promote. In order for a document that makes use of these subtags to be TEI-conformant, a corresponding `<language>` element must be present in the TEI header.

There are two exceptions to the above format. First, there are language tags in the IANA registry that do not match the above syntax, but are present because they have been ‘grandfathered’ from previous specifications.

Second, an entire language tag can consist of only a private use subtag. These tags start with **x-**, and do not need to follow any further rules established by the IETF and endorsed by these Guidelines. Like all language tags that make use of private use subtags, the language in question must be documented in a corresponding `<language>` element in the TEI header.

Examples include

**sn** Shona

**zh-TW** Taiwanese

**zh-Hant-HK** Chinese written in traditional script as used in Hong Kong

**en-SL** English as spoken in Sierra Leone

**pl** Polish

**es-MX** Spanish as spoken in Mexico

**es-419** Spanish as spoken in Latin America

The W3C Internationalization Activity has published a useful introduction to BCP 47, Language tags in HTML and XML.

---

**data.name** defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name.

*Module* tei

*Used by* att giElement:

- application/@ident
- equiv/@name
- f/@name
- fDecl/@name
- fsDecl/@baseTypes
- index/@indexName
- join/@result
- joinGrp/@result
- memberOf/@key
- prefixDef/@ident
- schemaSpec/@start
- specDesc/@key

- specDesc/@atts
- tagUsage/@gi

*Declaration* `data.name = xsd:Name`

*Note* Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits.

---

**data.namespace** defines the range of attribute values used to indicate XML namespaces as defined by the W3C Namespaces in XML Technical Recommendation.

*Module* tei

*Used by* Element:

- attDef/@ns
- namespace/@name

*Declaration* `data.namespace = xsd:anyURI`

*Note* The range of syntactically valid values is defined by RFC 3986 *Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax*

---

**data.numeric** defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values.

*Module* tei

*Used by* Element:

- memberOf/@max
- memberOf/@min
- num/@value
- numeric/@value
- numeric/@max
- precision/@stdDeviation

*Declaration*

```
data.numeric =  
  xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\\-?[\\d]+/\\-?[\\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
```

*Note* Any numeric value, represented as a decimal number, in floating point format, or as a ratio. To represent a floating point number, expressed in scientific notation, ‘E notation’, a variant of ‘exponential notation’, may be used. In this format, the value is expressed as two numbers separated by the letter E. The first number, the significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is given in decimal format, while the second is an integer. The value is obtained by multiplying the mantissa by 10 the number of times indicated by the integer. Thus the value represented in decimal notation as 1000.0 might be represented in scientific notation as 10E3. A value expressed as a ratio is represented by two integer values separated by a solidus (/) character. Thus, the value represented in decimal notation as 0.5 might be represented as a ratio by the string 1/2.

**data.outputMeasurement** defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is intended for display.

*Module* tei

*Used by*

*Declaration*

```
data.outputMeasurement =  
  token  
  {  
    pattern = "[\\-+]?\\d+(\\.\\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)"  
  }
```

*Example*

```
<figure>  
  <head>The TEI Logo</head>  
  <figDesc>Stylized yellow angle brackets with the letters  
<mentioned>TEI</mentioned> in  
    between and <mentioned>text encoding initiative</mentioned> underneath, all on a  
    white  
    background.</figDesc>  
  <graphic height="600px"  
    url="http://www.tei-c.org/logos/TEI-600.jpg" width="600px"/>  
</figure>
```

*Note* These values map directly onto the values used by XSL-FO and CSS. For definitions of the units see those specifications; at the time of this writing the most complete list is in the CSS3 working draft.

---

**data.pattern** (regular expression pattern) defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression.

*Module* tei

*Used by* Element:

- metDecl/@pattern

*Declaration* `data.pattern = token`

*Note* A regular expression, often called a *pattern*, is an expression that describes a set of strings. They are usually used to give a concise description of a set, without having to list all elements. For example, the set containing the three strings *Handel*, *Händel*, and *Haendel* can be described by the pattern `H(ä|ae?)ndel` (or alternatively, it is said that the pattern `H(ä|ae?)ndel` *matches* each of the three strings)Wikipedia

---

**data.point** defines the data type used to express a point in cartesian space.

*Module* tei

*Used by*

*Declaration*

```
data.point = token { pattern = "(\\-?[0-9]+\\.?[0-9]*,\\-?[0-9]+\\.?[0-9]*)" }
```

*Example*

```
<facsimile>
<surface lrx="400" lry="280" ulx="0" uly="0">
  <zone points="220,100 300,210 170,250 123,234">
    <graphic url="handwriting.png" />
  </zone>
</surface>
</facsimile>
```

*Note* A point is defined by two numeric values, which may be expressed in any notation permitted.

---

**data.pointer** defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI, absolute or relative, pointing to some other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere.

*Module* tei

*Used by* Element:

- alt/@target
- app/@from
- app/@to
- arc/@from
- arc/@to
- catRef/@scheme
- certainty/@given
- change/@target
- classCode/@scheme
- eLeaf/@value
- eTree/@value
- equiv/@uri
- equiv/@filter
- event/@where
- f/@fVal
- fs/@feats
- fsdLink/@target
- g/@ref
- gap/@hand
- handShift/@new
- iNode/@value
- iNode/@children
- iNode/@parent
- iNode/@follow
- keywords/@scheme
- leaf/@value
- leaf/@parent

- leaf/@follow
- locus/@scheme
- locusGrp/@scheme
- metamark/@target
- moduleRef/@url
- move/@perf
- msContents/@class
- msItem/@class
- msItemStruct/@class
- node/@value
- node/@adjTo
- node/@adjFrom
- node/@adj
- normalization/@source
- note/@targetEnd
- nym/@parts
- occupation/@scheme
- occupation/@code
- redo/@target
- relatedItem/@target
- relation/@active
- relation/@mutual
- relation/@passive
- root/@value
- root/@children
- socecStatus/@scheme
- socecStatus/@code
- space/@resp
- span/@from
- span/@to
- specGrpRef/@target
- tagUsage/@render
- tech/@perf
- timeline/@origin
- triangle/@value
- unclear/@hand
- undo/@target
- w/@lemmaRef
- when/@since
- witDetail/@wit

*Declaration* `data.pointer = xsd:anyURI`

*Note* The range of syntactically valid values is defined by RFC 3986 *Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax*. Note that the values themselves are encoded using RFC 3987 *Internationalized Resource Identifiers (IRIs)* mapping to URIs. For example, `https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%` is encoded as `https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%25` while `http:///وزارة-الاتصالات.مصر` is encoded as `http://xn--4gbrim.xn---rmckbbajlc6dj7bxne2c.xn--wgbh1c/`

---

**data.probability** defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability.

*Module* `tei`

*Used by* Element:

- `alt/@weights`
- `certainty/@degree`
- `precision/@degree`

*Declaration*

```
data.probability = xsd:double { minInclusive = "0" maxInclusive = "1" }
```

*Note* Probability is expressed as a real number between 0 and 1; 0 representing *certainly false* and 1 representing *certainly true*.

---

**data.replacement** defines attribute values which contain a replacement template.

*Module* `tei`

*Used by*

*Declaration* `data.replacement = text`

---

**data.sex** defines the range of attribute values used to identify human or animal sex.

*Module* `tei`

*Used by* Element:

- `person/@sex`
- `personGrp/@sex`
- `sex/@value`

*Declaration* `data.sex = data.word`

*Note* Values for attributes using this datatype may be locally defined by a project, or may refer to an external standard, such as vCard's sex property `http://microformats.org/wiki/gender-formats` (in which M indicates male, F female, O other, N none or not applicable, U unknown), or the often used ISO 5218:2004 *Representation of Human Sexes* `http://standards.iso.org/ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266_ISO_IEC_5218_2004(E_F).zip` (in which 0 indicates unknown; 1 male; 2 female; and 9 not applicable, although the ISO standard is widely considered inadequate); cf. CETH's *Recommendations for Inclusive Data Collection of Trans*



People

<http://transhealth.ucsf.edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection>.

---

**data.temporal.iso** defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the international standard *Data elements and interchange formats – Information interchange – Representation of dates and times*.

Module *tei*

Used by

Declaration

```
data.temporal.iso =  
  xsd:date  
  | xsd:gYear  
  | xsd:gMonth  
  | xsd:gDay  
  | xsd:gYearMonth  
  | xsd:gMonthDay  
  | xsd:time  
  | xsd:dateTime  
  | token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\ -]+" }
```

*Note* If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the *dateTime* representation should be used. For all representations for which ISO 8601 describes both a *basic* and an *extended* format, these Guidelines recommend use of the extended format. While ISO 8601 permits the use of both **00:00** and **24:00** to represent midnight, these Guidelines strongly recommend against the use of **24:00**.

---

**data.temporal.w3c** defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the *W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition* specification.

Module *tei*

Used by Element:

- docDate/@when
- when/@absolute

Declaration

```
data.temporal.w3c =  
  xsd:date  
  | xsd:gYear  
  | xsd:gMonth  
  | xsd:gDay  
  | xsd:gYearMonth  
  | xsd:gMonthDay  
  | xsd:time  
  | xsd:dateTime
```

*Note* If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the *dateTime* representation should be used.

**data.text** defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of unicode characters possibly including whitespace.

*Module* tei

*Used by* Element:

- attRef/@name
- distinct/@time
- distinct/@space
- distinct/@social
- emotion/@ref
- emotion/@type
- experienceType/@ref
- listener/@ref
- listener/@ref
- listener/@ref
- origLanguage/@ref
- readerStatus/@ref
- readingExp/@ref
- readingExpRef/@ref
- refState/@delim
- textread/@ref
- textread/@ref
- textread/@ref
- textread/@ref
- valItem/@ident
- w/@lemma

*Declaration* **data.text = string**

*Note* Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘token’ in which whitespace and other punctuation characters are permitted.

---

**data.truthValue** defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value.

*Module* tei

*Used by* Element:

- binary/@value
- content/@autoPrefix
- fDecl/@optional
- listChange/@ordered
- metSym/@terminal
- note/@anchored
- numeric/@trunc

- pc/@pre
- sequence/@preserveOrder
- surface/@flipping
- tagsDecl/@partial

*Declaration* `data.truthValue = xsd:boolean`

*Note* The possible values of this datatype are 1 or true, or 0 or false. This datatype applies only for cases where uncertainty is inappropriate; if the attribute concerned may have a value other than true or false, e.g. unknown, or inapplicable, it should have the extended version of this datatype: data.xTruthValue.

---

**data.version** defines the range of attribute values which may be used to specify a TEI or Unicode version number.

*Module* tei

*Used by* Element:

- TEI/@version
- teiCorpus/@version
- unicodeName/@version

*Declaration*

`data.version = token { pattern = "[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}" }`

*Note* The value of this attribute follows the pattern specified by the Unicode consortium for its version number (<http://unicode.org/versions/>). A version number contains digits and fullstop characters only. The first number supplied identifies the major version number. A second and third number, for minor and sub-minor version numbers, may also be supplied.

---

**data.versionNumber** defines the range of attribute values used for version numbers.

*Module* tei

*Used by* Element:

- application/@version

*Declaration*

`data.versionNumber =  
token { pattern = "[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}" }`

---

**data.word** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token.

*Module* tei

*Used by* data.enumerated data.sexElement:

- app/@loc
- attRef/@class
- binaryObject/@encoding
- code/@lang

- gap/@reason
- langKnown/@level
- locus/@from
- locus/@to
- m/@baseForm
- media/@mimeType
- metSym/@value
- metamark/@function
- org/@role
- personGrp/@size
- rhyme/@label
- supplied/@reason
- surplus/@reason
- symbol/@value
- unclear/@reason
- vLabel/@name

*Declaration*

```
data.word = token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }
```

*Note* Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘word’ which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.

---

**data.xTruthValue** (extended truth value) defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value which may be unknown.

*Module* tei

*Used by* Element:

- binding/@contemporary
- iNode/@ord
- kinesic/@iterated
- root/@ord
- said/@aloud
- said/@direct
- seal/@contemporary
- sound/@discrete
- vocal/@iterated
- writing/@gradual

*Declaration*

```
data.xTruthValue = xsd:boolean | "unknown" | "inapplicable"
```

*Note* In cases where where uncertainty is inappropriate, use the datatype data.TruthValue.

**data.xmlName** defines attribute values which contain an XML name.

*Module* tei

*Used by* Element:

- classRef/@key
- classRef/@include
- classRef/@except
- elementRef/@key
- macroRef/@key
- moduleRef/@prefix
- moduleRef/@include
- moduleRef/@except
- moduleRef/@key

*Declaration* `data.xmlName = xsd:NCName`

*Note* The rules defining an XML name form a part of the XML Specification.

---

**macro.anyXML** defines a content model within which any XML elements are permitted

*Module* tagdocs

*Used by* constraint content egXML macro.anyXML macro.schemaPattern

*Declaration*

```
macro.anyXML =  
  element * - (tei:* | teix:egXML)  
  {  
    attribute * { text }*,  
    ( text | macro.anyXML )*  
  }
```

**macro.limitedContent** (paragraph content) defines the content of prose elements that are not used for transcription of extant materials. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* tei

*Used by* desc fDescr figDesc fsDescr meeting rendition tagUsage witness

*Declaration*

```
macro.limitedContent = ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.inter )*
```

**macro.paraContent** (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* tei

*Used by* ab add camera caption case colloc corr damage def del docEdition emph gen gram hi hyph iType imprimatur l lang lbl mod mood number orig orth p per pos pron

readingExpRef ref reg restore retrace rhyme salute seg sic signed sound stress subc  
supplied surplus syll tech title titlePart tns unclear usg writing

*Declaration*

```
macro.paraContent =  
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | model.global | lg | l )*
```

---

**macro.phraseSeq** (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models]

*Module* tei

*Used by* abbr actor addName addrLine affiliation author biblScope birth bloc catchwords  
citedRange cl colophon country death distinct distributor district docAuthor  
docDate edition editor education eg email expan explicit extent faith finalRubric  
floruit foreign forename fw genName geoDecl geogFeat geogName gloss headItem  
headLabel heraldry incipit label material measure mentioned name nameLink  
nationality num objectType occupation offset orgName origPlace persName phr  
placeName pubPlace publisher region residence role roleDesc roleName rs rubric  
secFol settlement sex soCalled socecStatus speaker stamp street surname term  
textLang watermark wit witDetail

*Declaration*

```
macro.phraseSeq = ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global )*
```

---

**macro.phraseSeq.limited** (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models]

*Module* tei

*Used by* activity age authority channel classCode constitution derivation domain factuality  
funder interaction langKnown language locale metSym preparedness principal  
purpose resp span sponsor valDesc

*Declaration*

```
macro.phraseSeq.limited = ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.global )*
```

---

**macro.schemaPattern** provides a pattern to match elements from the chosen schema language

*Module* tagdocs

*Used by* datatype

*Declaration*

```
macro.schemaPattern = macro.anyXML
```

---

**macro.specialPara** ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* `tei`

*Used by* `accMat acquisition additions cell change collation condition custEvent decoNote  
filiation foliation handNote item layout licence metamark musicNotation note origin  
provenance q quote said scriptNote signatures source stage summary support  
surrogates typeNote view`

*Declaration*

```
macro.specialPara =  
  (  
    text  
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter      | model.divPart      | model.global
```

---

**macro.xtext** (extended text) defines a sequence of character data and gaiji elements.

*Module* `tei`

*Used by* `c collection depth dim ex height institution locus mapping memberOf msName  
repository string value width`

*Declaration* `macro.xtext = ( text | model.gLike )*`